C. R. DANIEL
FOUR CROSSES
LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
NOV 1 1963
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
DA240
.A19

JAMES H. CRITCHLEY,
117, QUEEN'S ROAD,
RICHMOND, SURREY.

CHRONICON ADÆ DE USK

PUBLISHED UNDER THE DIRECTION

OF THE

ROYAL SOCIETY OF LITERATURE

87301.

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON
NOV 1 1963
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY

CHRONICON ADÆ DE USK

A.D. 1377—1421

EDITED
WITH A TRANSLATION AND NOTES

BY

SIR EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON, K.C.B.

✓
Adam, of Usk

SECOND EDITION

LONDON
HENRY FROWDE
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.
1904

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

INTRODUCTION

When in the year 1876 I edited, for the Royal Society of Literature, the Chronicle of Adam of Usk, for the first time, from the unique text in the Additional MS. 10,104 in the British Museum, I was at a disadvantage. The end of the MS. was missing, and the chronicle broke off abruptly in the narrative of events of the year 1404. It would then have appeared rash to entertain a hope that the missing portion would ever be recovered. The MS. had already been in the possession of the British Museum for forty years; and who could say how many more had elapsed before that period since the mutilation of the volume? But in the world of letters, as in other departments of human affairs, the unexpected happens with a surprising persistency. In 1885, a quire of vellum leaves, carelessly folded up, was found among a number of neglected documents in a loft at Belvoir Castle, at the time when the Duke of Rutland's collection of papers was being examined and calendared for the Historical Manuscripts Commission, and this eventually proved to be the missing portion of the Additional MS. and to contain the end of Adam of Usk's chronicle. Its true character, however, was not recognized until quite recently; and I have to thank my friend, Sir Henry Maxwell-Lyte, K.C.B., the Deputy Keeper of Public Records, for his kindness in communicating the discovery to me, and His Grace the Duke of Rutland

for permission to copy and publish the text. To the Royal Society of Literature, which had generously undertaken the first publication of the chronicle whose authorship I had then identified, I naturally turned again with the new material in my hand. The Society has repeated its generosity and has undertaken the issue of this second and complete edition of Adam of Usk's work with a liberality which entitles it to the gratitude of all students of English history. My sense of personal obligation to the Society I cannot adequately express.

The Additional MS. 10,104 was purchased for the British Museum at the sale of the library of Richard Heber, in February, 1836, being lot 833 of the Manuscripts. There is no record to show how Heber acquired the volume. It is a folio measuring 14¾ by 9¾ inches and consisting of 177 leaves. It contains the Polychronicon, or "Historia Policronica," of Ralph Higden, ending with the close of Edward the third's reign, and preceded by an index, a note of the five ages of the world previous to the birth of Christ, and a map of the world. The first page of each of the seven books into which the work is divided is decorated with an initial and border in gold and colours. The handwriting, which is of the usual character employed for works of this nature, is of the end of the fourteenth century. In the margins, besides the ordinary key-notes which may be regarded as an integral part of the text, various other notes have been added from time to time by different hands; and it is not impossible that some of them may have been written by Adam of Usk himself, who owned the chronicle and who bequeathed it, as we shall see, to his kinsman Edward ap Adam. At the foot of the first page of

the first book of the Polychronicon Adam's shield of arms: sable, a naked man (Adam, the father of mankind) delving, has been drawn in a very rough style, probably not by Adam himself, but possibly by his legatee. The Polychronicon occupies 154 leaves; and on two leaves which had been left blank at the end of it, and on a sufficient number of supplementary leaves, Adam's chronicle is written. The wooden covers of the original binding still remain, but cased with leather of modern date.

We now turn to Adam's chronicle. This, as we know from his own references, he intended to serve as a supplement to Higden's work. But the text is not in his handwriting; it is written by several scribes, none of them good writers, and some of them illiterate. It is not improbable that Adam may have left instructions to his legatee, Edward ap Adam, to have his compilation copied into the volume, from a reluctance (if not modesty) that "this record of his foolishness"[1] should appear in his lifetime. As already stated, the text in the Additional MS. breaks off in the narrative of the year 1404. The quire which has been recovered at Belvoir Castle carries on the chronicle to the year 1421; but the latter part is very meagre, and is rather in the nature of disconnected memoranda of particular events than of historical narrative. Although Adam lived nine years later than the conclusion of his chronicle, he was by this time an old man and he noted nothing further. The new material occupies eleven of the twelve pages of the Belvoir quire, and the handwriting, like that of the earlier part of the text, is by different scribes, degenerating at the end into a slovenly scrawl. The date of the MS. of the chronicle, as a whole, may be about 1440–1450.

[1] See p. 219.

The text throughout has key-notes, corrections, and some additions, written in the margins in various hands. The latest in date are some which appear both in the volume and in the newly-found quire in handwriting of the latter part of the sixteenth century; and their presence in both portions of the text proves that at least at the time when they were written the Additional MS. was intact.

Neither in the Heber sale-catalogue nor in the official "List of Additions to the Manuscripts in the British Museum in the years 1836–1840" was the authorship of Adam of Usk identified. The clue was first afforded by certain notes, or sentences, more or less illiterate, which are entered in the MS. immediately after the Polychronicon and form a kind of introduction to Adam's chronicle. These consist in the first place of a series of references to Adam, the father of mankind, and to others of the same name, with citations from the Holy Scriptures, from Gratian's "Decretum," and from the Fathers. The following examples are selected:—

"Adam de quo sancta refert Trinitas: 'Factus est Adam quasi unus ex nobis.'[1] Gen. j."

"Ade solius felix culpa et felix delictum, secundum sanctum Gregorium."

"Adam tunica pellicia se vestivit: de pe. di. j. medicina" [Gratian, *Decretum*: de penitentia, distinctio j., cap. lxxx].

"Ade felicibus translacionis assencibus a Herefordiensi ad Wygorniensem, et a Wygorniensi ad Wyntoniensem, canit quidam emulus:

'Trigamus est Adam talem suspendere vadam.
Thomam neglexit, Wolstanum non bene rexit,
Swythinum maluit. Cur? Quia plus valuit.'"[2]

[1] See p. 277.

[2] Adam de Orleton, bishop of Hereford, 1317; of Worcester, 1327; and of Winchester, 1333.

The next is more personally interesting, for it contains an allusion to incidents in our chronicler's career, to be noticed presently[1]:—

"Ade quamvis, propter sui virtutes omni carentis miseria, finaliter principiis obstet invidia, tamen praecipua in eo reperitur gracia, ut patet Genesi j.; qui, expulsus paradiso per invidiam diaboli, fuit restitutus celo per sanguinem Dei filii. Et, quamvis per invidiam cujusdam militis fuit privatus beneficio, ecce quam solempnis fuit ejus restitucio: extra[ctus] de testi-[moniis] ex parte Ade. Et, quamvis venatorum invidia eorum ducis concilio expellebatur et consorcio[2], ecce quam gloriosa eciam ejus reparacio: extra[ctus] de jur[ibus?]. Veniens Adam juxta naturam Aprilis, in quo fuit creatus[3], primo varias et asperas aurarum et turbinum subeuntis procellas, tamen finaliter Maii ac tocius estatis flores causantis et delicias."

In the following, the juxtaposition of "Adam" and "Usk" brings before us the name of the chronicler:—

"Ecce, omnis miserie reiciendo causam[4], quam gloriosus virtutibus ADAM! USK: de isto cognomine canit vates Merlinus: 'Fluvius Usk per vij. menses fervebit, cujus calore pisses morientur et serpentes gravabunt'; serpentes in bona parte sumendo, ut intelligo, juxta illud Evangelii: 'Estote prudentes sicut serpentes.' Sed de quo ista canit Merlinus, credo quod [de] comite Marchie, domino loci et graciosi regis Edwardi pronepote, et domini Lionelly ducis Clarencie, ejus filii, nepote; quem regem Edwardum dictus vates vocat aprum bellicosum, qui suos dentes infra tutamina Francie accuere deberet; quod, ut constat, fecit

[1] See p. xxviij.

[2] It is not obvious why in this sentence "venatores" should be employed to describe Adam of Usk's enemies. The term seems to be too special, unless there be some hidden allusion. The leader, "dux," from whose society he was excluded, can hardly be any other than the king, Henry, lately duke of Hereford; and Adam may therefore have had in his mind the comparison which he makes (pp. 25, 173) of Richard's followers to harts who were driven out of the kingdom, and hence he may here indicate the Lancastrians as the "hunters."

[3] Adam may here be only alluding to the tradition that the father of mankind was created in the spring; on the other hand he may be stating the month in which he himself was born.

[4] vangam, MS.

partes devincendo [et] depredando, necnon eorum regem in campestri bello captivando, regemque Boemie eodem dencium accumine perimendo."

The notes are followed by a copy of a portion of a letter addressed to Lewis de St. Melano, treasurer of Llandaff from 1368, apparently to 1402, on the miserable state of that diocese.

Nor is the fly-leaf at the end of the MS. without interest. Here was once written the name of an owner in the fifteenth century, possibly that of Edward ap Adam, but unhappily the portion of the vellum which was thus inscribed has been carefully cut out. But there are also, in addition to some historical memoranda, the following verses which seem to be several attempts to compose an epitaph in honour of our chronicler—all written in a cramped and feeble hand, and all of them vile literary productions. One would be pleased, from a feeling of sentiment, to imagine that here we may have specimens of Adam's own composition—greater men than he have yielded to the temptation of writing their own epitaphs—but jealousy for his reputation as a scholar should forbid the idea, although the period of the handwriting might fall within that of his closing years:—

"O dolor immensus; satis ars vel gloria sensus;
Non rediment census, quin casus sit tibi pensus.
Sortitum nostri prothoplausti nomen, ab inde
Usk dictum, sub se continet iste lapis."

"Justiniane, tuas leges docuit, vice fungens
Doctoris, necnon jus, Graciane, tuum."

"Qui docui mores mundi vitare favores,[1]
Inter doctores sacros sortitus honores,
Vermibus hic ponor, et sic ostendere conor
Quod, sicut hic ponor, sic ponitur omnis honor."

[1] "honores" seems to have been written at first, and then clumsily altered into "favores."

"Legit hic Oxonie doctor civilia jura;
Hic jacet in requie, vivat sine fine futura."[1]

From the details which our author himself incidentally supplies of his own career, and from modern research, and especially from the patient investigations prosecuted by Mr. J. H. Wylie for his "History of Henry the Fourth," the outline of Adam of Usk's life may be drawn with some accuracy.[2] But, first, it should be noted that documentary evidence now shows that his name was nearly always written as Adam Usk, rather than Adam de Usk. As, however, he has become familiar to us as Adam of Usk, and for a quarter of a century has been referred to by that designation, let his name so stand.

He was a native of Usk in Monmouthshire, but the exact date of his birth can only be conjectured. In the ejaculatory preface to his account of his departure for Rome in February, 1402, he refers to himself as having arrived at the period of old age and decay ("senecta et senium," p. 74). Such an expression in modern days would imply a greater age than it did in the middle ages, when men were wont to regard themselves as old at a period of life which we consider comparatively young. Adam may, then, have been about fifty years of age when he left England, and we may venture to place the year of his birth about 1352. He owed his first step in life to his patron, Edmund Mortimer, third earl of March (A. D. 1360–1381), who held the lordship of Usk in right of his wife Philippa of Clarence claiming through her mother, Elizabeth de Burgh, of the family of

[1] The presence of reference letters (*a* and *b*) in the margin seems to indicate that the fourth attempt should precede the second in order.

[2] I take this opportunity of expressing my grateful thanks to my friend Mr. Hubert Hall for his valuable assistance in searching the records at the Public Record Office.

Clare, and who presented him to an exhibition in laws at Oxford (p. 22). Supposing Adam to have been then a lad of, say, sixteen years, he would have commenced his university career about 1368. He eventually took the degree of doctor of laws, for which he kept the three years' course (pp. 74, 242), that is, after being admitted bachelor. He could not have attained to the higher degree in less than twelve years from the date of his first entering the university; and he probably resided somewhat longer. The fact that he was appointed a notary (pp. 3, 139) by cardinal Pileo di Prata in 1381 seems to suggest that, by that time, he had risen to some position and had taken the degree of doctor.

The details of Adam's life in the succeeding years are scanty. In 1387 we learn that he was residing in Oxford (pp. 6, 145) as an "extraordinary" in canon law, presumably as lecturer for the "extraordinary" lectures; and in 1388 and 1389 he was implicated as a ringleader in the feud of the Welsh and southerners against the northern scholars. From these references it may be inferred that, after taking his doctor's degree, he either remained in, or soon returned to, Oxford, and resided there for some years, being engaged in university teaching. This view is supported by the remark that he incidentally makes, in connection with Chicheley's advancement to the see of Canterbury (pp. 123, 303), that it was to him that he handed over his chair of civil law. Unless Adam is speaking carelessly, we must regard this civil chair as a further advancement on the appointment he had held as "extraordinarius." Now, Chicheley took the degree of bachelor of laws early in 1390, and he therefore could not have held the chair before that time; and he went out of residence in the

middle of 1392. Adam, then, must have vacated his appointment in Chicheley's favour between those dates. After this he practised for seven years in the court of Canterbury, as he informs us (pp. 74, 242), apparently from 1392 to 1399; for in the latter year, when he was presented by archbishop Arundel to the church of Kemsing, he was styled "curiae nostrae Cantuariensis advocatus."[1]

Adam was present in the parliament held in September of 1397; but he does not say in what capacity. It is most probable, however, that he was there in some connection with archbishop Arundel and his brother Richard, earl of Arundel, both of whom then fell under the king's vengeance, the former being banished and the latter losing his life. The regretful terms in which Adam refers to the earl's death (pp. 15, 159) indicate his personal interest in that unfortunate man. His relations with the Arundels are explained by the alliance of their house with the Mortimers; Philippa, daughter of Edmund, earl of March, Adam's patron, and herself his patron also, having been married, in 1391, as his second wife, to this same earl of Arundel.[2] Indeed, we may assume that from the time when the families of Arundel and Mortimer were thus brought into such

[1] Lambeth Palace library: Arundel register, i. 263.

[2] She had previously been the wife of John Hastings, earl of Pembroke, who was killed in a tournament, and, after Arundel's execution, she married as a third husband Thomas Poynings, baron St. John.

Adam of Usk also seems to have had his enemies among the members of the Arundel family. For some unknown reason he disliked the lady Bergavenny, who was Joan, wife of William Beauchamp, baron Bergavenny, and daughter, by his first wife, of the above Richard, earl of Arundel. He calls her a second Jezebel (pp. 63, 228). Her curious will, which suggests a masterful character in the lady, is printed by Dugdale, *Baronage*, i. 240.

close bonds, Adam, as a clergyman, would have enjoyed the protection of Arundel, archbishop then of York and, in 1396, of Canterbury. That at a later date he benefited by the archbishop's patronage and was his dependent down to the day of Arundel's death is sufficiently shown in the course of this chronicle. It seems, then, quite a natural thing to find him, on his next appearance, in company with the archbishop at Bristol in the train of Henry Bolingbroke, whose march northward to Chester he followed. With a certain tone of self-importance Adam has described some incidents during this progress in which he personally took part. At Usk, his native place, he secured the submission of the inhabitants to Henry, who had threatened to pillage their country in punishment for the resistance which they had been prepared to offer at the instigation of the lady of the place, who was Alianore, the daughter of Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, king Richard's half-brother, and widow of Roger Mortimer, fourth earl of March. This lady was now married to her second husband, sir Edward de Cherleton, who appears at a later time under the title of the lord of Powis, and for whom Adam claims to have obtained, on this occasion, the favour of Bolingbroke (pp. 25, 174). At Ludlow he again used his influence with Henry and archbishop Arundel for the release of Thomas Prestbury from prison and for his promotion as abbot of Shrewsbury. Arrived at Chester, Adam seems to have combined his duties as a priest in the celebration of mass with the apparently not uncongenial occupation of joining in the search for and plunder of the hidden goods of the inhabitants.

At this point we should note the benefices held by Adam of Usk down to this period, so far as they have

been ascertained. First, we find that on the 11th September, 1383, he was presented to the church of Mitchel Troy in Monmouthshire, in the diocese of Llandaff, then in the king's gift by reason of the wardship of Roger, heir of the late Edmund Mortimer, third earl of March[1]. This living he exchanged on the 21st September, 1385, for that of Babcary in Somersetshire, in the diocese of Bath and Wells[2]; but how long he held the latter does not appear, and whether it was this or some other benefice that he exchanged, in 1396, for the rectory of Castle Combe in Wiltshire, in the diocese of Salisbury, remains uncertain. At all events in that year he is found in possession of the church of Castle Combe, by exchange with the incumbent Henry Pake; and he seems to have held it till the year 1408, when the name of Ralph de Derham appears as rector[3]. It is to be noted that the patron of this living was sir Stephen Scrope, to whom we shall have to make reference at a later stage of Adam's career[4]. In addition to the rectory of Castle Combe, Adam was presented, under papal dispensation, by Philippa, daughter of Edmund Mortimer, earl of March, and now lady St. John, who has been mentioned above, to the living of West Hanningfield in Essex, in the diocese of London, probably early in the year 1399; not long before that lady's death, which took place in 1400, as he himself tells us (pp. 55, 217). He almost at once exchanged West Hanningfield for Shire Newton in Monmouthshire, in the diocese of Llandaff, on the 24th October, 1399, the incumbent of the latter being John Kyrkton[5]; and again, on the 24th November of the

[1] Pat. Rolls, 7 Ric. II., i. 32. [2] Ibid., 9 Ric. II., i. 33.

[3] G. P. Scrope, *History of the Manor and ancient Barony of Castle Combe*, 1852, p. 371. [4] See p. xxviij.

[5] Pat. Rolls, 1 Hen. IV., i. 20; *Cal. Pat. Rolls, Hen. IV.*, i. 22.

same year, he exchanged Shire Newton for Panteg, in the same county and diocese[1]. The latter exchange was effected with Thomas ap Adam, who we learn from Adam's own statement was his cousin (pp. 40, 195); and the living of Panteg, thus acquired, he surrendered in favour of another cousin, Matthew ap Hoel.

At the same time our chronicler enjoyed the direct patronage of his friend archbishop Arundel, who presented him, on the 17th November, 1399, to the living of Kemsing,[2] with the chapel of Seal, in Kent, in the diocese of Rochester, together with the canonry and prebend of Llandogo, in the collegiate church of Abergwili, in Caermarthenshire, in the diocese of Llandaff (pp. 40, 195). But of these benefices Adam was not to hold possession without challenge. First, as to the canonry and prebend of Llandogo: his title was disputed by Walter Ammeney, priest, of the diocese of Exeter, who appealed to the papal court, and who, on the hearing of his case, was reinstated. Against this decision Adam appealed and petitioned for the case to be re-tried in Wales, litigation in Rome being costly; whereupon a mandate was issued on the 3rd April, 1401, to the precentor of St. David's for a new trial, with direction that, should it be found that neither party had any right, then the precentor should collate and assign to Adam the said canonry and prebend, value not exceeding twenty marks, notwithstanding that he holds Kemsing, value not exceeding thirty marks[3]. From later evidence it seems that Adam finally obtained possession[4].

In regard to Kemsing and the annexed chapel of Seal

[1] Pat. Rolls, 1 Hen. IV., iii. 16; *Cal.* i. 108.

[2] Lambeth Palace library: Arundel register, i. 263.

[3] *Calendar of Papal Registers, Papal Letters*, v. 457.

[4] Ibid., vj. 44, 45, under date 3 id. Nov., 1404.

he was not so successful. On the 1st July, 1402, a papal mandate was issued to the archbishop of Canterbury and others—reciting that the church and chapel had been appropriated to the priory (afterwards abbey) of Saint Saviour of Bermondsey; that, on a representation by Adam of neglect of divine service therein, the pope had annulled this appropriation; and that thereupon the abbey had petitioned on the ground of wrongful dispossession on false pretences, and that judgement had been given in favour of the abbey;—and ordering the execution of the sentence and the removal of Adam [1]. Later, the abbey having been reinstated and holding possession, but fearing fresh litigation on account of the previous annulment of the appropriation, the pope made the appropriation anew [2].

To round up the tale of Adam's preferments at this time, we note his statement (pp. 45, 206) that he received a prebend in the church of Bangor (possibly Bangor Monachorum St. Dinoth, in the counties of Denbigh and Flint), by gift of the prince of Wales.

Resuming the narrative of Adam's career, on Henry's arrival in London with the captive king, we find him appointed "among certain doctors, bishops, and others," to sit as member of a commission to advise on the question of the deposition of Richard. No doubt he directly owed this important appointment to the archbishop's influence; but at the same time it implies a recognition of his merits as a lawyer. It was during the session of this commission that the examination of the chronicles took place, as told by Adam himself, to decide the claim which is said to have been put forward with the view of

[1] *Cal. Pap. Reg., Pap. Lett.*, v. 506.
[2] Ibid., vj., under date 3 kal. Mar., 1404.

giving a title to the Lancastrian succession (pp. 30, 182). And an interesting incident recorded at this time is Adam's visit to the Tower and admission to the presence of the imprisoned king not long before his deposition. That Adam was present at that great historical event in parliament is most probable, although he does not actually say so; but he does mention his attendance in Henry's first parliament and at his coronation, in connection with which ceremony he was retained by sir Thomas Dymock to draw his petition for the championship (pp. 35, 188). All through these events we may presume that he was more or less in communication with the archbishop, on whose restoration to the primacy he has some observations and gives a graphic account of the ejectment from Lambeth palace of the armorial devices of the dispossessed prelate Roger Walden (pp. 38, 192), whose submission he witnessed and to whose worthy character he bears testimony.

Adam's services as a lawyer were required from time to time on public business. On the 23rd February, 1400, we find him appointed one of a commission to hear an appeal from a judgement of the military court of Bordeaux[1]; and in September of the same year he was called on for an opinion on the question of the reimbursement to France of the portion of the dower of Richard's young widow, queen Isabella, which was repayable in default of issue of the marriage, and which Henry would have been glad to find some excuse for withholding (pp. 48, 209). Nine months later Adam saw the young princess depart on her homeward journey, "showing a countenance of lowering and evil aspect to king Henry, and scarce opening her lips, as she went her way" (pp. 63, 229).

[1] Pat. Rolls, 1 Hen. IV., vj. 31; Rymer, *Fœdera*, viij. 129.

During this period he was also retained as counsel in certain private suits, to which he himself refers. In 1399 he was concerned in obtaining the confirmation of the title of sir James Berkeley in Raglan and other lordships. In the next year he was counsel for lord Morley in his suit against the earl of Salisbury, in which his fee, as he notices, was one hundred shillings and twelve yards of scarlet cloth. And again, in 1401, he appeared for lord Grey of Ruthin in his long and costly suit in the court of chivalry to substantiate his claim to bear the arms of Hastings; and also, in a similar armorial action, for sir Walter Byttervey against sir John Colvylle of Dale (a Shakespearean character).

Adam was by no means unconscious of his own legal acquirements, and certainly missed no occasion for airing his knowledge. The way in which he parades the decretals in convocation is amusing (pp. 44, 204); and still more so is his attempt to overwhelm the German envoy, on the delicate question of the recent imperial election, with citations from the same authorities, when the bishop of Hereford opportunely came to the rescue of the embarrassed diplomatist and bade the officious Adam hold his peace (pp. 59, 223).

But, granting that our chronicler was a competent lawyer, he was hardly a wise man, and he was certainly of a particularly credulous disposition. The marvellous appeals to him in its most simple forms. Prophecies of Bridlington and others are solemnly vouched. Wonderful eggs, a two-headed calf, a one-eyed boy, the spontaneous ringing of bells, a stream flowing blood, are all faithfully recorded. More valuable is his story of king Richard's greyhound (pp. 41, 196); and the ominous incidents which attended that monarch's coronation (pp. 42, 200)

as well as the coronation of Henry the fourth (pp. 119, 298) are at least interesting, even if they are not authentic. A seer of visions and a dreamer of dreams, Adam has on every fitting occasion a dream or vision to recount, which at least does credit to his imagination.

To his native town of Usk he was affectionately attached. He himself tells us of his gift to the church of certain service books and vestments, the latter broidered (a touch of vanity!) with his armorial bearings which testified his descent from his namesake Adam, the father of mankind: on a field sable, a naked man delving (pp. 56, 219). Again, when in Rome, he obtained an indulgence in favour of the nunnery of Usk (pp. 93, 268), which had been reduced to poverty by the Welsh wars. And in the end he was buried in Usk church. His full account of the death of John Usk, abbot of Chertsey (pp. 46, 207), would suggest some relationship: and the selection, for special mention, of the name of Thomas Usk (pp. 6, 146) would make us wish to believe that our writer was connected with the author of the "Testament of Love." But the most that we can assume is that they were fellow townsmen.

The last public employment of Adam which has to be noticed, before the event which compelled his retirement to foreign lands, was an inquiry into a scandal in the priory of Nuneaton (pp. 57, 220) which he was called on by the archbishop of Canterbury to undertake in association with an interesting personage, Philip Repyngdon, the quondam follower of Wycliffe, abbot of Leicester and king Henry's chaplain and confessor, who afterwards became bishop of Lincoln. No doubt it was the connection thus brought about between the two men that enabled Adam to give in his chronicle the text of the remarkable

letter of remonstrance which Repyngdon addressed to the king (pp. 65, 231).

We now arrive at the year 1402, when Adam abruptly announces, without giving any reason, his departure, in February, for Rome. It is to Mr. Wylie's minute investigations that we owe our knowledge of the true cause of this journey. Grievous is it to have to relate that Adam of Usk, a doctor of laws of Oxford, a clergyman of standing, and one who enjoyed the protection of the great and powerful, and who, we doubt not, was looking forward to substantial preferment, had, on the 2nd November, 1400, taken to the road in Westminster and stolen a horse, colour black, saddle and bridle, value one hundred shillings, together with the sum of fourteen marks in cash, all the property of one Walter Jakes; and that Adam and his servants, Edward Usk and Richard Edoyn, were convicted as common thieves[1].

[1] These facts appear in the pardon granted, in 1403, to Edward Usk. Pat. Rolls, 4 Hen. IV., ij. 22.—"Rex omnibus ballivis et fidelibus suis, ad quos, etc., salutem. Sciatis quod, cum Edwardus Usk et Ricardus Edoyn, servientes dilecti ligei nostri Ade Usk, clerici, indictati existant de eo quod idem Adam, una cum prefatis Edwardo et Ricardo et aliis, die Martis proximo post festum Omnium Sanctorum, anno regni nostri secundo, jacuerunt in insidiis apud villam Westmonasterii, ad quosdam ligeos nostros depredandos, ac in insidiis ibidem sic jacendo quendam equum nigri coloris Walteri Jakes, una cum una sella et freno, precii centum solidorum, et quatuordecim marcas in moneta dicti Walteri, ibidem inventas, felonice furati fuerunt, et quod iidem Adam, Edwardus, et Ricardus communes latrones existunt,—Nos de gracia nostra speciali perdonavimus eidem Edwardo sectam pacis nostre, que ad nos versus ipsum pertinet pro feloniis supradictis, unde sic indictatus, rettatus, vel appellatus existit, ac eciam utlagarias, si que in ipsum hiis occasionibus fuerint promulgate, et firmam pacem nostram ei inde concedimus; Ita tamen quod stet recto in curia nostra, si quis versus eum loqui voluerit de feloniis supradictis vel aliqua eorumdem. In cujus, etc. Teste rege apud Westmonasterium, xvj. die Junii [1403]."

May not this Edward Usk, described as Adam's servant, perhaps be identical with Edward ap Adam, his kinsman, to whom he bequeathed the MS. of the Polychronicon?

At this disgraceful breach of the law, the king's anger blazed out against Adam. Whether the culprit claimed benefit of clergy, we know not; probably the archbishop's influence served to protect him from condign punishment. But he had to leave the country, an exile, to his own dishonour but to the advantage of the narrative of his chronicle, which from this point contains an interesting account of his adventures abroad. It is not improbable that Adam purposely chose Rome as the place of his retreat on account of the suit which was then being prosecuted against him at the papal court for the recovery of the rectory of Kemsing and the chapel of Seal, and which, as we have seen, was soon afterwards decided in favour of his opponents.

He took ship at Billingsgate on the 19th February. Two days earlier he had found two sureties in £40 each to refrain from doing anything in the court of Rome prejudicial to the king or to the laws and customs of his kingdom of England or to the statute of provisors[1]. Landing at Bergen-op-Zoom, he travelled eastward, through Diest, Maastricht, and Aachen, to Cologne, where no doubt he took boat on the Rhine, following its course through Bonn, Coblentz, Worms, Speyer, Strassburg, and Breisach to Basel. Thence, striking south, he reached Bern, and then journeyed eastward to Lucerne, where he would have traversed the lake, and passed over the St. Gotthard "in an ox-waggon, half dead with cold," dropping down on the Italian side into Bellinzona. His journey so far had occupied a month. From Bellinzona he travelled southward through Como, Milan and Piacenza, to Borgo-San-Donnino. But thence—instead of continuing to follow the main road in a south-easterly direction to

[1] Close Rolls, 3 Hen. IV., i. 6.

Parma and Bologna, and onward to Florence and Perugia, —he turned due south and made his way across the mountains to Pontremoli, and, emerging at Carrara, he followed the coast-road through Pietrasanta to Pisa. Then, once more turning inland, he accomplished the rest of his journey by way of Siena and Viterbo, arriving in Rome on the 5th April, a little more than six weeks after leaving England. The reason for deviating from the more direct route was to avoid the disturbed districts in which Gian Galeazzo of Milan was at war. The great comet of 1402, which was said to portend the approaching death of that prince, was blazing in the heavens as our traveller pursued his way from Cologne to Pisa.

Arrived in Rome, Adam was taken under the protection of cardinal Balthasar Cossa (the future pope John the twenty-third), and was presented by him to Boniface the ninth; and, after examination by cardinal Cosimo dei Migliorati, who was soon to become pope Innocent the seventh, an old friend who as papal collector had known him in England, he was appointed papal chaplain and auditor. In the pride of his exaltation, he tells us that thirty great causes were forthwith submitted to his judgement. This perhaps is an exaggeration; but, be that as it may, the *Calendar of Papal Registers* proves that Adam of Usk was honourably employed in deciding various suits. He had not long to wait for other marks of favour from the papal see. The suit for Kemsing went against him; but towards the close of the year, as he tells us, the pope conferred on him the archdeaconry of Buckingham, and the livings of Knoyle, Tisbury, and Deverill (containing the five parishes of Brixton, Kingston, Hill, Longbridge, and Monkton), in Wiltshire; but owing to his nationality, or, as he expresses

it, "the Welsh war preventing this," the preferments were withheld, and he received instead, at a later date, the archdeaconries of Llandaff and Caermarthen, together with the church of Llandefailog and the prebend of Llanbister (pp. 77, 246). From the *Calendar of Papal Registers*[1] it appears that these latter benefices were conferred on Adam by pope Boniface on the 18th August, 1404, value altogether not exceeding three hundred marks; that he was still rector of Castle Combe, which he had received licence to exchange at pleasure; and that he was now holding that living, together with a canonry and prebend in the diocese of St. Asaph (which may be identified with the prebend in Bangor Monachorum St. Dinoth, in that diocese, if we are right in conjecturing the latter to be the one conferred upon him by the prince of Wales), and certain others in Abergwili (*e.g.* the canonry and prebend of Llandogo), value not exceeding eighty marks, which last he was to surrender on obtaining possession of the canonry and prebend of Llanbister.

In the same year 1404 the see of Hereford fell vacant by the death of John Trevenant on the 6th April, and was intended by the pope for Adam (if we are to believe his own story), who attributes the failure of the proposal to the envy and slander of his enemies (pp. 85, 256). Again, later in the same year, a scheme was set on foot to secure for him, by papal provision, the bishopric of St. David's (pp. 92, 265); but again his enemies prevailed, and nothing came of it. An attempt made at this time by Adam to gain Henry's favour by a submissive letter had no effect.

Meanwhile pope Boniface died and was succeeded by

[1] *Cal. Pap. Reg., Pap. Lett.*, vj. 44, 45, under date 3 id. Nov., 1404. I have to express my acknowledgements to Mr. J. A. Twemlow, the editor of the calendar, for references to material not yet published which he has kindly supplied.

Adam's friend, cardinal dei Migliorati, as Innocent the seventh. These events give occasion to our chronicler to describe, with some curious details, the new pontiff's election and coronation and the ceremonies and public games connected therewith. Moreover, the occasion was too important to be passed by without appropriate dreams on Adam's part, regarding both the dead and the living pope, uncomplimentary to the former but favourable to the latter.

But evil days were coming on Innocent, and Adam of Usk shared his misfortunes. In August, 1405, took place the revolt of the Romans against the pope and the flight of the latter to Viterbo. Poor Adam was left behind and, stripped even to his shoe-latchets, he had to remain in hiding for some days, disguised as a Dominican, until he could escape down the river, dressed as a sailor, and thus make his way to rejoin the pope. Innocent seems to have appreciated the humourous incongruity of a middle-aged doctor of laws masquerading as a common mariner, and had his gibes for the unfortunate fugitive. Reduced to sore straits by the flight from Rome of the merchant who acted as his banker and deserted by his friends, Adam, while at Viterbo, had a severe illness, from which he only recovered through the humanity of the pope, who sent his own physician—a Jew, it is to be noted—to tend him. He returned to Rome with the papal court in March, 1406; but he had had enough of unpleasant experiences in that city, and on the 18th June following he turned his face northward again and set out on the road towards England.

As it seems, he had received no assurance that Henry was prepared to pardon him; but it is probable that his journey to Bruges, whither he now directed his course, was specially undertaken with this object in view, and in

any case he must have felt that, if he were nearer to his own country, he would be in a better position and would have better opportunities to sue for grace. He travelled by way of Siena and Genoa, and thence through Piedmont, crossing the Mont Cenis on the 29th June, and taking the route through Savoy, Burgundy, and Champagne, by way of Dijon and Troyes, to Paris; thence through Clermont to Amiens, and from thence through Arras to Bruges. In that city he met, it may be assumed by appointment, Richard del Brugg, Lancaster king of arms, a favourite of king Henry and in his confidence, who, however, warned the traveller of the king's continued animosity and counselled him not to venture into England without a pardon first assured. This he undertook to sue for, and for it Adam waited expectant for two years, occupying the time, to some advantage, in legal practice in Flanders and the north of France, but not escaping the misfortune of being robbed by certain of his own countrymen.

While at Bruges, Adam came in contact with the fugitive earl of Northumberland and with Thomas, lord Bardolf, who endeavoured to persuade him to join their fortunes (pp. 105, 284). But he was cautious and refused; he wisely "turned his cloak" and determined to abide the king's favour. The defeat and death of the earl justified Adam's worldly wisdom, and he piously "gave thanks unto Him who foreseeth what is to come, for that I had stayed behind." Notwithstanding, the report of his intercourse with the rebels came to Henry's ears and drew down on the unfortunate exile a greater measure of the king's wrath, whose indignation waxed stronger day by day. When therefore Adam again met the king of arms, at Paris, he learned that his case was apparently

hopeless. Thereupon he came to a bold decision, which raises in the mind a strong suspicion that he was not altogether innocent of some previous intriguing with Glendower. In his own words, "I, Adam, the writer of this history, made a declaration before the same king of arms that I would feign myself Owen's man, and with my following would cross over into Wales unto him; and thence, taking my chance, I would steal away from him to my lord of Powis, to await under his care the king's favour. And so it came to pass. And this declaration saved me my life" (pp. 117, 295). Taking ship (he does not say at what port), he was at first unsuccessful in eluding the English cruisers, eight ships of Devon giving chase, like hounds after a hare, and driving the fugitive to seek shelter in St. Pol de Léon in Brittany. A second attempt was successful, and Adam at length landed at Barmouth in Merionethshire (probably towards the end of the year 1408) and took to the hills among Owen's followers, "sorely tormented with many and great perils of death and capture and false brethren, and of hunger and thirst, and passing many nights without sleep for fear of the attacks of foes." Nor was it quite easy to slip away to his protector, lord Powis. Glendower was suspicious and bound him "under the close restraint of pledges," which, however, Adam appears to have had no hesitation in disregarding. Escaping by night, he found safety in Pontypool, and there he seems to have passed more than two years, "like a poor chaplain only getting victuals for saying mass, shunned by thankless kin and those who were once my friends, a life sorry enough—and how sorry God in His heart doth know."

But, at last, Adam's troubles were over. By the intercession of David Holbache (known to us chiefly as the

founder of Oswestry Grammar School), a pardon in his favour was issued on the 20th March, 1411, which confirms his own story of his having joined Glendower as a temporary expedient:—

"Rex omnibus ballivis et fidelibus suis, ad quos, etc., salutem. Sciatis quod, cum Adam Uske, clericus, contra voluntatem suam in comitiva Owini de Glyndorduy et Wallensium rebellium extiterit, et ab eis tam cicius quam potuit recesserit, et ad graciam nostram expectandam venerit, Nos, de gracia nostra speciali, et ad supplicacionem dilecti nobis David Holbache, armigeri, perdonavimus eidem Ade sectam pacis nostre, que ad nos versus ipsum pertinet, pro omnimodis prodicionibus et adhesionibus inimicis et rebellibus nostris et corone nostre, ac pro omnimodis feloniis et transgressionibus per ipsum Adam ante hec tempora factis sive perpetratis, unde indictatus, rettatus, vel appellatus existit, ac eciam utlagarias si que in ipsum hiis occasionibus fuerint promulgate, et firmam pacem nostram ei inde concedimus; Ita tamen quod stet recto in curia nostra, si qui versus eum loqui voluerint de premissis seu aliquo premissorum. In cujus, etc. Teste rege apud Westmonasterium, xx. die Marcii [1411]. Per ipsum regem."[1]

In the joy of freedom, Adam now got him to his own country among old friends and kinsmen; but he did not find himself in all cases very welcome, especially with those, as he says, who were his debtors. He had already learned, while he was abroad, that he had been deprived of all his benefices. His principal living, that of Castle Combe, had been bestowed, in 1408, on Ralph de Derham, sir Stephen Scrope being the patron; and it is probably to this deprivation that the words refer, which are quoted above (p. ix) from the preliminary notes accompanying Adam's chronicle: "Et quamvis per invidiam cujusdam militis fuit privatus beneficio." The conclusion of the sentence, "ecce quam solempnis fuit ejus restitucio," would then refer to his restoration to his practice in the

[1] Pat. Rolls, 12 Hen. IV., 18.

court of Canterbury and to his presentation to the living of Merstham in Surrey, which he owed to his patron archbishop Arundel. He was indeed hoping for promotion to greater fortune when Arundel suddenly died, early in 1414, and Adam's expectations were disappointed. His eulogy on his patron is accompanied by the inevitable vision of the prelate's death, a well-conceived fiction and constructed with some literary skill. After this there is little to tell of his career. On the 2nd November, 1414, he exchanged with Roger Capteyn the rectory of Merstham for that of Hopesay in Shropshire, in the diocese of Hereford[1]. In 1415 he was present in convocation and exerted his influence to relieve from taxation the benefices of Wales, as being impoverished by war. From thence we have no further record of him until the year 1423, when he exchanged with David ap Jevan ap Meredith Goch, on the 12th July, the living of Hopesay for that of Tregruk or Tregreg, now Llangibby, in Monmouthshire, about two miles south of Usk, in the diocese of Llandaff[2]. Five years later, on the 12th July, 1428, his estate in this benefice was ratified[3].

Adam must by this time have been well stricken in years, if we are right in our conjecture that he was born about 1352. But he was yet to live a little longer. His will, which has fortunately been preserved[4], was dated on the 20th January, 1429–30; and it was proved on the 26th March, 1430. He died probably in the seventy-eighth year of his age.

The text of the will is as follows :—

"In Dei nomine, amen. Vicesimo die mensis Januarii, anno Domini millesimo cccc^mo^ vicesimo nono, ego Adam Usk, legum

[1] Lambeth Palace library: Chichele register, i. 61 b.
[2] Pat. Rolls, 1 Hen. VI., iv. 16. [3] Ibid., 6 Hen. VI., i. 32.
[4] It has been printed in *The English Historical Review*, April, 1903.

doctor, compos et sanus memorie, timens mortis periculum michi evenire, condo testamentum meum in hunc modum: In primis lego animam meam Deo, et beate Marie virgini, ac omnibus sanctis ejus; corpusque meum ad sepeliendum in ecclesia parochiali de Usk, coram ymagine beate Marie virginis. Item, lego ecclesie parochiali predicte unum librum appellatum 'Racionale divinorum.' Item, lego domino Johanni, vicario de Usk, iij. s. iiij. d. Item, lego cuilibet moniali prioratus de Usk xx. d. Item, lego fratribus minoribus de Kerdeffe unum trentale, et tantum fratribus predicatoribus ejusdem ville. Item, lego fratribus Augustinensibus de Newport unum trentale. Item, lego ecclesie cathedrali Landavensi iij. s. iiij. d. Item, lego Edwardo ap Adam, consanguineo meo, unum librum vocatum 'Policronica.' Item, lego Philippo Went c. s. Item, lego fratri meo xl. s. Item, lego Griffino et Guyllym xl. s. Item, lego Meric ap Jevan ap M[eredith?] et uxori sue iiij. li. Item, lego Johanne sorori mee xl. s. Item, lego Johanni vab Jor[werth] xx. s. Item, lego iiij. filiis dicti Griffini, cuilibet illorum unum nobile. Item, lego domino Griffino Vachan, capellano, iij. s. iiij. d. Item, lego domino Johanni ap Guyllym xl. d. Item, lego Thome Went de Castell Coṁe xx. s. Item, lego Johanni ap David ap Griffin xx. s., quas sibi accommodavi. Item, lego Thome ap M[eredith?] v. nobilia. Item, lego Wenllyan v[erch] David ap Griffin v. nobilia. Item, lego Alicie v[erch] David ap Gr[iffin] v. nobilia. Item, lego Jor[werth] ap Hopkyn v. nobilia. Item, lego M[eredith?] ap Jor[werth] v. nobilia. Residuum vero omnium bonorum meorum non legatorum lego dicto Edwardo et sue disposicioni; quem ordino, facio, et constituo, ad exequendum presens testamentum, meum executorem. In cujus rei testimonium huic presenti testamento meo sigillum meum apposui. Hiis testibus, dicto Johanne filio Willelmi, Johanne Bays, et Thoma ap Jor[werth], ac multis aliis. Datum apud Usk, die, mense, anno supradictis."[1]

The item in the will which, for our present purpose, has the chief interest is Adam's bequest to his kinsman, Edward ap Adam (who was also his residuary legatee and executor), of the "Policronica," now the Additional MS. 10,104 in the British Museum, which has

[1] Probate Registry, Somerset House, "Lufnam" register, fo. 13.

been fully described above. The only other book named in the will is a copy of the "Rationale divinorum officiorum" of Durandus, bishop of Mende, which is left to the church of Usk, the vicar also receiving a legacy of 3*s.* 4*d.* To each nun of Usk priory, the establishment in whose interest we have seen Adam exerting himself at the papal court, and among whose inmates were some of his kinswomen, he leaves a remembrance of 1*s.* 8*d.* The three confraternities of the friars minors and the friars preachers of Cardiff and the Austin friars of Newport receive each a "trentale," or money sufficient to provide for thirty masses for the good of the soul of the deceased; and to the cathedral church of Llandaff there is a legacy of 3*s.* 4*d.* Among the individuals who benefit under the will, it is interesting to find a brother of Adam (whose name has been omitted) and a sister Joan. Judging by the bequests of the will, it seems that the testator was not ill-provided with this world's goods. The total amount of the money legacies, exclusive of that left to the nuns of Usk which we have no means of computing, is £28 6*s.* 8*d.*

In accordance with the wish expressed in his will, Adam was buried in Usk church, where there still exists a brass, consisting of a long strip of metal engraved with an inscription in two lines, which is undoubtedly a portion of his epitaph, in the Welsh tongue.

This brass has been for generations a puzzle to antiquaries and philologists. In 1773, a notice of it, accompanied by a very imperfect facsimile, appeared in *Archaeologia*, vol. ij, in a paper on the Julia Strata communicated to the Society of Antiquaries by the Reverend William Harris, who quotes an interpretation by Dr. Wotton which discovers in the inscription the

epitaph of a certain Solomon the Astrologer connected with a school of philosophers well skilled in astronomy and all other sciences and established at Caerleon ar Wysk before the coming of the Saxons. Knowing our Adam as well as we do, this solution of the riddle is irresistibly ludicrous. Gough, in his edition of Camden's *Britannia* (1789), vol. ij. p. 487, repeats *Archaeologia*. In 1801 Coxe, in his *Historical Tour in Monmouthshire*, p. 418, gave a better facsimile and quoted previous interpretations, also adding others. Next, the Cambrian Archaeological Association turned its attention to the brass and printed further observations in the *Archaeologia Cambriensis*, vol. ij. (1847) p. 34; and finally, in 1885, it was again before the Association (*Arch. Cambr.*, 5th series, vol. ij. p. 344), when Canon (now Archdeacon) Thomas claimed it as the epitaph of our chronicler.

I am indebted for my first knowledge of this important record of Adam of Usk to my friend, the Reverend C. H. Middleton-Wake, who, when visiting Usk church not long after the first publication of the chronicle, observed in the brass the name of "Adam Yske," and rightly conjectured that it concerned our Adam. Recently the Venerable David Richard Thomas, archdeacon of Montgomery, has had the kindness to communicate with me on its identification.

From what has been stated, it is obvious that the reading and interpretation of the inscription leave ample room for conjecture; and the task presents difficulties even to so learned and experienced a scholar as Professor Rhŷs, of Oxford, who has kindly favoured me with the following observations and rendering:—

"The rubbing from Adam of Usk's epitaph seems to read as follows:

(1) 'Nole clode yrethrode yar lleyn |
(2) aduocade llawnhade llundeyn |
(3) A barnour bede breynt apilet |
(4) ynev a ro ty hanabe.
(5) Seliff sunnoeir suniase |
(6) adam yske ev al kuske |
(7) Deke kummode doctor kymmen |
(8) llen aloei llawn oleue.

"I have divided the two long lines of the brass into four short ones each, and have numbered them accordingly for the sake of convenience. The orthography is Franco-English, more or less consistently, but there are certain errors in the spelling which must probably be ascribed to the man who engraved the epitaph. He would seem to have had it written out for him in the sort of handwriting with which one is familiar in the Red Book of Hergest. The first slip occurs in the first line: the first *r* should be *v*. Then I come to line 3, where I cannot help thinking *apilet* should be *apeleit*. I must confess, however, that even then the line does not seem at all satisfactory. In line 4 the last word was possibly written *haneve* and intended to rhyme with *oleue* at the end of line 8. But the engraver apparently misread the *v* into *b*, which was a very natural error to make in that hand, while his substitution of *a* for *e* was due to carelessness. In line 6 for *lk* read *w*: a glance at the *w*'s in any English or Welsh MS. of the period will explain at once how easy it was to commit this mistake. In line 8 the metre requires *loei* to be a dissyllable; and I think the spelling should have been *loue* or *loie*, for I am inclined to regard it as *'loue*, to be equated with the book Welsh form *oleuei*, 'would light' or 'was wont to light'; but it is not to be concealed that there are other possibilities.

"After these remarks by way of preface, I would, with the utmost diffidence, transcribe the epitaph into modern Welsh and translate it into English as follows:—

‘’Nol clod i feddrod i ar llain	From fame to a grave above, the strip (comes)
Adfocad llawnhad Llundain.	An advocate, the fullness of London.
A barnwr byd braint apêl it	The world’s Judge, by right of appeal, to thee
Y nef a ro, ty anau (?)	Grant heaven, the house of songs (?)
Selyf synnwyr syniasai	The wisdom by Solomon cogitated—
Adam Ysk ef a wiscai	With it Adam of Usk was invested;
Dug gymod, doctor cymen	With him he brought concord, discreet doctor,
Llen a ’leuai llawn olau.’	A torch full bright he lit in the world of letters.’

“I do not know what to make of *lleyn*, except to treat it as *llain*, ‘a strip,’ say here of coloured tiles in the floor, and if so it would seem that the author of the epitaph wished to specify where Adam’s grave was situated.

“Why the epigrapher wrote his Welsh in a non-Welsh orthography is not very evident; probably he was not familiar with Welsh spelling. But neither was he quite consistent with himself: witness, for instance, the assonance disguised by using *y* and *u* in *Yske* and *wuske*. Speaking more generally, he had not mastered the literary language, and he certainly did not understand the *cynghanedd* or consonance of a Welsh *englyn*. Nevertheless, he has left us the oldest epitaph I have heard of, as written in Welsh; and, so far as it goes, nothing could surpass it in interest as a specimen of the pronunciation of the Gwentian dialect of the language in the Middle Ages.” [1]

[1] Professor Rhŷs adds the following note: “Since the above was set up in type I have had an opportunity of submitting it to a friend, who has improved on it at more points than one. In later spelling his version would read as follows:—

’Nol clod ddu ethrod ddarllein	A barnwr byd breint a piler
Advocad llawnhad Llundein	Y ner a vo yth arwein.

Here, then, we bid farewell to our garrulous old friend, whose complacent vanity, we feel certain, would have been mightily soothed and flattered, could he but have foreseen that his epitaph (particularly if, as is not unlikely, he composed it himself) would in after ages have been the subject of so much learned discussion.

As a contribution to history, Adam of Usk's chronicle is too brief and too disconnected to take a very important position. Its chief value consists in its personal interest; and it has an advantage over the ordinary mediaeval chronicle in being the work of an independent individual, and not that of a monastic compiler who had to adopt and reflect the politics of his house. Adam of Usk moved in the world; he was a priest and a lawyer, he pleaded in the courts, he spoke in convocation, and he came into personal contact with some of the most important men of his day; and happily he had vanity enough to think his personal experiences not unworthy of taking a place among the general events of his time.

The chronicle commences with a series of imperfect notes of some of the principal events of Richard's reign previous to 1394—jottings from memory, which Adam himself warns us are not to be regarded as continuous historical narrative. His apology for the scanty character of his early pages might also be applied to other parts of his work, which is in fact a roughly-cast compilation,

Selyf synnwyr syniasei Deg kymmod doctor kymmen
Adam Ysk ef ae dyscei Llen a lëei llawn oleuei.

"Thus it will be seen he regards the errors in the epitaph as more numerous than I had assumed. He also mends the metre, and by reading two of the *y*'s as *th* (=Welsh *dd*) he gets rid of the awkward *yar lleyn* which becomes *ddarlleyn*, 'reading.' But even then we are left with difficulties of which neither of us has been able to dispose."

but not composed all at once, some of the events having been recorded at the time of their occurrence, while the descriptions of others have evidently been written at later times when the recollection of them was no longer fresh in the writer's mind. Hence the chronological sequence is in places at fault; and at the end of the chronicle there are careless repetitions. Had Adam revised his work, these imperfections would no doubt have disappeared; but he left others to publish "this record of his foolishness," and his literary executor appears to have thought it enough to transcribe the material as it stood.

There are three several subjects of interest which, before all others, form the most prominent features in Adam's work: the fall and deposition of Richard; the occurrences at Rome during the period of the writer's residence there; and the rebellion of Owen Glendower and contemporary affairs in Wales.

The detailed account of Richard's last parliament in 1397, with which the continuous historical narrative practically leads off, is borrowed from the chronicle of the Monk of Evesham; but this appropriation, it is fair to suggest, need not be regarded so much as a theft as a testimony to the accuracy of that history, Adam himself having been present during the proceedings. It is also Adam's personal share in the subsequent events which culminated in Richard's deposition that renders his account of things at this time so valuable as well as interesting.

His compulsory sojourn at Rome happened at an important period of papal history—the period of the death of Boniface the ninth, and of the succession of Innocent the seventh and his quarrel with the Romans

and his flight from the city and subsequent return. These events afford our chronicler an opportunity for describing various public ceremonies, which naturally had an attraction for him as a stranger, and of which he gives some curious details.

But, as a Welshman, Adam takes special notice of events in his native country, and his account of the progress of Glendower's rebellion contains many details of value. Although he speaks of the national hero and his following with some contempt, at the same time he evinces a natural sympathy with the sufferings of his countrymen at the hands of the invading English; and, as already observed, the fact of his taking refuge with Glendower, while in disgrace with Henry, after his return from Rome, suggests an earlier understanding between them. Perhaps it was to some connection of this nature that Adam owed his knowledge of Owen's letters of appeal to the king of Scotland and the Irish chieftains, which he incorporates in his chronicle.

Other documents of interest of which Adam gives the text are: sir Thomas Dymock's petition for the championship at the coronation of Henry the fourth; the case submitted for Adam of Usk's opinion on the question of the restoration of queen Isabella's dower; and the letter of remonstrance addressed to Henry the fourth by his confessor Philip Repyngdon, the abbot of Leicester.

Lastly, a passing reference may be made to the chronicle of the defeat of the French by the Flemings at the battle of Courtrai, drawn up in the form of a parody of the Gospel narrative of the Passion of our Lord, and transcribed from a MS. at Bruges. That Adam should have incorporated it in his chronicle without comment and apparently with indifference to its offensive

character is an instance of the seeming lack of reverence, according to modern ideas, for things sacred which is sometimes observable in the middle ages, when the employment of Bible history as the vehicle for the miracle-play and the passion-play naturally exposed it to the danger of vulgarly familiar treatment.

E. M. T.

British Museum,
January, 1904.

CHRONICON
ADÆ DE USK

CHRONICON

ADÆ DE USK

PREDICTO gracioso Edwardo, in vigilia Natalis Sancti Johannis Baptiste, anno regni sui quinquagesimo secundo, ab hac vita subtracto, ipsius nepos, Ricardus, Edwardi principis Wallie, dicti regis primogeniti, filius, undecim annorum pupillus, inter omnes mortales ac si secundus Apsalon pulcherimus, ei successit, aput Westmonasterium in festo Sancti Kenelmi coronatus. A.D. 1377. f. 155.

Isti Ricardo, regni sui tempore, plura votive inclita ferebantur. Et, quia tenere etatis existebat, alii, ipsius et regni curam habentes, lascivias, extorciones, intollerabiles injurias regno irrogare non desistebant. Unde illud accidit monstruosum, ut plebei[1] regni, et potissime Cancie et Essexie, sub misero duce Jac Straw, in regni dominos et regis officiarios, hujusmodi injurias et potissime taxacionum et collectarum, ut asserruerunt, sufferre non valentes, in multitudine onerosa[2] insurgendo, Londoniam, in vigilia Corporis Christi, anno Domini millesimo ccc° octogesimo primo, venerunt; et magistrum Symonem Sudbyry, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, tunc regis cancellarium, et dominum Robertum Hale, ejus thesaurarium, pluresque alios juxta turrim Londonie decapitarunt; ubi adhuc, in locis decapitacionis dictorum dominorum, in tanti prodigii memoriam, due cruces marmoree eriguntur, in perpetuum durature. A.D. 1381. Jac Straw. Cancellarii et thesaurarii decapitacio.

[1] pleibei. MS. [2] onorosa. MS.

A.D. 1381. f. 155 b. In isto plebeiorum tumultu plures regni magnates quam pluribus regni partibus fuerunt decapitati. Ducis Lancastrie palacium, regni pulcherimum, Savoy nuncupatum, prope Londoniam super Thamisii ripam, quia plebeiis exosi, per ipsos totaliter igne extitit destructum. Ipseque dux, ipsorum metu territus, in Scosiam fugam arripuit. Quibus ad placandum [1], ipsorumque ferocitatem ad sedandum [2], rex concessit omnem servilem condicionem, tam in personis quam eorum operis, de regno a cetero extirpari [3], libertatem penitus concedendam, omnesque incarceratos liberari. Hocque ubique in regni comitatibus publice mandavit et fecit proclamari. O quantus regni desolati tunc vibrabatur luctus! Quia omnes regni nobiliores interficere [4], ex seipsis regem et dominos erigere, novas leges condere, et breviter tocius insule et ejus superficiem statumque renovare, ymmo verius deturpare, jactabant. Quisque sibi exosum decapitabat; si diciorem, spoliabat. Tamen, Deo mediante, dicti eorum ducis in Smythfelde juxta Londoniam, regique capicium non deponentis nec ipsius regis magestatem in aliquo reverentis, in suorum milvorum [5] medio, subtiliter per dominum Wyllelmum Walworth, militem, Londoniensem civem, capite amputato et subito in gladii mucrone publice erecto et eis ostenso, ipsi plebeii penitus territi, subterfugia videlicet querentes, ibidem ipsorum invasivis dimissis armis, ac si hujusmodi tumultus et facinoris inmunes, miserabiliter, tanquam vulpes ad foveas, ad propria remearunt. Quos rex et domini insequentes, quosdam post equuos trahendo, quosdam gladiis trucidando, quosdam ad furcas suspendendo, quosdam membratim dividendo, ad milia trucidarunt.

Pilius cardinalis. Isto eodem anno, venit quidam in Angliam dictus Pilius, tituli Sancte [6] Praxedis presbiter cardinalis, ad tractandum cum concilio Anglie, ex parte imperatoris Almanie, regis Boemie, de et super matrimonio inter regem nostrum pre-

[1] placendum. MS. [2] cedandum. MS. [3] exturpari. MS.
[4] interfecere. MS. [5] mulvorum. MS. [6] sancti. MS.

dictum et dominam Annam, dicti imperatoris sororem, A.D. 1381.
postea ex eo capite Anglie reginam benignissimam, licet sine prole defunctam. Ineundo cardinalis iste, false se fingens legatum a latere esse ac potestatem pape habere, vices papales tunc excercuit; me inter cetera notarium tunc, licet inutiliter, in domo fratrum predicacionis Londonie, ubi tunc morabatur, creavit. Infinitam pecuniam sic collegit, et ab Anglia cum eadem pecunia, eodem tractatu matrimonii expedito, ad sui recessit dampnacionem; credens tamen, licet in vanum, facta sua hujusmodi per papam ratificari [1]. Post cujus recessum, dicta domina A.D. 1382.
Anna, per dominum regem magno precio redempta, quia Rex emit sibi uxorem.
a rege Francie in uxorem affectata, in Angliam et Anglie reginam transmittitur coronanda.

Salamonis juxta proverbium, "Ve regno cujus rex puer est," [2] ejusdem Ricardi juventutis tempore, plurima infortunia, propter eam causata pariter et contingencia, regnum Anglie non cessarunt perturbare, ut premittitur et inferius plenius notabitur, usque ad magnam ejusdem regni confusionem [3] ipsiusque Ricardi regis sibique nimis voluptuose adherencium finalem destruccionem. Inter cetera infortunia, ymmo omnium scelerum sceleratissima, in fide scilicet catholica errorum et heresum, per semina cujusdam magistri Johannis Wycleff, pestifere doctrine velud lollio eandem fidem corrumpentis, Anglia et potissime Londonia et Bristolia extiterunt corrupte. Cujus magistri Johannis, ut Machomdus, discipuli, potentibus et divitibus placabilia, decimarum scilicet et oblacionum retencionem, ac temporalium a clero ablacionem, juvenibusque incontinenciam, meritorias existere predicando, multas clades, insidias, rixas et contenciones et sediciones, adhuc durantes et, ut timeo, usque ad regni confusionem duraturas, nefandissime seminarunt. Unde, in pluribus regni partibus, et precipue Londonia

[1] radificari. MS.
[2] Eccles. x. 16. More correctly, "Væ tibi, terra, cujus rex puer est."
[3] confucionem. MS.

A.D. 1382. et Bristolia[1], velud Judei ad montem Oreb, propter vitulum
Vitulus Oreb. conflatilem (Exodi xxxij°.), mutuo in se revertentes, xxiij. milium de suis miserabilem pacientes casum merito doluerunt. Anglici inter se de fide antiqua et nova altercantes omni die sunt in puncto[2] quasi mutuo ruinam et sedicionem inferendi. Et timeo ita finaliter contingere, ut sic prius contingebat, quod plures Londonienses fideles contra dictum ducem Lancastrie, quia dicti magistri Johannis fautorem, ad ejus interfeccionem insurrexerant, ita quod, vix unam naviculam captatam intrans, a prandio ultra Thamisiam affugiens vivus evasit. Hujusmodi errores et
f. 156. hereses in civitate Londonie in tantum excreverunt, quia hujusmodi occasione rixe et discordia, quod, quando infamati super eisdem coram ordinariis venirent responsuri, populus ad mille, quidam ad acusandum, quidam ad defendendum eosdem, conviciis et rixis confluere solebant, quasi mutuo
Lollardia. irruere properantes. Crevit eciam eorum malicia in tantum quod, tempore secundi parlementi Henrici regis quinti[3] infrascripti, quod hujusmodi Lollardi ex omni parte regni Londonie congregati proposuerunt se clerum, ad tunc ibidem convocatum, penitus destruxisse. Sed dominus meus Cantuariensis eorum malicie precautus remedia paravit oportuna, ut inferius liquebit.

A.D. 1386. Propter plurima inoportuna tempora regis Ricardi, ejus juventute causata, solempne parliamentum Westmonasterii fuit celebratum, in quo duodecim regni magnates ad gubernandum regem et regnum, ac ad refrenandum laciviam et excessus sibi famulancium et adulancium, et breviter ad regni negocia remediandum, plena parliamenti provisione, sed, pro dolor!, ad infrascripta tedia, prefecti extiterunt.

A.D. 1387. Rex hujusmodi prefeccione indignans sue magestatis libertatem debitam per suos ligeos refrenari, ad instigacionem sibi famulancium, propter eorundem turpis lucri suspensionem ob hoc invidencium, usque ad ejusdem regis

[1] Bristolię. MS. [2] pincto. MS.
[3] quarti. MS. See below, pp. 121, 122.

sicque instigancium pluriumque dictorum prefectorum exterminium, dictos prefectos infestare non cessavit. Ex quo, pro dolor !, quanti dolores et tedia fuerunt insecuta, et presertim de morte illorum nobilium, ducis Glowcestrie et comitis Arundelie, plenius infra liquebit. Ut quid mora ? Dicti instigantes, ad suffocacionem subitaneam dictorum duodecim prefectorum, unum concilium generale in turri Londonie celebrari ordinarunt, in quo dictos xij. per latentes armatorum insidias, ad idem concilium convocatos, simul et subito perimere proposuerunt. Sed Deus omnipotens dictos xij., de tanta malicia precautos, tam fortiter accedere disposuit, ita ut per industriam militarem eorundem rex et ipsum instigantes perturbati regnum assurgere cum eisdem xij. timuerunt ; unde pacem, licet fictam, se habere procurarunt. Hoc audito, domina principissa, regis mater, ad hujusmodi tumultum sedandum [1], nocturno labori non parcens, a Walingforde versus Londoniam, cordis non modica contricione, iter arrepuit. Que Londonie flexis genibus filium suum regem rogavit, sub sua benediccione, se votis adulancium et presertim dictorum instigancium nullatenus inclinare, alias malediccionem suam sibi induxit. Quam rex reverenter erexit, promittens se juxta dictorum xij. velle gubernari consilium. Cui dixit mater : " Alias in coronacione tua, fili, gaudebam me tanti nati in regem coronati matrem promeruisse fieri ; sed jam doleo, quia tui ruinam video imminere, per maledictos adulatores tuos tibi causatam." Tunc rex cum matre sua ad aulam Westmonasterii transsiens, et ibidem in trono regali sedens, eosdem duodecim, licet tamen ficte et dissimulatorie, per matris mediacionem reconciliavit. A.D. 1387.

Postmodum, comes Oxonie cum litteris regiis ad partes transit Cestrie, et ipsos Cestrienses in multitudine glomerosa et armata pro destruccione dictorum xij. secum adduxit. Cujus rei dux Glowcestrie, comes Derbeie, Arundelie, Notingamie, et Warwycie, precauti, in glorioso exercitu stipati, Fuga comitis Oxonie et aliorum.

[1] cedandum. MS.

A.D. 1387. ante eorum Cestrensium excessum ad regem, dictum comitis exercitum, in vigilia Sancti Thome Appostoli, aput Ratcodbruch in comitatu Oxonie, disperserunt; ac dictum comitem Oxonie in fugam sine spe redeundi, quia in partibus transmarinis interiit, propulerunt. Fugerunt eciam tunc a facie eorundem dominorum Alexander Nevile, Ebrocensis archiepiscopus, et dominus Michael de Pole, comes Southfolchie, maximi regis consiliarii; et nunquam reversuri in exilio perierunt.

f. 156 b. Tunc presencium compilator Oxonie, in jure canonico extraordinarius existens, dictorum quinque dominorum excercitum a dicto conflictu versus Londoniam transire vidit per Oxoniam; in cujus exercitus gubernacione, Warwyci et Derbeie primam aciem comites, dux Glowcestrie mediam, ac Arundelie et Notyngamie posteram comites tenebant.

Claves civitatis. Major Londonie, ipsorum adventum audiens, eis civitatis claves transmisit. Quo facto, dicti quinque domini turrem Londonie, in festo Sancti Johannis Evangeliste, usque ad

A.D. 1388. ejus dedicionem obsiderunt; regem in ea existentem ad statim sub nova gubernacione ordinarunt; ipsius adulatorios consiliarios, usque ad parliementum proxime ex tunc sequens, dispersis carcerum custodiis tradiderunt. In crastinum Purificacionis Beate Marie Virginis dictos fugientes exularunt. Omnes regis justiciarios, quia mortis eorundem imaginate, ut premittitur, conscios[1], ipsiusque regis confessorem, Cicestrensem episcopum, in Hiberniam deportarunt. Alios ipsius regis[2] suis excessibus inordinatos fautores, ymmo verius causatores, dominos Symonem de Beverley, ejus camerarium, Robertum Tresilian, principalem justiciarium, Nycholaum Brembil, Londonie majorem, Jacobum Berners et Johannem Salusbiri, milites, Thomam Usk et Johannem Blake, domicellos, et alios quam plures decapitarunt.

A.D. 1383. Hujus regis temporibus, propter scisma papatus, episcopus

[1] consios. MS. [2] rege. MS.

Norwycensis cum cruciata in Flandriam transit, et ibidem Flandrenses circa novem mille, quia Gallicis scismaticis adherentes, bellicoso peremit insultu ; tamen partes deserere et ad propriam remeare regis Francie et ejus excercitus potencia, pluribus Anglicis ad tunc ventris fluxu [morientibus], compellebatur. A.D. 1383.

Dux eciam Lancastrie, regnum Hispanie jure uxoris sue sibi vendicans, cum alia cruciata per duos annos post ad eas partes transiit; ubi plures regni Anglie nobiliores et quasi ipsius juventutis flores militares eodem morbo amisit; tamen cum rege Hispanie, pro uno ducatu ad ipsius vite terminum habendo ac magna auri summa pro expensis, ipsiusque filia dicti regis filio et heredi collocata in uxorem, rediit in Angliam pacificatus. A.D. 1386–1388.

Hiis diebus magnum infortunium Oxonie contingebat; nam per biennium continue maxima discordia inter australes et Walences ex una parte et boriales ex altera extitit suborta. Unde rixe, contenciones, et hominum sepe interfecciones extiterunt. Primo anno, boriales ab universitate totaliter fuerant expulsi. Quam expulsionem presencium compilatori multum imposuerunt. Secundo tamen anno, in mala eorum hora, Oxoniam regressi, noctanter congregati, nobis exitum ab hospiciis armis negantes, nos multipliciter per duos dies infestarunt, quedam nostratum hospicia frangendo expoliandoque, ac quosdam occidendo. Tercio tamen die, aule Mertonis favore nostrates fortiter constipati ipsos stratas publicas, per eos illis duobus diebus pro castris occupatas, verecunde relinquere et ad propria hospicia affugere compulerunt. Quid mora? Pacificari non potuimus quousque nostrum quam plures de insurrexione proditoria indictati fuimus; inter quos presencium compilator, tanquam principalis Walencium dux et fautor, et forte non inmerito, indictatus fuerat. Sicque indictati, vix per duodenam nos obtinuimus coram regis justiciario liberari. Regem de cetero, mihi prius in ipsius potencia ignotum, et ejus leges timui, maxillis meis A.D. 1388, 1389.

Boriales ab Oxonia expulsi.

Rixa Oxonie inter scolares.

A.D. 1379. frenum imponendo[1]. Aliud eciam infortunium contingebat: nam ille nobilis miles, dominus Johannes Arundele, versus partes Francie debellandas cum florida juventute patrie directus, quassata classe in vigilia Sancti Nicholai, pro dolor!, miserabili maris intemperie, peremptus extitit. Causa infortunii sui pecuniis clero et populo exactis non inmerito imponebatur.

Semper a tempore hujusmodi exaccionis, taxe vocate,
f. 157. regnum memini aut intestinis cladibus atque transmarinis insidiis nonnulla infortunia sustinere. Numquid sic de
A.D. 1372. comite Pembrogie, cum taxa secum ad debellandum Franciam deportata, cum suis juxta Rochel depredato et in Hispaniam[2] captivato? Idem de rege Edwardo contigit, qui, collectatis clero et populo, cum magno excersitu Franciam invadere affectans, adversante vento, licet juxta maritima ejus prosperitatem per vj. menses expectans, inutiliter rediit cum excersitu, ut superius habetur de eodem. Contra
Versus. eam taxam ecce quid Bridlintonensis prophesia:—

"Dum regnat taxa, non erit gracia laxa;
Sic opus inceptum lapsum pacietur[3] ineptum."[4]

A.D. 1385. Et sic, pro dolor!, labi dinoscitur. Eciam a facie istius regis Ricardi ille vir perfectissimus, Wyllelmus Cortenay, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, quia hujusmodi taxe recistere volens, per eundem regem in Thamesia persecutus, mortem fugiens in monastico habitu, partes Devonie peciit pro tutamine; tamen hujusmodi regis persecucionem causantes mala morte interierunt, de quibus supra, ut domino Symone Beverley et de aliis.

Ordini annorum hucusque in gestis parcat lector, quia solum que vidi et audivi forcius ex veritate facti quam ex temporis ordine memorie comendavi.

A D. 1394. Anno Domini millesimo ccc^{mo} nonogesimo quarto, in festo Pentecostes, moriebatur illa benignissima domina,

[1] Ezek. xxix. 4; xxxviij. 4. [2] in Hispaniam, repeated. MS.
[3] pascietur. MS. [4] Dist. III. cap. ij.

Anna, Anglie regina, in manerio de Schene juxta Braynfort super Thamesiam situato. Quod manerium, licet regale et pulcherimum, occasione ipsius domine Anne mortis in eodem contingentis, rex Ricardus funditus mandavit et fecit extirpari.[1] Post ejus Anne sepulture solempnitatem, in crastino ad Vincula Sancti Petri, debitis honoribus decoratam, statim rex, lugubri veste cum suis indutus, ad domandum Hybernencium rebellionem, maximo excersitu constipatus, transit in Hiberniam. Sed modicum ibi profecit, quia, licet Hiberniences sibi ad votum placere tunc se fingentes, statim post ejus recessum rebellare noscuntur. A.D. 1394.

Eodem anno, in fine Maii, rex rediit in Angliam, Bristolie aplicando; et statim nuncios in Franciam pro secundo ejus maritagio, de quo infra liquebit, direxit contrahendo. Quam filiam nondum septennem, regis Aragonie filia, ipsius herede, pulcherima et virilibus amplexibus ydonea, refusa, mirabiliter duxit uxorem. Set quare illam nondum septennem[2], licet cum maximis expensis et seculi pompis Caliciis sibi nuptam, preelegit, dicitur quia regis Francie auxilio et favore, latens suum venenum effundere affectando, sibi exosos destruere proposuit; quod tamen ad suimet destruccionem suorumque complicum finaliter contingebat, ut inferius patebit. A.D. 1395. A.D. 1396.

Parliementum tentum Londonie, aput Westmonasterium, in festo Sancti Lamberti, die Lune tunc contingentis, anno Domini millesimo ccc^mo^ nongesimo septimo. In quo parliemento omni die presensium compilator interfuit. A.D. 1397. Ultimum parliementum regis Ricardi.

In primis, facta pronunciacione parliamenti, ad modum sermonis, per Edmundum Stafford, episcopum Exoniensem, cancellarium, in qua semper concludebat[3] ad unum, quod potestas regis esset sibi unica et solida et quod eam tollentes vel insidiantes pena legis essent condigni. Unde ad illum finem fuit per parliamentum ordinatum: primo, ad inquirendum qui turbant potestatem regis et ejus regaliam;

[1] exturpari. MS. [2] septendem. MS. [3] conolidebat. MS.

A.D. 1397. secundo[1], qua pena essent turbatores feriendi; tercium, ut ordinetur ne ita in futurum turbetur. Et statim rex jussit plebeiis quod statim et ante recessum convenirent de locutore parliamenti, et in crastino ad viij. de clocka eum sibi
f. 157 b. presentarent. Item, rex fecit proclamari graciam omnibus in premissis incidentibus, l. personis et aliis in isto parliemento impetendis duntaxat exceptis, dum tamen citra festum Sancti Hillari literas sue perdonacionis prosequantur cum effectu. Fecit eciam proclamari quod nullus de cetero, sub pena mortis, arma invasiva vel deffensiva gestaret in parliamento, immediata domini nostri regis retinecia excepta. Item, die Martis, dominus Johannes Buschei fuit per plebeios presentatus regi locutor parliamenti, debita protestacione premissa; et rex eum acceptavit.

Item, ad statim ille Buschei dixit regi: "Quia [sumus, domine mi rex, precepto vestro reverendo onerati vestre celsitudini regie intimare qui sunt][2] qui contra majestatem et regaliam vestram commiserunt, dicimus quia Thomas dux Glowcestrie, Ricardus comes Arundelie, anno regni vestri decimo, proditorie compulerunt vos, per medium nunc Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, tunc cancellarii, graves injurias vobis inferentes, concedere unam eis commissionem ad gubernandum regnum vestrum ac ejus statum disponendum, in prejudicium vestre magestatis ac regalie."

Item, eodem die, ipsa commissio fuit annullata cum omnibus et singulis ex ea dependentibus et per eam causatis.

Regia perdonacio revocatur.

Item, generalis perdonacio concessa post magnum parliamentum, causata[3] per eos, et una specialis perdonacio concessa domino comiti Arundelie fuerant revocate. Item, fuit per plebeios petitum, Johanne Buschei verba semper proferente, quia illa specialis perdonacio pro proditore fuit impetrata per Thomam Arundell, Cantuariensem archiepis-

[1] secunda. MS.

[2] Supplied from the *Vita Ricardi II.* of the Monk of Evesham, p. 132. The MS. has only the words, "sumus honorati."

[3] causatur. MS.

copum, tunc cancellarium Anglie, ipsius impetrator[1], qui pocius ex officio restitisset, proditor adjudicaretur. Idemque archiepiscopus surrexit volens respondere; et rex dixit sibi: "Cras." De cetero tamen ibi non comparuit. Rex eciam super ista peticione dixit quod vellet deliberare. A.D. 1397.

Item, fuit statutum quod convictus[2] de cetero contra regaliam domini regis falsus proditor, pena prodicionis[3] condigna sibi irroganda, adjudicaretur. Item, fuit statutum, de consensu prelatorum, quod criminalia de cetero, eorum irrequisito concensu, in omni parliamento essent terminanda. Et tunc, habita licencia, recesserunt.

Magnus, ut solet, habebatur tumultus; unde sagittarii regis in numero iiij^{or} millia circumvallantes domum parliementi, in medio paviamenti palacii ex hoc capite tantum factum, credentes fuisse in dicta domo aliquam rixam aut pugnam, arcubus tensis[4], sagittas ad aures trahebant, ad magnum metum omnium ibidem excistencium; et rex eos pacificavit.

Item, die Mercurii[5], dictum statutum prelatorum fuit penitus revocatum; et fuit eis jussum, sub pena amissionis temporalium, pro stabilitate agendorum in eodem parliemento, quod illo eodem die concordarent de aliquo certo procuratore ad consenciendum, nomine eorum, omnibus in eodem parliamento expediendis.

Item, rex habuit ista verba: "Domine Johannes Buschey, quia plures rogant me explanare illas l. personas in perdonacione generali exceptas, breviter nolo; et hoc petens est morte condignus. Primo quia fugerent; secundo, eciam quia excepi impetendos in isto parliamento; tertio, quia per expressionem illorum alii eorum socii timerent, ubi non esset timendum."

Item, die Jovis, dominus Cantuariensis venit ad palacium versus parliamentum; et rex misit sibi per episcopum Karlionensem quod rediret ad hospicium suum; et factum est ita, et de cetero non comparuit.

[1] ipsum impetratus. MS. [2] convicteus. MS. [3] perdicionis. MS.
[4] detensis. MS. [5] Mercure. MS.

A.D. 1397. Prelati in criminalibus per procuratorem, etc.

Item, prelati fecerunt dominum Thomam Percy, senescallum regis, procuratorem suum, cum clausulis de ratis, ad consenciendum omnibus in parliamento agendis.

Item, dominus Johannes Buchey habuit ista verba: "Domine rex, quia secundus articulus parliementi est de pena imponenda violantibus regaliam vestram, suplico quod me per viam appellacionis, accusacionis, sive impeticionis, cum licencia variandi de uno ad reliquum, quociens et quando mihi et sociis meis videbitur expedire, auctorizare dignemini." Et factum est ita. Tunc ille Buschei habuit ista verba: "Ego accuso Thomam Arundell, archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, de triplici prodicione. Primo, de commissione regiminis regni vestri sibi, Thome duci Glowcestrie, Ricardo comiti Arundellie, ad instanciam suam et per ipsum, qui pocius ex officio, quia cancellarius vester ad tunc, restitisset, proditorie concessa[1]. Secundo, quia pretextu illius proditorie commissionis, vestre regalie jurisdiccionem prodiciose usurpando, ipsi solempne parliamentum in prejudicium regalie vestre proditorie celebrarunt. Tercio, quia per dictam prodicionis usurpacionem domini Symon de Beverlei et Jacobus Bernyers, milites et fideles ligii vestri, proditorie fuerunt interfecti. De quibus nos plebeii vestri petimus judicium, tantis prodicionibus condignum, in ipsum per vos fulminari. Et, quia ipse archiepiscopus magnarum consanguinitatis, affinitatis, diviciarum, ingeniique cautelissimi et crudelissimi vir excistit, in salvacionem status vestri tociusque regni vestri et expedicionem presentis parliamenti, peto quod in salva ponetur custodia usque ad finalem sui judicii execucionem." Rex quo[que] ad hoc respondit quod propter tante[2] persone excellenciam deliberaret in crastinum; ac omnes alios in dicta commissione insertos[3] pronunciavit fideles, legales, et eciam prodicione immunes, et specialiter Alexandrum Nevyll, nuper archiepiscopum Eboracensem. Et tunc dominus Edmundus Langley, dux Eboracensis, avunculus

f. 158.

[1] concessit. MS. [2] tande. MS. [3] incertos. MS.

regis, et dominus Wyllelmus Wykham, episcopus Wyntoniensis, in dicta commissione inserti[1], lacrimantes, proni in terram ceciderunt, regi de tanto beneficio regraciando. A.D. 1397.

Item, die Veneris, scilicet in festo Sancti Mathei contingente, de Rotlond, de Kent, de Huntington, de Notyngham, de Somerset, de Sarum, comites, dominus de Spenser et dominus Wyllelmus Scroppe, in una secta rubiarum togarum de cerico, rotulatarum et albo cerico, literis aureis immixtarum, appellacionem per eos regi prius aput Notingham edditam proposuerunt; in qua accusabant Thomam ducem Gloucestrie, Ricardum comitem Arundellie, Thomam comitem Warwyci, et Thomam Mortimer, militem, de premissis prodicionibus et eciam de insurrexione armata aput Haryncay Parke contra regem prodittorie facta. Prestitaque caucione de prosequendo appellacionem suam, Ricardus comes Arundellie scistebatur in judicio in rubra toga et capicio de scarleto. Et statim dux Lancastrie dixit domino de Nevyll: "Tollas sibi zonam et capicium"; et factum est ita. Expositisque eidem comiti articulis, forti animo negando se proditorem, peciit sue perdonacionis beneficium alias concessum, protestando quod nunquam a regis[2] sui gracia vellet recedere. Dux Lancastrie sibi dixit: "Proditor, illa perdonacio est revocata." Comes respondit: "Vere mentiris! Nunquam fui proditor!" Item dux Lancastrie dixit: "Quare tunc impetrasti perdonacionem?" Comes respondit: "Ad obturandum linguas emulorum meorum, quorum tu es unus; et pro certo, quantum ad prodiciones, tu magis indiges perdonacione quam ego." Rex dixit sibi: "Respondeas appellacioni tue." Comes respondit: "Bene video quod ille persone accusant me de prodicione, ostendendo appellaciones. Vere mentiuntur omnes! Nunquam fui proditor! Ego semper peto beneficium perdonacionis mee, quam mihi infra vj. annos ultimo elapsos, in plena etate et libera voluntate vestris, ex proprio motu concessistis." Tunc dixit rex: "Ita concessi, si

[1] incerti. MS. [2] rege. MS.

A.D. 1397. non esset contra me." Tunc dixit dux Lancastrie: "Tunc non valet concessio." Comes respondit: "Vere de illa prodicione[1] plus nescivi tunc quam tu qui in partibus transmarinis fueras." Tunc dixit dominus Johannes
f. 158 b. Buschey: "Illa perdonacio revocata est per regem, dominos, et nos fideles plebeios." Comes respondit: "Ubi illi fideles plebei? Bene novi te et comitivam tuam ibi, qualiter congregati estis, non ad fidelitatem faciendam, quia plebei fideles regni non sunt hic. Sed scio quid ipsi multum dolent me; et bene scio quod tu semper fuisti falsus." Et tunc Buschei et socii sui clamaverunt: "Ecce, domine rex, qualiter iste proditor nititur suscitare sedicionem inter nos et regni plebeios domi existentes." Comes respondit: "Vos omnes mentimini! Non sum proditor!"

Comes Derbeij contra comitem Arundelie. Tunc surrexit comes de Derby et dixit sibi: "Nonne tu dixisti mihi apud Huntingtoniam, ubi primo ad insurgendum eramus congregati, quod melius esset ante omnia capere regem?" Comes respondit: "Tu, comes Derbeij, tu mentiris in caput tuum! Nunquam de domino nostro rege cogitavi, nisi quod sibi boni esset et honoris." Tunc dixit sibi rexmet: "Nonne tu dixisti mihi, tempore parliementi tui, in balneo depost albam aulam, quod dominus Symon de Bevyrley, miles meus, propter plures causas erat mortis reus? Et ego respondi tibi quod nullas mortis causas in eo scivi; et tunc tu et socii tui ipsum proditorie interfecistis." Et tunc dux Lancastrie mortis sentenciam sub hiis verbis tulit in eundem: "Ricarde, ego senescallus Anglie te proditorem esse judico, et te trahendum, suspendendum, decollandum, et quatriperciendum, ac terras tuas taliatas et non taliatas confiscandas sentencialiter et diffinitive condempno."

Sentencia contra comitem Arundelie. Tunc rex, ob reverenciam sanguinis sui, jussit eum tantum decollari. Et duxerunt eum emuli sui, comes Cancie, ipsius nepos, et alii terras suas sicientes[2], mala mortis peste, ut inferius liquebit, perempti, ad montem Turris, et ibi

[1] perdonacione. MS. [2] cisientes. MS.

ipsum decollarunt. Cum cujus anima utinam me partici- A.D. 1397.
pem fieri mererer!, quia pro certo ipsum sanctorum colegio non dubito aggregari. Corpus tamen suum, licet tunc irreverenter aput Augustinenses[1] Londonie tumulatum, modo cum summa reverencia et populi frequenti oblacione quam gloriose veneratum excistit.

Item, die Sabbati, dominus Thomas Mortimer fuit preconizatus, sub pena proditoris exilii, infra sex menses se judicio scisturus. Et rex dixit: "Forte comes Marchie eum capere non poterit; ideo tamdiu ejus certificatorium expectabo." Qui quidem dominus Thomas sic exulatus tempore exilii morabatur in Scocia.

Item, fuit declaratum quod omnia beneficia per dampnatos et dampnandos in isto parliemento, et alia quecumque ab anno regis decimo concessa et alienata, essent revocata.

Item, die Lune proxime sequenti, lecto certificatorio Mors ducis Glouces-
comitis Notingham, ad tunc capitanii Caliciorum, in cujus trie.
custodia dux Glowcestrie fuerat, quod idem dux scisti in judicio non potuit ideo quia in custodia sua mortuus erat Calicie, ad peticionem dictorum appellancium eadem in eum, que et in comitem Arundelie, fulminata extitit sentencia.

Item, Thomas archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, confiscatis primitus ejus temporalibus, a regno extitit exulatus.

Item, die Martis sequente, Ricullus, justiciarius domini regis, de Hybernia oriundus, legit certas confessiones in scriptis redactas super dictis prodicionibus commissis[2], asserendo eas esse dicti ducis confessiones, per ipsum emissas ac ejusdem ducis manu scriptas.

Item, comitatus[3] Cestrie, ad honorem ducatus sublevatus, per annexum terrarum dicti comitis Arundellie confiscatarum fuit augmentatus. Item, comes Sarum peciit sibi concedi breve *scire facias* contra comitem Marchie super

[1] Agustinentes. MS. [2] emissis. MS.
[3] comes. MS.

A.D. 1397. dominio de Dienebyeth de Wallia; et super hoc rex respondit quod deliberaret.

Ducatus Cestrie. Item, die Mercurii [1] tunc sequente, fuit ordinatum quod terre dicti comitis Arundellie, dicto ducatui Cestrie annexe, ejus libertatibus in omnibus gauderent, excepto quod Wal-

f. 159. lenses illarum terrarum antiqua jura et consuetudines continuarent.

Item, fuit ordinatum quod concilium, auxilium, vel favorem filiis dampnatorum vel dampnandorum in hoc parliamento prestantes pena prodicionis plecterentur. Et parliamentum ad diem Veneris proxime sequentem [2] extitit continuatum.

Item, ipso die Veneris, rex declaravit quales ex dampnatis et dampnandis descendentes ab hereditatibus [3] dampnatorum consiliisque et parliementis regis excluderentur, scilicet masculi et per lineam masculinam ex eis descendentes in infinitum.

Dominus Cantuariensis exulatur a regno. Item, rex prefixit dicto archiepiscopo Cantuariensi terminum sex septimanarum ad exeundum regnum suum.

Item, fuit ordinatum quod omnes domini, spirituales et temporales, jurarent se immobiliter observaturos quicquid in isto parliamento factum, statutum, vel expeditum fuerat fueritve; fulminatis eciam censuris per prelatos ex nunc [4] pro ex tunc in contravenientes.

Item, comes Warwyci scistebatur in judicio, ablatoque sibi capicio et lecta appellacione, quasi misera et vetula, fatebatur omnia in appellacione contenta, plorando et lacrimando et ululando per ipsum, tamquam proditorem, esse perpetrata; regis gracie se in omnibus submittendo; dolens quod dictis appellatis umquam extiterat associatus. Et rex peciit ab eo per quem eis extitit allectus; et ipse respondit quod per Thomam ducem Gloucestrie et abbatem tunc Sancti Albani et monachum reclusum Westmonasterii; et semper graciam regis peciit. Et tunc, quasi om-

[1] Altered to Martis in MS.
[2] sequens. MS.
[3] heredibus. MS.
[4] tunc. MS.

nibus pro eo plorantibus et sibi graciam regis petentibus, A.D. 1397.
rex concessit sibi vitam perpetuis carceribus extra regnum lugendam, primitus ipsius bonis mobilibus et immobilibus, ad modum dicti comitis Arundellie, confiscatis. Et tunc rex misit eum ad turrem Londonie, et demum ad castrum insule de Manna transmittendum, sub custodia domini Willelmi Scropp dicte insule ad tuendum, dictis carceribus perpetuo mancipandum.

Item, die Sabbati, rex prefixit comiti Warwyci unum mensem ad dictum castrum de Manna se translaturo. Concessit sibi, licet ficte, et uxori sue quingintas marcas ad terminum vite eorundem; tamen nullum denarium sibi solvit, set omnia usque ad ligulas [1] eis abstulit.

Item, comiti Sarum fuit concessum breve *scire facias* contra comitem Marchie super dominio de Dynby, datis induciis xl. dierum ad respondendum. Dynby. Nota.

Item, ordinatum fuit quod debitores pontis de Rougestria ad usum ejusdem pontis exigentur.

Item, rex expressit quod quoad [2] excessum Scotorum, in dicto parliamento devulgatum, per se et concilium suum ordinaret remedium.

Item, comes Derbey, dux Herfordie; comes Rotlandie, dux Almarlie; comes Kancie, dux Surreie; comes Huntingtonie, dux Exonie; comes Notyngham, dux Northefolcie; comes Somerset, marchio Dorset; dominus de Spenser, comes Gloucestrie; dominus de Nevylle, comes Westhomerlond; dominus Thomas Percy, comes Wygornie; et dominus Wyllelmus Scroppe, comes Wyltesire, creati extiterunt; et continuatum fuit parliementum ad Salopiam in quindenam Hillarii proxime sequentis perficiendum.

Item, die Dominica, rex fecit magnum convivium licenciando recessum parliamenti, et [ut] supra in die Veneris de censuris et juramentis ordinatum fuit. Istud tamen parliamentum, licet dominorum juramentis, prelatorum censuris in crimina facientes fulminatis, apostolicaque con-

[1] legulas. MS. [2] quia ad. MS.

A.D. 1397. Papa roboravit parliamentum.

firmacione, Petro episcopo Aquenci vice pape consimiliter censuras vibrante, extitit roboratum, tamen, ad modum statue Nobocodonosor, in maxima ejus vana gloria ruit parliamentum cum ejus fautoribus, et merito forte juxta premissa, ut plenius infra patebit. Exemplum Cosdre; de Baldesar, de Antiocho et aliis tirannis populum affligentibus.

A.D. 1398. f. 159 b.

Et sic rex aput Salopiam parliamentum continuavit in tanta mundi pompa, quantam nec auris audivit nec in cor hominis ascendit[1]. Quanta inutilia et regni destructiva in tantum populi confluentia ad modum hostilem armati incedendo excercuit, miraretur mundus. In quo, ultra alia populo suo nociva et annone destructiva, eciam pro victualibus nihil solvit. Ubi tunc dominus de Cobham, appellatus de prodicione quia unus de dictis xij. regni gubernatoribus, dixit regi in judicio: "Constat vobis quod vos jussistis mihi onus commissionis subire et eandem admittere." Rex respondit: "Constat tibi quod invitus sic jussi." "Vere," dixit idem dominus de Cobham, "non." Et rex fecit eum per ducem Lancastrie proditorem adjudicari, sed vitam concessit ei perpetuo lugendam carceribus. Unde dux dixit sibi: "Regracieris pro vita tua domino regi." "Vere," dixit ille dominus, "nequaquam; quia poscius tardat mihi vitam, quia credidi me cicius vita eterna gaudere quam jam gaudebo."

Ubi eciam et quando rex extorsit a clero decimam cum dimidia, et a populo quintamdecimam cum dimidia, et a quolibet sacco lane quinque marcas, et a quolibet dolio vini quinque solidos, et a qualibet librata ponderis omnis[2] mercimonii duos solidos ad terminum vite sue, cum interna populi maledicione. Demum dictum dominum de Cobham ad perpetuos carceres insule de Gersey transmisit.

Ad istud parliamentum, ibidem vocatus, venit ille nobilis miles, comes Marchie, locumtenens Hibernie, summe probitatis juvenis, qui hujusmodi conciliis et lassiviis regis expers erat et immunis. Quem populus jocunde et gaudenti

[1] 1 Cor. ij. 9. [2] onus. MS.

animo recepit, sibi in capiciis de rubio et albo sui coloris partitis ad numerum xx millia in suo adventu obviando, sperans per eum a tanta regis calamitate liberari. Tamen ipse sapienter et caute se gerens, quia rex et alii sibi in parte fautores probitatis sue invidi insidias sibi ponebant, occasiones contra eum querendi, ipse tamen, quasi non curaret de turbacione populi, dissimulavit penes regem, ipsius facta sibi placere fingendo, cum rei veritate multum sibi displicuerant. Rex tamen hoc suspicans et in eum continue malignans propriis manibus, ex quo alii hoc non audebant, ipsum proposuit interemere. Et oportunitatem ad sui destruccionem, cum aliis ad hoc conspiratis, rex semper ymaginavit, propositum suum malignum ita palliando, eo quod dominum Thomam Mortimer, militem strenuissimum, ipsius patruum, per eos exulatum, et quem ipsi summe timebant, aliquamdiu post hujus exilium receptasset in Hibernia, ac ipsum ante sui recessum suis recreasset pecuniis. Dictumque comitem ideo inter se secrete dampnarunt, captantes tempus ad ipsius destruccionem, terras suas ex hoc inter se dividendas jactando. Et ad illum finem dominum[1] Surrey predictum, uxoris sue fratrem malignissimum, pro ipsius capcione locumtenentem direxerunt in Hiberniam. Set, pro dolor!, in festo Sancte Margarete, juxta Kenlasoe in Hibernia, nimia ipsius bellicosa animositate exercitum proprium incaute precedens, in suorum hostium manus belli fortuna cecidit peremptus, ad magnam regni Anglie tristiciam, suorumque emulorum et inimicorum gaudium nimirum non modicum et leticiam. A.D. 1398. f. 160. Casus comitis Marchie in bello, et ejus genelogia.

Hec ipsius comitis genologia :—Rogerus filius Edmundi, filii Rogeri, filii Edmundi, filii Rogeri, primi comitis Marchie, filii Cladus Thui, filie Llewellyn ap Jorwerth Troynden principis Norþewalie, filii Oweyn, filii Gruffith, filii Conaan, filii ȝago, filii Ydwall, filii Mauric, filii Ydwall Voyll, filii Anaraud, filii Rodry Vawr ex Essill filia Kynan, filii Rodry Maylwynnog, filii Ydwali ȝeorth, filii Cadualadre benedicti Hic primo de principibus. Hic primo de regibus.

[1] dominos. MS.

A.D. 1398. ultimi regis Brytonum, filii Cadwalonis, filii Caduani, filii ȝiago, filii Beli, filii Rune, filii Mailgan Goynet, filii Caduallan Lawyr, filii Yvor Hyrth, filii Cuentha Wledik, filii Ederne, filii Padarne Peys Ruthe, filii Tegyt, filii Jago, filii Kuneddanc, filii Caynan, filii Borgayn, filii Doly, filii Gortholy, filii Cwyne, filii Gorthewyn, filii Amleweth, filii Anweyrid, filii Ouweth, filii Donker, filii Brychwane, filii Ymwane, filii Analathas, filii Affleth, filii Beli Vawr, filii Mynagan, filii Enayd, filii Gerwyt, filii Creden, filii Dyffnach, filii Pryden, filii Aedmawr, filii Antony, filii Sirioll, filii Garowest, filii Ruallon, filii Cunetha ex Ragaw filia Leyr qui fecit Licestriam, filii Bladudd qui fecit balnea apud Bathoniam, filii Rune, filii Llann, filii Bruti viridis scuti, filii Eboracy qui fecit civitatem Eboraci, filii Membryc, filii Madag, filii Locriny, filii Bruti primi regis Britonum, filii Silvy, filii Escannyi, filii Enee Scothewyn, filii Enchiges, filii Capus, filii Asseraci, filii Troysse, filii Elicony, filii Mercuri, filii Dardani, filii Jovis, filii Saturni, filii Seluis, filii Creti, filii Seprii, filii Jevan, filii Jaseph, filii Noee, filii Lamech, filii Mathusalem, filii Ennoc, filii Jaffeth[1], filii Malaleel, filii Caynan, filii Ennoc, filii Seth, filii Ade prothoplausti.

Hucusque de Britonibus.

Hic primo de tirannis.

Hic primo de Ebreys.

Jam redeamus ad dictam Cladus Thui, filiam Johanne, filie Johannis regis, filii Henrici fyz Emperys, filie Henrici primi, filii Wyllelmi conquestoris, filii [Roberti, filii][2] Ricardi, filii Ricardi sine timore, filii Wyllelmi Longspe, filii Rolonis primi conquestoris Normanie.

Hic ad conquestorem.

Hic ad duces Normannie.

Ultra dictorum Brytanie, Ytalie, Troge, Anglie, Francie, et Hispanie nobilium regum nobilissimum exortum, (ut quid mora?) ecce quanta comitum Marchie florens regalis prosapia! Idem Rogerus comes predictus filius fuit Philippe comitisse Marchie, filie Leonelli ducis Clarencie, secundogeniti Edwardi tercii, regis Anglie et Francie gloriosi, filii Isabelle, filie Philippi regis Francie ejusque heredis unice; et hoc in utraque linea directa. Item, ex alio latere filius fuit dicte

Edwardi tercii. Regis Francie.

[1] *i.e.* Jared. [2] Omitted in MS.

Philippe ex Elizabetha[1] Clarencie ducissa, filia Wyllelmy Borch, comitis Ultonie, [filii Johannis de Borch][2] ex Elezabetha, filia Johanne de Acris, filie Edwardi primi, regis Anglie et conquestoris Walie, ex Alianora filia regis Hispanie, prima ejus uxore. Item, ex alio latere filius fuit ejusdem Philippe comitisse, filie ducisse Clarencie predicte, filie dicti comitis Ultonie ex Matilda[3], filia Henrici[4] comitis Lancastrie, filii Edmundi[5], filii tercii Henrici regis Anglie ex Alianora[6], filia comitis Provincie, Westmonasterii inter reges honorifice tumulata. Ultra, nota de Edmundo jam comite Marchie, dicti Rogeri filio inpubere et in custodia regis excistente, ex Alianora regis Ricardi secundi nepte, filia comitis Cancie, filii Johanne[7] comitisse Cancie, filie Edmundi[8], filii dicti Edwardi primi ex Margareta, filia regis Francie, ejus secunda uxore, ante summum altare in ecclesia fratrum minorum Londonie tumulata.

A.D. 1398. Regis Hispanie. Edwardi primi.

f. 160 b.

Regis Francie.

Jam redeamus ad dictam imperatricem, [filiam Matildis][2] filie Margarete regine Scocie, filie Edwardi exulis, filii Edmundi Irynsid, filii Athelredi, filii Edgarii, filii Edmundi, filii Edwardi, filii Aluredi, filii Atheluulphy, filii Athelbry3t, filii Aelmundi, qui fuit unus de v. regulis Anglie; qui quidem Athelbry3t fugit a facie Bry3thry3t, sibi invidentis, in Franciam, tempore Kareli Mayny; dicto vero Bry3thry3t mortuo, idem Athelbry3t reversus in Angliam, ceteris regulis Anglie per eum viriliter divictis, Angliam ad unam monarcham redegit, in ea pacifice regnando, et jacet Wyntonie. Jam redeamus ad dictum Radulphnm, maritum

Hic primo de regibus Saxonum.

Hic origo

[1] Philippa. MS.
[2] Omitted in MS.
[3] N. MS.
[4] Thome. MS.
[5] The following note is written in the margin:—
"Nota quod iste historiographus dicit libro septimo quod Edwardus Wallie conquestor fuit primogenitus Henrici 3ii, quanquam alii dixerint contrarium, scilicet quod Edmundus, de quo fit [mencio] supra. Quod non credo. Hec habentur libro 7, capitulo 35."
The reference is to the "Polychronicon," which precedes the present chronicle in the MS.
[6] N. MS.
[7] Philippe. MS.
[8] filii Johannis added in MS.

A.D. 1398. de Mortumer. Fondator abbacie de Wygmore.

dicte Wladus Thui, filium Rogeri[1], filii Hugonis fundatoris abbathie de Wygmore, filii Radulphi Mortumer qui primo venit cum Wyllielmo conquestore in Angliam. Iste Radulphus, dicto filio suo Hugone in dominio de Wygmore relicto, in Normaniam reversus ibi mortuus est, ut in chronicis[2] dicte abbathie habetur.

Jam de Edmundo, patre dicti Rogeri, aliquid proferre non omitto. Iste Edmundus, qui infra byennium, suarum virtutum prosapia et industria pariter militari [et] strenuitate, quibus diebus suis ceteris mortalibus prepollebat, totam Hyberniam, in ipsius locumtenencie ibidem adventu rebellantem, ad unitatem et pacem Anglieque subjeccionem mirifice reduxit, presencium compilatorem ad utriusque juris studium Oxonie exhibuit honeste sustentatum. Domi[3], aput Cork in Hibernia, in festo Sancti Johannis Evangeliste, pro dolor!, casu quodam quo omnia tendunt in occasum, longe ante michi optatum terminum, tanta sui nobilitate mundum reliquit[4] orbatum. Et jacent ejus ossa in abbathia de Wygmore, una cum dicta Philippa uxore sua, ante summum altare ejusdem abbathie tumulata. De quibus ecce versus :—

Versus.

"Vir constans, gratus, sapiens, bene nuper amatus,
Nunc nece prostratus, sub marmore pudret humatus.
His jacet Edmundus, moriens Cork, corpore mundus;
Sisque pius, Christe, sibi quem lapis opprimit iste!"

Item, de dicta Philippa :—

Versus.

"Nobilis hic tumilata jacet comitissa Philippa.
Actibus hec nituit; larga, benigna fuit.
Regum sanguis erat, morum probitate vigebat,
Conpaciens inopi; vivat in arce celi!"

Per istam Philippam, Leonelli secundogeniti Anglie

[1] filium Hugonis filii Rogeri. MS.
[2] ut habetur in coronisis. MS.
[3] domum. MS. [4] reliquid. MS.

[filiam], ut[1] premittitur, comitatus Marchie, una cum regali progenie ad summos honoris apices attingere virsimiliter valenti, per dominia de Clare, Walsingham, Sodbiry, Waddon, Cramborn, et Berdfeld, in Anglia; de Usk, Kaerlion, et Tryllek, in Walia; de comitatu Ultonie, et dominio de Connach, in Hibernia, cum eorum nonnullis et quam plurimis magnorum dominiorum pertinenciis, gaudet quam honorifice augmentatus. A.D. 1398.

Jam ad parliamentum predictum Salopie redeamus. Cujus tempore dux Northfolcie, postea mortuus in exilio aput Veneciam, duci Lancastrie mortis insidias illuc venienti posuit; quod magnos doloris turbines causavit. Ipse tamen de hoc precautus aliunde hujusmodi insidias evasit. Parliamentum Salopie.

Rex continue usque ad ejus ruinam, inter cetera gravamina regno suo per ipsum accumulata, habuit secum in familia sua cccc^{tos} excessivos viros de comitatu Cestrie, utique malignissimos, et subditos ubique impune affligentes, pulsantes, et depredantes. Qui, ubicumque rex devertebat, secum armati diei et noctis vigilias circa eum ad modum guerrancium custodiebant; adulteriaque, homicidia, et alia infinita mala ubique committendo. Quos rex in tantum fovebat ita ut nullum contra eos querelantem audire dignaretur, ymmo illum tamquam exosum pocius dedignaretur. Quod[2] fuit causa ipsi ruine maxima.

In dicto parliamento, dux Herfordie, filius dicti ducis Lancastrie, de prodicione dictum ducem Norfolkie appellavit. Unde rex assignavit eis crastinum Exaltacionis Sancte Crucis tunc proxime sequens ad duellandum in ea parte. Dux Herfordie interim sub fidejussoria caucione quo volebat se divertit. Duce tamen Northfolchie aput Wyndesor carcerali mancipato custodie, ejusdem officia aliis coappellatoribus suis fuerunt collata, officium scilicet marescallie Anglie duci Surreye, et officium capitanie Callicie duci Exonie; propter quas concessiones inter ipsum et eos, justo Appellacio ducis Herffordie. f. 161.

[1] et. MS. [2] que. MS.

A.D. 1398. Dei judicio, misit Deus magnum scismatis chaos, juxta illud prophecie, unde versus:—

"Judice celorum rumpetur turba malorum." [1]

Quo duelli die ambo in magno apparatu ad ipsum locum [2] fossa aquatica munitum venerunt. Set dux Herefordie multum gloriosius cum septem equorum diversitatis apparatu insignitus comparuit. Et, quia rex a sortilegio habuerat quod dux Northfolchie tunc prevaleret, ducis Herfordie destruccionem affectando multum gaudebat. Set in congressu eorundem sibi videbatur quod dux Herffordie prevaleret. Rex duellum mandavit dissolvi, dicto duci Northfolchie perpetuum exilium inducendo, affectans tamen eundem, captata oportunitate, reconsiliare. Ducem vero Herfordie pro decem annis bannivit a regno. Primus Veniciis in exilio expiravit; secundus infra annum ad regnum gloriose rediit, ac, banniente deposito, in eodem potenter regnavit.

Ducis Northfolchie exilium.

Ducis Herfordie bannicio.

A.D. 1399. Isto anno, in crastino Sancti Blassii, moritur dictus dux Lancastrie, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londonie prope summum altare multum honoratus tumulatur.

A.D. 1398. In quo parliemento, totalem ipsius regni potestatem rex sibi et sex aliis, per ipsum designandis, ad vite sue terminum, ubi et quando sibi placeret, optinuit comitti. Per

A.D. 1399. quam commissionem postea dictum ducem Herfordie, omnibus ejus bonis confiscatis, perpetuo exilio condempnavit. Pluriumque memoriam post mortem dampnavit. Et demum ad partes Hybernie debellandas in mala sibi hora se direxit, quia, ut inferius apparebit, inutilis fuit sibi ad sua regressus.

Adventus sui exilii dicti Herffordie, et per mortem sui patris jam Lancastrie, ducis, sic duplici ducatu functi, juxta illud prophecie Brydlintoun, ubi versus:—

"Bis dux vix veniet cum trecentis sociatis.
Phi. falsus fugiet, non succurret nece stratis." [3]

[1] Bridlington, dist. II. cap. vj.

[2] ipsius loci. MS.

[3] Dist. II. cap. ij.

Iste dux Henricus, secundum propheciam Merlini juxta propheciam, pullus aquile, quia filius Johannis. Set secundum Bredlintoun merito canis, propter liberatam collariorum leporariis conveniencium ; et quia diebus canicularibus venit, et quia infidos cervos, liberatam scilicet regis Ricardi in cervis excistentem, penitus regno affugavit. A.D. 1399.

Iste dux Henricus ab exilio suo, una cum Thoma, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et Thoma, comite Arundelie, filio, mortis sui metu a custodia ducis Exonie, fratris regis Ricardi, ad ipsum in Francia fugiente, vicesimo octavo die Junii, in loco applicari insolito, vix cum ccc., ut premittitur, terre in partibus borialibus applicuit. Cui primo in sui succursum ipsius foreste de Knarisborow archiforestarius, Robertus Watourtoun, advenit cum ducentis forestariis, ac demum de Westhomerlond et Northomerlond comites, domini de Wylby et de Graystok. Ut quid mora? Infra paucos dies centum mille bellicosis gaudenter extitit stipatus. Brystoliam cum excercitu antepenultimo die Julii applicavit, et ibidem dominum Wyllelmum Scroppe, regis thesaurarium, dominos Johannem Buschei et Henricum Grene, milites, regis pessimos conciliarios et ejus malicie principales fautores, decapitavit. Ubi presencium compilator cum dicto domino Cantuariensi reverso interfuit; eundemque ducem cum dominio de Usk, originis sui loco, quem depredandum proposuerat propter recistenciam ejusdem loci domine, regis neptis, ibidem ordinatam, graciose pacificavit, et dominum Edwardum Charlton, ejusdem domine tunc maritum, predicto duci retineri optinuit; ac totam patriam Usce, pro dicta recistencia Monstarri congre-[ga]tam, cum maximo eorum gaudio ad propria fecit remeare.

Demum idem dux cum exercitu suo aput Herffordiam, secundo die Augustii, in palacio episcopi se hospitavit ; et in crastino se versus Cestream movit, et in prioratu de Lempster pernoctavit. Et postea nocte proxima aput Lodelaw in castro regis, vino ibidem inhorriato non parcens, pernoctavit. Ubi presencium compilator ab eo et f. 161 b.

A.D. 1399. a domino Cantuariensi fratrem Thomam Prestburi, magistrum in theologia, ipsius contemporarium Oxonie, monachum de Salopia, tunc carceribus per regem Ricardum detentum, eo quod contra excessus suos quedam merito predicasset, ab hujusmodi carceribus liberari, et in abbatem monasterii sui erigi, optinuit. Demum per Salopiam transitus ibi per duos dies mansit; ubi fecit proclamari quod excercitus suus se ad Cestriam dirigeret, tamen populo et patrie parceret, eo quod per internuncios se sibi submiserant. Qua de causa plures, patriam illam in predam sibi captantes, ad propria recesserunt. Set modicum patrie valuit proclamacio, ut infra apparebit. Cause quare dux decrevit illam patriam invadendam: quia assistens regi, ut premittitur, regnum per biennium continuum homicidiis, adulteriis, furtis, rapinis, et aliis intollerabilibus injuriis infestare non cessavit; et quia contra dictum ducem et ejus adventum surrexerant, ipsum destruere minantes. Alia causa, propter privilegium exempcionis patrie, in qua ipsimet quantumcumque aliunde facinoroci, sive alii sic debitis et criminibus irretiti, ad illam patriam tamquam nidum facinorum pro tutamine receptari solebant; unde totum regnum in eos vindicari acclamavit.

Nono die Augustii dux cum excercitu in patriam Cestrie intravit, et ibidem in parochia de Codintoun et in aliis parochiis circumvisinis castra metanda et tentoria figenda, pratisque et segetibus non parcendo, patriamque undique depredando, vigiliasque maximas nocturnas contra insidias Cestrencium habendo, pernoctavit. Ubi presencium compilator in tentorio domini de Powys noctem illam perduxit illugubrem. Ubi plures in locis vicinis poculis veneno per Cestrences infectis perierunt toxicati. Ubi eciam ex diversis aquaticis cisternis, lanceis scrutatis, et ex aliis locis abditis vasa et alia bona quam plura ibidem inventa in predam vertebantur, inventoribus interessente presencium compilatore.

Venenum.

In crastino, vigilia scilicet Sancti Laurencii, ad ecclesiam de Codintoun predicta, volens ibi celebrare, mane accessi; et nihil ibi, nisi omnibus asportatis hostiisque et cistis fractis, reperii. A.D. 1399.

Eodem die, dux Lancastrie cum suo excersitu Cestriam accessit. Prius tamen in quodam magno campo pulcherimo, segete pleno, bene per tria miliaria a villa, in parte orientali ejusdem, sui excercitus monstracionem, acies dirigendo ad numerum centum millia pugnatorum, posuit; et quorum clepeis veraciter notari poterat resplendere montes. Et sic castrum Cestrie ingressus, ibi et undique sibi cum suis per duodecim dies, vino regis Ricardi sufficienter reperto et per eum ducem usitato, agros depopulando, domos depredando, et breviter omnia sibi ad usum victumque et aliunde utilia seu necessaria ocupando ut propria, remansit.

De [de]capitacione Perkyn de Lye.

Tercio die adventus sui ibidem magni malefactoris reputati, Perkyn de Lye, caput amputari et in palo ultra portam orientalem affigi fecit. Iste Perkyn, [qui] in forestia regia de la Mare principalis custos et ejus officii majestate plures opressiones et extorciones pagensibus fecerat, monacalia indutus, quia sub talibus vestium transfuguracionibus plura dampnosa, ut dicebatur, perpetraverat, merito in eadem captus transmigrare extitit. Unum bene scio, quod de ejus morte neminem ad tunc dolere perpendi.

Rex Ricardus in Hibernia de hujusmodi ducis adventu audiens, maxima hominum et diviciarum gloria stipatus, in magno excercitu partes Wallie aput Penbroc peciit, in festo Sancte Marie Magdalene terre applicando, dominum de Spenser ad sussitandum suos de Glanmorgane, licet sibi nequaquam parentes, in sui destinans succursum. Quo audito undeque stupefactus, quorum concilio tamen reputo non sibi fidelium, ad castrum de Conwey in Norþewallia, Northewallencium et Cestrensium succursu relevari sperans, ad Carmerthyn circa mediam noctem cum paucissimis vecorditer affugit. Unde duces, comites, barones, et omnes in magno excercitu secum excistentes, juxta illud: "Percusso

A.D. 1399. pastore," etc.[1], segregatim et per devia versus Angliam transeuntes a pagencibus totaliter spoliati fuerunt. Quorum plures magnates sic ad dictum ducem vidi venire
f. 162. spoliatos; et quorum plures, non bene sibi credulos, custodiis tradidit diversis.

Dominus meus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et comes Northomerye, ex parte ducis, ad regem, in castro de Counuey existentem, tracturi transierunt, in wygilia Assumpcionis Beate Virginis; et rex, sub condicione status sui salvandi, se aput castrum de Flente duci dicto se promisit redditurum. Et sic, traditis eis duabus coronis suis valoris CM. marcarum cum aliis thesauris infinitis, se versus castrum de Flent statim transtulit prodiens. Ubi dominus dux, cum XX. millibus electis ad eum veniens, aliis pro tutamine sui suorumque[2] hospiciorum patrieque castri et ville Cestrie a retro dimissis, ipsum regem in eodem castro de Flente[3], quia sibi exire nolentem, adiit, et secum captivatum ad castrum Cestrie perduxit, ipsum ibidem secure custodie tradendo. Sicque diversos dominos secum captos, usque ad parliamentum in crastino Sancti Michaelis extunc incipiendum, tradidit custodiendos.

Capcio regis aput Flynt.

Dum dux tunc Cestrie erat, iij. de xxiiij. senioribus Londonie, ex parte ejusdem civitatis, cum aliis l. civibus ejusdem, ad ducem veniebant, sub sigillo communi ipsius civitatem sibi recomendando et regi Ricardo diffidenciam mittendo; referentes eciam qualiter Londonienses ad abbathiam de Westmonasterio regem Ricardum querentes, audito quod illuc clam fugerat, armati conflu[x]erant; quo non invento, dominos Rogerum Walden, Nycholaum Slak, et Radulphum Selbi, regis speciales conciliarios, ibidem repertos, usque ad parliamentum ordinarunt custo-

Nota fortunam et ejus rotam.

[1] Zach. xiij. 7.

[2] suique suorum. MS.

[3] The following passage is added by another hand in the margin, for insertion at this place:—"Cum armatis ex una, et cum sagittariis ex altera, partibus circumvallando; illam propheciam implendo: 'Rex albus et nobilis ad modum scuti,' etc."

diendos. Et sic dux, rege et regno per eum infra l. dies gloriose conquesto, Londoniam transiit; in cujus Turri regem captivatum sub custodibus sufficientibus posuit. A.D. 1399.

Interim, dux misit ad Hiberniam pro filio suo seniori, Henrico, et Unfredo, filio ducis Glowcestrie, in castro de Tryme per regem Ricardum inclusis. Quibus sibi cum magno thesauro ejusdem regis transmissis, dictus Unfredus, veneno per dominum de Spenser, ut dicebatur, in Hibernia toxcicatus, aput Anglesei insulam in Wallia, ad magnum regni luctum, sic veniendo moriebatur; tamen predictus ducis Lancastrie filius ad patrem venit incolumis, domino Wyllelmo Bagot, infimi generis milite per regem ad alta promoto, secum invinculato ducto. Mors Unfridi ducis Glowcestrie filii.

Dicti regis Ricardi condicio talis fuit, nobiles deprimere ac ignobiles exaltare, ut de ipso domino Wyllelmo et de aliis infimis in magnates, et de ydeotis in pontifices quam pluribus per eum exaltatis, postea ruina, propter eorum inordinatum saltum, depressis[1]. Unde, de eodem rege Ricardo, ut de Archallo quondam Britonum rege, merito notari poterit; de quo sic: Archallus nobiles depressit, ignobiles exaltavit, cuique sua diviti auferebat, et infinitos thesauros coligebat; unde heroes[2] regni tantas injurias diucius sustinere non valentes, in ipsum insurgentes, eum deposuerunt, ac fratrem suum in regem erexerunt. Sic per omnia de isto Ricardo contingebat; [de] cujus produccione natalium, quasi non ex patre regalis prosapie, set ex matre lubrice vite dedita, multum sinistri predicabatur in vulgo, ut de multis auditis taceam. Nobiles depressit. Deponitur rex.

Item, per certos[3] doctores, episcopos, et alios, quorum presencium notator unus extiterat, deponendi regem Ricardum et Henricum, Lancastrie ducem, subrogandi in regem materia, et qualiter et ex quibus causis, juridice committebatur disputanda. Per quos determinatum fuit quod perjuria, sacrilegia, sodomidica, subditorum exinnanicio, populi in servitutem reduccio, vecordia, et ad regendum Cause deponendi regem.

[1] depressi. MS. [2] erohes. MS. [3] sertos. MS.

A.D. 1399. imbecilitas[1], quibus rex Ricardus notorie fuit infectus, per capitulum, "Ad apostolice," (extractus, "De re judicata," in Sexto,) cum ibi notatis[2], deponendi Ricardum cause
f. 162 b. fuerant sufficientes; et, licet cedere paratus fuerat, tamen ob causas premissas ipsum fore deponendum cleri et populi autoritate, ob quam causam tunc vocabantur, pro majori securritate fuit determinatum.

Sancti Mathei festo, ad byennium decapitacionis comitis Arundelle, in dicta Turri, ubi rex Ricardus in custodia fuerat, ipsius cene presencium notator interfuit, ipsius modum et gesturam explorando, per dominum Wyllelmum Beuchamp ad hoc specialiter inductus. Ubi et quando idem rex in cena dolenter retulit confabulando sic dicens: "O Deus! hec est mirabilis terra et inconstans, quia tot reges, tot presules, totque magnates exulavit, interfecit, destruxit, et depredavit, semper discencionibus et discordiis mutuisque invidiis continue infecta et laborans." Et recitavit historias et nomina vexatorum a primeva regni inhabitacione. Videns animi sui turbacionem, et qualiter nullum sibi specialem aut famulari solitum, sed alios extranios sibi totaliter insidiantes, ipsius obsequio deputatos, de antiqua et solita ejus gloria et de mundi fallaci fortuna intra me cogitando, multum animo meo recessi turbatus.

Quodam die, in concilio per dictos doctores habito, per quosdam fuit tactum quod, jure sanguinis ex persona Edmundi comitis Lancastrie[3], asserentes ipsum Edmundum regis Henrici tercii primogenitum esse, sed ipsius geniture ordine, propter ipsius fatuitatem, excluso, Edwardo suo fratre, se juniore, in hujus locum translato, sibi regni successionem directa linea debere compediri[4]. Quantum ad istud, ecce quid historie P. de Grw, per totam Angliam, quod Edwardus primogenitus regis Henrici erat, et quod

[1] invicilitas. MS.
[2] Sext. Decret. II. tit. xiv. § ij.
[3] Lyncollnie. MS. [4] compedere. MS.

post ipsum, ante Edmundum, Margareta, postea regina Scocie, regi predicto nata fuerat. In cronicis fratrum predicatorum Londonensium ita legi: "Natus est Edwardus, primogenitus regis Henrici, aput Westmonasterium; quem Oto legatus baptizavit": libro vij°., capitulo xxv°., anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo tricesimo nono. Item, "Rex Henricus Edwardo primogenito suo dedit Vasconiam, Hiberniam, Waliam, Cestriam, et Surreiam": libro vij., cap. xxxvij°., anno Domini millesimo cc°liij. Item, "Idibus Maii, in bello de Lewys, barones ceperunt regem Henricum et primogenitum suum Edwardum": libro vij., cap. xxxvij°., anno Domini m°cc°lxiiij°. Item, "Edwardus, primogenitus regis Henrici, cum uxore sua, adiit terram sanctam": libro vij°., cap. xxxvij°., anno Domini m°cc°lxxj°. *Pollicronica.* Item, "Rex Henricus tenuit festum Natale Wyntonie. Eodem anno Domini m°cc°xxxix°., regi H[enrico] et A[lianore] regine natus filius primogenitus Edwardus, xv°. kalendas Julii." Item, "Rex vocavit reginam et primogenitum suum, Edwardum, in Franciam, pro tractatu matrimonii inter ipsum et filiam regis Hi[s]panie, anno Domini m°cc°liiij°. et regis Henrici xxxviij°." Item, "Eodem anno missus est Edwardus primogenitus in magno apparatu in Hispaniam ad Alfonsum, regem Hispanie, pro dicto matrimonio." *Trevet.* Item, "Alienora regina peperit filium suum, Edwardum, apud Westmonasterium, anno Domini m°cc°xxxix°. Alienora regina peperit filiam suam Margaretam, anno Domini m°cc°xlj°." "Alienora regina peperit filium suum Edmundum, anno Domini m°cc°xlv°." *Cronica Glowcestrie.*

A.D. 1399.

Seisitura Edwardi I.

An Edwardus vel Edmundus senior.

In festo Sancti Michaelis, missi erant regi in Turri, pro parte cleri, archiepiscopus Eboracensis et episcopus Herfordensis; pro parte dominorum temporalium superiorum, de Northomerland et de Westhomerlland comites; pro inferioribus prelatis, abbas Westmonasterii et prior Cantuarie; pro baronibus, de Berkeley et de Burnel domini; pro plebeis cleri, magister Thomas Stow et Johannes

A.D. 1399. Borbach; pro communitate regni, Thomas Grey et Thomas Erpingham, milites, ad recipiendum cessionem regis Ricardi. Quo facto, et in crastino iidem domini, ex parte tocius parliamenti clerique et regni populi, sibi legiancie, fidelitatis, subjeccionis, attendencie, et cujuscumque obedi-

Nota rote fallacis fortunam. encie juramentum et fidelitatem totaliter reddiderunt, ipsum diffidendo, nec pro rege set pro privato domino Ricardo de Bordux, simplici milite, de cetero eundem

f. 163. habituri; ipsius anulo cum eis, in signum deposicionis et privacionis, adempto et cum eis ad ducem Lancastrie delato, et sibi in pleno parliamento, eodem die incepto, tradito. Eodem die, Ebrocensis archiepiscopus, facta per eum prius collacione sub hoc themate: "Posui verba mea in os tuum,"[1] factus per regem Ricardum vocis sue organum, in prima persona, ac si ipsemet rex loqueretur, ipsius status regii resignacionem, et quorumcumque sibi legiorum seu subditorum[2] ab omni subjeccione, fidelitate, et homagio liberacionem, palam et publice, in scriptis redactas, in pleno legit parliamento. Quam resignacionem, requisito primitus omnium et singulorum de parliamento ad hoc concensu, palam et expresse admiserunt. Quo facto, dominus meus Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, sub isto themate: "Vir dominabitur eis,"[3] collacionem fecit, multum ducem Lancastrie ipsiusque vires, sensus, et virtutes summe commendando, ipsum ad regnandum meritoque extollendo; ac inter cetera recitata per eundem de demeritis regis Ricardi, et presertim qualiter patruum suum, ducem Glowcestrie, dolose et sine audiencia seu responsione injustissime suffocaverat in carceribus; et qualiter totam legem regni, per

Sentencia deposicionis. eum juratam, subvertere laborabat. Et sic (ut quid mora?), licet seipsum deposuerat ex habundanti, ipsius deposicionis sentencia in scriptis redacta, consensu et auctoritate tocius parliamenti, per magistrum Johannem Trevar de Powysia,

[1] Is. lj. 16. [2] quoscumque sibi legios et subditos. MS.

[3] 1 Reg. ix. 17. "Ecce vir quem dixeram tibi; iste dominabitur populo meo."

Assavensem episcopum, palam, publice et solempniter lecta fuit ibidem. Et sic, vacante regno, consensu tocius parliamenti, dictus dux Lancastrie, in regem erectus, per archiepiscopos predictos in sede regali ad statim intronizari optinuit; et sic in trono regali sedens quandam protestacionem in scriptis redactam ad statim ibidem palam et publice legit, in se continentem quod, regnum Anglie videns vacare, per descensum, jure successorio ex persona Henrici regis tercii sibi debito, hujusmodi successionem, quia sibi eidem debitam, peciit pariter et admisit; et quod, vigore hujusmodi successionis vel ipsius conquestus, nullatenus regni statum vel alicujus ejusdem in libertatibus, frangesiis, hereditatibus, vel quovis alio jure vel consuetudine modo in aliquo mutare[1] permitteret. Et diem coronacionis sue, Sancti scilicet Edwardi proxime futurum; ac, quia per deposicionem Ricardi olim regis parliamentum, ejus nomine congregatum, fuit extinctum, ideo, ipsius novi regis nomine, novum parliamentum, in dicte coronacionis crastino, de consensu omnium, incipiendum, duxit statuenda. Fecit eciam ad tunc publice proclamari die, si quis aliqua servicia seu officia in ipsius coronacione, jure hereditario seu consuetudinario, sibi duxit vendicanda, coram senescallo suo Anglie suas in scriptis, quo jure et quare, peticiones proponeret, die Sabbati proxime sequenti, apud Westmonasterium, justiciam in omnibus habiturus.

A.D. 1399.

Successio novi regis.

Protestacio novi regis.

Solvitur parliamentum per deposicionem regis.

In vigilia coronacionis, rex Henricus, presente domino Ricardo olim rege, apud Turrim Londonie xlij. creavit milites; inter quos quatuor filii sui, necnon de Arundella de Stafford comites, ac [de] Warw[i]co comitis filius et heres[2]; cum quibus et aliis regni proceribus glorioso apparatu ad Westmonasterium transiit. Veniente coronacionis die, omnes heroes regni, in rubio, scarleto, et herminio ornanter induti, ad coronacionem hujusmodi magno gaudio venerunt, domino meo Cantuariensi servicium et officium coronacionis expediente. Coram rege quatuor ferebantur

Quare habet rex quatuor gladios.

[1] consuetudinis ... mutareve. MS. [2] filium et heredem. MS.

A.D. 1399. gladii: unum vaginatum, in signum militaris honoris augmenti; duos in rubiis volutos ac per ligamina aurea circumcinctos[1] in signum duplicis misericordie; quartum nudum sine mucrone, in signum execucionis justicie sine rancore faciende. Primum gladium de Northomerland, duos vaginatos de Somerset et de Warwico comites, quartum justicie regis primogenitus, princeps Wallie, sceptrum[2] dominus de Latemer, virgam comes Westhomerland, tam in coronacione portabant, quam in prandio circa eum continue stantes tenebant. Regem, ante recepcionem corone, domino Cantuariensi jurare audivi quod populum suum in misericordia et veritate omnino regere curaret. Officiarii fuerunt isti in festo coronacionis: de Arundell pincerna, de Oxonia aque lavantis ministrator, comites; dominus Grey de Ruthyn mapparum dispositor.

f. 163 b. Insignium regalium portitores.

In misericordia [et] veritate.

Officiarii.

Dum rex erat in medio prandio, dominus Thomas Dymmoc, miles, in dextrario totaliter armatus, cum gladio vaginato de nigro manubrium aureum habente, aliis duobus gladium nudum et lanceam ante eum defferentibus in dextrariis eciam sedentibus, aulam intravit; et per unum herowd in quatuor aule partibus proclamare fecit quod, si quis dicere vellet quod suus dominus ligius presens et rex Anglie non erat de jure rex Anglie coronatus, quod ipse erat corpore suo paratus ad probandum contrarium ad statim, seu quando et ubi regi placeret. Tunc rex dixit: "Si necesse fuerit, domine Thoma, in propria persona te de hoc relevabo."

Pugil regis in coronacione.

Hujusmodi servicium habuit idem dominus Thomas racione manerii de Screvilby, in comitatu Lincolnie, et sic sentencialiter et diffinitive obtinuit, nomine matris sue adhuc viventis, dicti manerii domine, contra dominum Balduynum Frevyl, nomine castri sui de Tamworth hoc idem tunc vendicantem. De concilio dicti domini Thome tunc fui, et hanc peticionem loco libelli sibi composui: "Graciosissime domine senescalle Anglie, suplicat humi-

[1] circum sinctos. MS. [2] septrum. MS.

liter Margareta Dymmoc, domina manerii de Screvilby, quatenus placeat vestre gloriose dominacioni concedere dicte suplicanti quod ipsa poterit facere ad coronacionem potentissimi domini nostri regis servicium dicto manerio pertinens, per Thomam Dymmoc, suum primogenitum et heredem, tanquam dicte Margarete procuratorem in hac parte, in forma que sequitur: Petit Thomas Dymmoc, primogenitus et heres Margarete Dymmoc, domine manerii de Screvilbi, coram vobis, graciosissime domine senescalle Anglie, quatenus paciamini ipsum habere servicium manerio de Screvilbo, in coronacione cujusque regis Anglie, pertinens et debitum, quod servicium dominus Johannes Dymmoc, pater ejusdem et dicte Margarete maritus, et in jure ejusdem Margarete, fecerat in coronacione Ricardi, regis Anglie ultimi; et in cujus servicii possessione ejusdem Margarete antecessores, dicti manerii domini, a tempore conquestus hucusque extiterunt: scilicet, quod rex faciat sibi deliberare unum de melioribus dextrariis et unam de melioribus sellis domini nostri regis, cum armis, ornamentis, eorumque pertinenciis pro dicto dextrario ipsiusque equite perfectissimis, ac si ipsemet rex ad letale bellum ineundo perarmari deberet, ad effectum quod idem Thomas, in eodem dextrario sic armatus sedens, faciat quater in aula, tempore prandii, facere publice proclamari quod, si quis vellet dicere quod Henricus, presens rex Anglie et suus ligius dominus, non est de jure rex et de jure debeat in regem Anglie coronari, ipse idem Thomas paratus est ad probandum corpore suo, ubi, quando, et qualiter rex voluerit, quod ipse mentitur. Petit eciam idem Thomas feoda et remuneraciones huic servicio debita et solvi consueta, eo peracto cum effectu, sibi tradi et liberari." Translatio ex Gallico in Latinum hic non patitur modum endictandi. Ideo lector parcere dignetur. A.D. 1399.

Isto festo ad annum preterito, dominus Ricardus nuper rex istum eundem hodie coronatum regnum exire compulit. Item, parliamentum suum sub omnibus censuris per Petrum

A.D. 1399. de Bosco, pape legatum, ipsiusque auctoritate confirmari apud Westmonasterium fecit. Item, comitissam Warwicensem pro marito suo, ut premittitur, damnato supplicantem minabatur ultimo supplicio destruere, et hoc juravit, nisi ob reverenciam femine sexus, ad statim se facturum. Isto
f. 164. eodem coronacionis die, nepotem suum, comitem Cancie, apud Dublineam cum magna mundi vana gloria in regem coronare Hibernie, pluresque proceres regni Anglie, ad tantam solempnitatem calide vocandos, interimere dampnaliter proposuit, ipsum comitem et alios juvenes per ipsum, ut premittitur, exaltatos cum eorum possessionibus ditare captando. Sed Roboe Salamonis filio, consilium juvenum quia
Consilium juvenum. insecuto, regnum Israel amittenti iste Ricardus merito poterit cum suis juvenibus consiliariis assimulari: iij. Regum, xij. capitulo.

Coronacionis in crastino, primo scilicet die novi regis parliamenti, plebei suum locutorem, dominum Johannem Cheyny, militem, regi presentarunt. Rex ab omnibus dominis spiritualibus et temporalibus homagium ligium recepit. Item, parliamentum ultimum domini Ricardi tunc regis penitus fuit revocatum; et hoc die Martis contingente.
Quinque sunt insignia principatus. Item, die Mercurii sequenti, Henricum, primogenitum suum, per quinque insignia, scilicet: per virge auree tradicionem, per osculum, per circulum, per anulum, et per sue creacionis literas, in principem erexit Walie. Item, cause revocacionis dicti parliamenti declarate fuerant: propter terrores et minas paribus regni tunc, si regis voto non parerent, inflictas; secundo, propter vim armatam regi tunc assistencium in parliamento fulminatam; tercio, quia comitatus, civitates, et burgi liberam eleccionem, in creacione plebeiorum parliamenti, non habuerant. Item, quod parliamentum dicti Ricardi, undecimo anno, totum per ducem Glowcestrie et comitem Arundelle causatum, sue firmitatis vires haberet. Item, quod quilibet per dicti Ricardi ultimum parliamentum aliqualiter suo jure privatus ipso facto ad sua esset restituendus. Rexque primogenito suo prin-

cipatum Wallie, ducatum Cornubie ad tunc eciam cum comitatu Cestrie concessit pariterque contulit. A D. 1399.

Johannes Halle, familiaris ducis Northfolchie, quia ducis Glocestrie morti consenciendo interfuit, per parliamentum dampnatus, trahitur, suspenditur, ac, ejus visceribus extractis et coram eo crematis, adhuc vivus decapitatur et quatripertitur; cujus quarta pars, dextram manum contingens, ultra pontem Londoniensem in palo ponitur.

Istius parliamenti tempore, duo regis valecti, Londoniis cenantes, in v. ovis, quibus eis serviebatur, appertissimas hominum facies, in omnibus similitudinem continentes, invenerunt, que loco crinium habuerunt albedinem a faciebus separatam ultra verticem coagulatam et ad mentum per fauces descendentem; quorum unum vidi.

Dominus Ricardus nuper rex, post ejus deposicionem, circa medie noctis obscurissime silencium, per Thamesim evectus, ululando et cum clamore se natum fuisse condoluit. Cui unus miles ibi excistens dixit sibi: "Cogites quod eodem modo comitem Arundelle per omnia malignissime tractasti."

Dominus meus Cantuariensis, ab exilio reversus et per papam ad ecclesiam suam contra Rogerum Walden restitutus, peciit a parliamento quod posset bona ejusdem Rogeri, ubicumque inventa, pro fructibus et aliis ipsius bonis exilii sui tempore[1] per eum perceptis, distringere, et sic sua debita exigere et relevare; quod concessum fuit sibi. Et verum est quod dominus Ricardus dederat eidem Rogero omnia superlectilia et alia quecumque ejusdem Thome, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, utensilia, quia confiscata, ut asseruit, ad valorem vj. M. marcarum eciam, preter maneriorum ecclesie Cantuariensis instauraciones; que omnia dictus Rogerus Walden, in archiepiscopum subrogatus, habuit et ocupavit. De quibus comes Somerset,

[1] temperie. MS.

A.D. 1399. audito de adventu dicti Thome in regnum, vj. carucatas, per Walden versus castrum de Saltwod pro tutamine dispositas, ab ipsius familiaribus abstulit; que omnia dicto Thome postea liberavit. De quibus inter cetera, festo Nativitatis Beate Virginis, modicum ante istud parliamentum, quando fui in prandio cum dicto domino meo
f. 164 b. reverso aput Lamhyth, vidi qualiter dictus Rogerus ex aularum et camerarum ornamentis quibuscumque, que dicti domini Thome erant, et sibi in predam versis, arma dicti domini Thome, scilicet comitatus Arundelle cum circumferencia, quia ipsius nobilis comitis filius erat, subtulerat et exuerat, et sua propria: de rubio, cum ligamine blodio et una merinula aurea, loco ipsorum insuta, subrogaverat et consuerat. Sed modicum valuerunt ibi, quia, eis sublatis, idem dominus Thomas iterato propria textorum artis subtilitate armaque et insignia restituit; dictique Rogeri, ut premittitur, sublata tunc vidi sub scannis, in derisum habita, jacere, et per famulos extra fenestras proici pariter et jactari. Vidi eciam, quando idem Rogerus venit ad palacium domini episcopi Londoniensis, a domino duce, jam rege, et a dicto domino Thoma graciam petiturus, quam quoad ipsius vitam obtinuit. Et sic Thomas et Rogerus, si fas est dicere, duo archiepiscopi in una ecclesia, quasi duo capita in uno corpore, Rogerus scilicet tunc per papam in possessione juris, et dominus Thomas, quia nondum per papam restitutus, per seculi tamen potestatem in possessione facti, que prevaluit in omnibus, quia sibi soli crucis Cantuariensis, sibi a dicto Rogero remisse, paruit in omnibus delacio. Iste Rogerus vir fuit modestus, pius, et affabilis, verba utilia et composita proferens, magis militaribus et mundialibus negociis quam clericalibus aut liberaWalden. libus imbutus. Primo, regis Ricardi Gallicus thesaurarius, postea ejus secretarius, et demum Anglie thesaurarius ejusque principalis consiliarius. Quem villa Walden in comitatu Essexie ex carnificis filio ad premissa, licet per saltum nimis festinanter, sublimavit. Unde poete verifi-

catur proverbium: "Festinata substancia cito minuetur"; et alias, "Nemo repente fit summus." Unde versus:— A.D. 1399. Versus prophecie.

"Funere detecto, Thomas antistes abibit;
Et lapis erectus ad terram funditus ibit."

"Funere detecto," scilicet quia rex Ricardus continue in sompnis habuit caput comitis Arundel corpori fore restitutum; unde funus fecit detegi. "Thomas antistes abibit"; i. e. exilium ejusdem Thome. "Et lapis erectus," et cetera, i. e. Walden, quod est ereccio lapidum. Et est antiqua prophecia.

Plebei petiverunt a rege, in pleno parliamento, quod nichil indigne alicui conferret, et presertim de hiis que ad coronam pertinebant. Et tunc episcopus Assavensis in hec verba prorupit: "Ista peticio incivilis est et injusta, quia concludit ad regis tenacitatem, quod omni regalitati contrarium existit, cui pocius largitatis affluencia convenire denoscitur. Concludit eciam quod subditi suum regem a sui innata bonitate restringerent. Que mihi non videntur honesta. Ideo non ipse, sed injuste et indigne petens, veniat pocius puniendus." Et hec responsio placuit mihi, propter le Codex: "De peticionibus, bonorum sublatis," lex ij.[1]

Item, ordinatum fuit quod domini regni pannorum seu signorum et presertim capiciorum sectam aut liberatum de cetero alicui, nisi familiaribus continue cum eis commorantibus, non conferrent, propter plures sediciones per ea in regno causatas.

Item, licet omnes alii, in ultimo parliamento regis Ricardi lesi, essent ipso jure ad sua restituti, comes tamen Warwic non nisi per specialem graciam, pro eo quod confessus fuerat se cum duce Glowcestrie et comite Arundell proditorie contra regem insurrexisse.

Item, rex transtulit corpus ducis Glowcestrie a loco ubi, in sui vilipendium, in parte australi ecclesie, remotius

[1] Codex, x. tit. xij. l. ij.

A.D. 1399. f. 165. a regibus ipsum Richardus sepeliri fecerat, et in loco, per ipsum in vita disposito, inter feretrum Sancti Edwardi et suorum tumbas parentum, cum sua uxore modicum ante defuncta, in magna sepelture solempnitate collocavit[1]. Ubi et quando, bonam predicacionem audivi sub isto themate:

Nota de sermone. "Memorare novissima tua."[2] Et dividebat in iij partes: primo, memorare vite tue; secundo, vilicacionis tue; tercio, finis tui. Iterato, primam partem in tria: memorare vite tue in ingressu, in progressu, in egressu. Sicut eciam secundam partem: qualiter in vilicacionem intrasti; secundo, qualiter quesisti; tercio, qualiter expendisti. Sic eciam terciam, scilicet memorare finis: scilicet, qualiter ad judicium citaberis; secundo, qualiter rimaberis; tercio, qualiter judicaberis. Et tunc finitum est parliamentum.

Kemsyng. Landogy. Hiis diebus, dictus dominus meus Cantuariensis contulit mihi bonam ecclesiam de Kemsynge, cum capella sua de Seol, in Cancia; et bonam prebendam de Landoky, in ecclesia collegiata de Aberguyli. Et ecclesiam de Scherysnewtone, in inferiori Wencia, quam ex indulgencia sedis appostolice cum aliis beneficiis curatis ocupaveram, consobrino meo domino Thome ap Adam ap Wyllelmi de Weloc, et ecclesiam suam de Panteke alii cognato meo, domino Matheo ap Hoel, conferri et per eos haberi optinui.

Nota de Raglane. Eciam impetravi domino Jacobo de Bercley, domino de Raglane, et Elizabethe uxori sue et suis heredibus, sub magna carta regis, dictum dominium et alia eorum dominia sub gloriosa fortuna per regem confirmari.

[1] In the upper margin of f. 165 are written these lines:—

"Qui regis, intende rotam fortune cavende.
Hew! per auriliques victus cupidosque bilingues.
Ecce, quidam procerus regum, Rychard recolendus.
Hew! cui servierat fraude peremptus erat."

Rex Ricardus secundus.

[2] Ecclest. vij. 40.

Tunc eciam vidi cum rege mirabilis condicionis leporarium, quia, domino suo comite Cancie defuncto, ex proprio sensu ad regem Ricardum, quem prius nunquam viderat, in locis remotis existentem accessit; et cum eo semper lateri suo ubicumque diverteret, staret, sive jaceret, rigido ac si leonino vultu continue, quousque idem rex, circa mediam noctem, ab exercitu suo latenter et vecorditer, ut premittitur, fugerat, semper assistebat; et tunc, ipso relicto, proprio eciam sensu, solus sine aliquo ducente directe venit a Caermerthyn Salopiam ad Lancastrie ducem, jam regem, in monasterio cum exercitu tunc existentem, me vidente, se sibi, quem prius non viderat, humillimo et hilarissimo et gaudenti vultu inclinando. Cujus cum condicionem dux audierat, credens per hoc bona sibi pronosticari, eum libentissime et gaudenter recepit, ipsum super lectum suum dormire permittendo. Et post depossicionem regis Ricardi, ad ipsum idem leporarius ductus, eum alio modo quam unum privatum sibi incognitum respicere non curavit; quod idem Ricardus depositus dolenter ferebat. A.D. 1399. Nota de leporario.

Hiis diebus, Usce nascebatur vitulus habens duas caudas, duo capita, quatuor oculos, et quatuor aures. Talem eciam vidi, tempore juventutis mee, in parochia de Lankenyo, in domo cujusdam mulieris, Llugu vez Watkyn vocate, abortum. Nascitur eciam, in parochia de Lanpadok, unus puer masculus cum uno oculo tantum in fronte situato. Nota de vitulis. Nota de monoculo.

In vigilia Epiphanie, comites de Kent de Huntington et de Sarum calide et dolose regem novum interficere, et depositum a carceribus restituere, clam armata et magna manu potissime, quia ducum status et possessiones dampnatorum eis collatas amiserant, satagentes versus castrum de Wyndesor, simulando se ibidem hastiludia exercere, et sic, captato introitu, regem et filios ac alios sibi speciales assistentes trucidare proponebant. Sed rex precautus subito Londoniam pro tutamine transivit. Unde de Kent et de Sarum comites ad comitatum Cestrie, pro eorum sibi ad hoc insurgencium favore et auxilio habendis, per Cyrencestriam A.D. 1400.

A.D. 1400. transierunt; ubi, in crastino Epiphanie, plebeiorum pagensium tumultu decapitati fuerunt. Et plures cum eis inventi,
f. 165 b. Oxoniam ducti, ibi decapitati extiterunt; quorum cadavera, partita ad modum ferinarum carnium venacione occupatarum, partim in sacculis, partim inter duos super humeros in baculis, Londoniam deferri et postea sale condiri vidi. Item, comes Hundyngdon per Essexem ad Franciam fugere volens, per pagences captus, in eodem loco quo et dux Glowcestrie se Ricardo nuper regi reddidit, per plebeyos et mecanicos decapitatur. De quibus rex domino meo Cantuariensi scripsit; unde ipse sub isto themate: "Nuncio vobis magnum gaudium,"[1] per modum sermonis, hoc clero et populo Londoniis publicavit, et, cantato ymno, "Te deum laudamus," Deo regraciando per civitatem cum solempni transivit processione.

Postmodum, plures alii, inter quos magister Ricardus Maudelen, Wyllylmus Ferby, clerici, Thomas Schelly et Barnabas Broccas, milites, tracti, suspensi, demum quia hujusmodi facinoris conscii et fautores decapitabantur.

Jam hii in quibus Ricardus nuper rex fiduciam habuit relevaminis ceciderunt. Quo audito, magis usque ad sui mortem lugendo condoluit, in castro de Pomffret catenis ligato, et victualium penuria domino N. Swynford ipsum
Mors Ricardi. tormentante, sibi ultimo die Februarii miserabiliter contingentem.

In coronacione istius domini, tria regalitatis insignia tria sibi infortunia portentabant. Primo, in processione, unum de coronacionis sotularibus perdidit; unde et primo plebei contra ipsum insurgentes ipsum post per totam vitam suam detestabantur: secundo, unum de calcaribus aureis ab eo cecidit; unde et militares, secundo, sibi rebellando adversabantur: tercio, in prandio subitus venti impetus coronam a capite deposuit; unde, tercio et finaliter, a regno depositus et per regem Henricum supplantatus fuit[2].

[1] More correctly: "Evangelizo vobis gaudium magnum." Luc. ij. 10.
[2] This paragraph is added in the margin.

Nunc Ricarde, vale! ymmo rex, si fas est dicere, valentissime; cum post mortem laudare sit cuique, si cum Deo et populi tui relevamine acta tua disposuisses merito laudanda. Sed, quamvis cum Salamone dapsilis, cum Absalone pulcher, cum Assuero gloriosus, cum Belino magno precellens edificator existens, ad modum Cosdre regis Persarum in manus Eraclii, sic in medio glorie tue, rota labente fortune, in manus ducis Henrici miserrime, cum interna populi tui maledicione, cecidisti. A.D. 1400.

Interim, dominus de Spenser, dominus de Glanmorgan, quia ejusdem prodicionis conscius et fautor, Bristolie per mecanicos vilissime decapitatur. Quorum sic ruencium capita, in palis ultra pontem Londoniensem fixa, aliquamdiu publice patebant. Sed, quia omnia ista plebeiorum sola ferocitate extiterunt perpetrata, timeo quod gladii possessionem, eis jam tolleratam contra ordinis racionem, in dominos magis in futurum vibrare causabuntur.

Item, omnes albe carte, in quibus per totam Angliam regni subditi regi Ricardo sibi sub sigillis suis se ad votum submiserunt, ac si novus conquestus regni esset factus, in summitate lancearum publice delate Londoniam, cremate fuerunt, cum suorum infinitate sigillorum.

Episcopus Norwycensis, dicti domini de Spenser patruus, quia de dicta prodicione accusatus, non temporalium carceribus sed domini mei Cantuariensis custodie traditur, judicium expectaturus, ob reverenciam pontificalis dignitatis. Sed postea rex ipsum ecclesie et statui simpliciter restituit.

Episcopus Karliencis, nuper monachus Westmonasteriensis, de dicta prodicione coram regis justiciariis per duodenam laycorum convictus et dampnatus, in Turri Londoniensi aliquamdiu carcerum catenatus langoribus cruciatus, alio enim in ejus episcopatu subrogato, suo pristino monachaliter victurus[1] restituitur monasterio, licet Millatenci intitulatus pontificatu.

[1] viviturus. MS.

A.D. 1400. Isto anno, dominus meus Cantuariensis, suo convocato clero, eis[1] lamentabiliter proposuit qualiter temporales libertates ecclesie Anglicane, et presertim in capiendo, carcerando, et indeferenter quasi laicos episcopos judicando, violare non formidant. "Vere, domine," dixi, "discurrendo per corpus juris et cronicas, plus crudelitatis in-
f. 166. venitur in Anglia prelatis quam in tota Cristianitate fuisse irrogatum." Allegavi capitulum: "Sicut dignum,"[2] de homicidio, et plura alia, et breviter, quoad casum presentem, scilicet episcopos incarcerando, Clementinam: "Si quis suadente," de penis[3], que, propter incarceracionem episcopi Lychfeldensis, tempore Edwardi secundi regis Anglie, emanavit. Dominus Cantuariensis tunc retulit qualiter jam tarde Symon Yslep, predecessor suus, videns suffraganeum suum, Wyllelmum Lyle, tunc Eliencem episcopum, in aula Westmonasterienci criminaliter tractum ante regis justiciariorum stare tribunal, cepit eum per manum dextram, sic dicendo: "Subditus meus es. In vetito stas examine coram non tuo judice. Veni mecum!"

Libertas ecclesie, ecce! Et sic, invito justiciario, eum secum abduxit. Episcopus tamen, in Anglia non audens remanere, ad curiam Romanam transiit, et ibi illum justiciarium excommunicari, ac ipsum interim mortuum ecclesiastica sepultura exui et in foveam proici, obtinuit.

Parcitur plebeis. Audito quod Francia et Scocia Angliam invadere se parabant, rex, dominos spirituales et temporales solum collectando, pepercit plebeis.

Corpus domini Ricardi, nuper regis Anglie, ad ecclesiam Sancti Pauli Londoniensem, non velata facie sed publice cuique ostensa, ducitur; ubi exeqiis ea nocte et in crastino missa habitis, aput Langlei inter fratres tumilatur. O Deus! quantas millenas marcas circa vane glorie sepulturas, sibi et uxoribus suis inter reges Westmonasterii faciendas, ex-

[1] ejus. MS [2] Decret. Greg. ix., lib. v., tit. xij. § vj.
[3] Decret. Clement. lib. v., tit. viij. § i.

pendidit. Contra tamen hujusmodi propositum fortuna disponit contrarium. A.D. 1400.

Moritur frater Wyllylmus Botsame, episcopus Roffencis, prius Landavencis, et in ejus locum erigitur magister Johannes Botsam, domini mei Cantuariencis cancellarius. Moritur eciam graciosus vir, Johannes ap Gr[uffyd], abbas de Lanternane, qui monasterium suum, totaliter casuate crematum, annis in paucis mirabiliter funditus restauravit. Cui summe prudencie vir, Johannes ap Hoel, ejusdem monasterii prior, successit. Lanternane.

Ista Quadragesima, civitatis Londoniencis pueri, sepius ad millia congregati reges inter se erigendo, ad modum bellicosum, juxta vires eorundem, mutuo pugnabant; unde plures ictibus percussi, pedibus calcati, locorumque artitudine oppressi, moriebantur, ad magnum populi mirum quid hoc pronosticaret: credo quod pestilenciam, anno sequenti contingentem, in qua pro majori parte ab hac luce transierunt. Tamen ab hujusmodi eorum conflictibus, quousque rex sub gravibus minis eorum parentibus et magistris hoc cohibere scripserat, restringi non poterant. Confluctus puerorum.

Contulit mihi princeps, tercio die mensis Mai, unam prebendam in ecclesia Bangorensi. Item, quarto die istius mensis, scilicet Maii, domino Henrico rege in aula sua infra Turrim Londoniensem regali more condecenter pro tribunali sedente, dominus de Morlei, qui alias comitem Sarum de prodicione accusaverat, eo quod, die ad duellandum eis assignato, idem comes tercio non satisfecerat, ipsum, juxta formam accusacionis, proditorem adjudicari et in expensis suos fidejussores condempnari peciit. Ymmo nomine suo, licet capellanus, quia ipse comes, ut premittitur, mortuus fuit, sentencialiter et diffinitive pecii. Pars adversa excepit de morte ante diem indictam scisti. Unde replicavi quod proditorie insurgendo mortem sibi causavit, et sic aggressu proprio ruit. Per cy: in lege, "Si decesserit," [in titulo] "Qui satisdare cogantur,"[1] in Justiniani Prebenda Bangorensis. Sentencia post mortem.

[1] Digest. II. tit. viij. l. 4.

A.D.1400. operibus ; et, "Si homo scisti," lex, "Si eum ;" [1] titulus, "Si quis caucionibus ;" [2] et, "Judicatum solvi," lex, "Judicatum ;" [3] et Codex, "De custodia reorum," lex, "Ad
f. 166 b. Commentariensem." [4] Et breviter, contra fidejussores dicti comitis pars mea obtentum habuit, me in c. solidis et duodecim virgatis scarleti remunerando.

Hoc anno, scilicet Domini mcccc°, per totam Angliam magna et presertim innoscentum regnavit pestilencia, subito quasi irruens et animas tollens. Moritur dominus Johannes de Usk, abbas de Certeseia, cum xiij. monachis. Iste bone memorie in theologia inceptor, vir utique maxime sanctitatis, Beate Virginis obsequius incistendo, die Nativitatis ejusdem Virginis, ad hoc per eum, quia in ejus parochia natum et in lavacro baptizatum aput Usk, sub eodem festo semper preoptatum, suum Domino direxit spiritum. Utinam ejus vie consors fieri mererer! In transitu suo secum fui, et benediccionem suam, de quo gaudeo, recepi sub hiis verbis: "Illam benediccionem, quam Beata Virgo filio suo Domino Jesu et quam Isaac filio suo Jacob contulerunt, tibi confero." Iste abbas, per Beatam Virginem in sopore suo consolatus, recte in ipso transitu suo quasi fratribus suis et mihi dixit: "Inimicus dedit mihi insidias ; sed benedicta Virgo Maria, cum duabus aliis dominabus mihi in succursum superveniens, inimicum penitus expulit, me consolando quod de cetero me non turbaret, et quod ipsa cum aliis dominabus a me non recederet, quousque spiritum meum secum salvum haberet." Et quasi levis sopor ipsum tunc occupavit. Et quidam frater suus, Wyllylmus Burtoun, excitavit eum, dicens sibi: "Sitis forti animo, quia bene valebitis!"

[1] Digest. II. tit. ix. l. 10.

[2] Ibid. tit. xj. [3] Ibid. XLVI. tit. vij. l. 6.

[4] Cod. ix. tit. iv. l. 4. The references are thus quoted in the MS.: "per cy. in l. si decesserit, q. sa. co. in. j. op. et si ho. scisti. l. si eum. tt. si quis cauc. et iudi. sol. l. iudit^um^. et c. de cus. r. l. ad commentariensem."

Respondit abbas: "Benedictus Deus! bene valebo. Tace et audi." Dixit monachus: "Quid audiam?" "Multitudinem angelorum cum summa melodia canencium, 'Veni, benedicte fili patris celestis, posside regnum ejus in eternam tibi hereditatem.'" Tunc ille: "Non audio. Utinam dignus audire essem!" Et sic spiritum, sine aliquali turbacionis motu, direxit ad Dominum. A.D. 1400. Moritur abbas de Certeseya.

Eodem anno, rex cum magno et glorioso exercitu transiit in Scociam ad Scotorum ferocitatem domandam. Ipsi tamen propria rura, domos, et predia, ne regi nostro aliquid cederet, in refugium preveniendo, devastarunt et denudarunt; ac, se delitentes ad frutices ac deviarum cavernarum et nemorum abdita, a facie regis se subtraxerunt. Tamen, ex hujusmodi absconditis sepius exeuntes, in desertis deviis ac diversoriis nostratum quam plures interfecerunt et captivarunt, plus nobis quam nos eis dampni inferendo.

Rex, in festo Decollacionis Sancti Johannis Baptiste, in Angliam rediit, et, audito aput Leicestriam qualiter Oenus, dominus de Glendordee, cum Northe-Walencibus eundem Oenum principem erigentibus, rebellando hostiliter insurrexerat, ac castra quam plura occupaverat, burgas[1] ubique per Anglicos inter eos inhabitatas, ipsas depredando et Anglicos profugando, cremaverat, sui armata juventute collecta, suas bellicosas acies in Northe-Waliam direxit; quibus edomatis et deportatis, dictus eorum princeps cum septem aliis tantum rupibus et cavernis per annum quasi delituit. Rex cum aliis se paci reddentibus paucissimos interimendo misericorditer egit, ipsorum tamen principaliores secum Salopiam ducens captivos. Et postmodo, sub condicione alios adhuc in Snowdonia et aliunde rebellantes prosequendi et capiendi, dimisit eosdem.

Circa festum Beate Fidis, comes Northomerland et filius suus, dominus Henricus Perci, cum Scotis, Angliam post recessum regis invadentibus, habuerunt magnum conflictum; unde c. milites et armigeros ex Scotis captivando et ceteros

[1] burgus. MS.

A.D. 1400. in fugam propellendo. Causa victorie fuit ista: Anglici garciones, a tergo dominorum suorum tempore pugne equis insedentes, caute et optime hostili dolo unanimiter clamabant: "Scoti fugiunt! Scoti fugiunt!" Hoc Scoti in belli fronte pugnantes nimium timendo, dum rei veritatem exploraturi a tergo respicerent, geminatis ictibus in auribus et collis malleis pulsati ceciderunt.

Bonus dolus contra hostes.

f. 167.

Breve regium.

Ex parte regis hujusmodi breve presencium compilatori directum extitit: "Rex dilecto sibi M. A. U., legum doctori, salutem. Nonnulla dubia in scriptis, que statum et honorem regni nostri concernunt, vobis mittimus sub pede sigilli nostri, rogantes attencius et firmiter injungentes ut, hiis cum bona et matura deliberacione inspectis, ac materia eorundem plenius intellecta, vestrum sanum consilium et responsum in scriptis, vos in singulis per jura fundantes, nobis aut consilio nostro, citra festum Sancti Michaelis proxime futurum, omni excusacione postposita, et absque difficultatis obstaculo, transmittatis. Et ulterius, propter diversas opiniones aliorum juris peritorum que forsan expedicionem negocii illius poterunt retardare, volumus et mandamus quod in propria persona vestra sitis coram dicto consilio nostro, aput Westmonasterium, in octabis festi predicti, una cum hiis qui vobiscum in examine predicto studiose concurrent, vestrum in premissis ibidem consilium inpensuri, et finem ac conclusionem super dictis opinionibus imposituri. Et hoc, sub fide qua nobis tenemini, et sicut honorem et conservacionem status regni nostri diligitis, nullatenus omittatis. Teste me ipso aput Westmonasterium, xij° die Septembris, anno regni nostri primo."

Questiones inter Anglie et Francie regna.

"Sequntur questiones super articulis tangentibus matrimonium initum inter dominum Ricardum, nuper regem Anglie, et dominam Isabellam, filiam regis Francie. Et primo, motiva et cause super matrimonio hujusmodi contrahendo sequuntur.

Factum.

"In tractatu nuper habito racione matrimonii inter Ricardum, regem Anglie, et filiam regis Francie, spe concepta

quod grandia et communia innumerabilia scandala, mala, inconveniencie, dampna, et effusio sanguinis humani, que, racione discordiarum et guerrarum inter regna, etc., hactenus evenerunt, cessent in posterum; et quod melius et celerius perveniri valeat ad bonas conclusiones, pacem, et concordiam inter regna predicta, longe futuris temporibus duraturas; ac inter reges illos et successores suos vinculum affinitatis existere; necnon inter regna sua et eorum subditos amicicia et conversacio mirifice enutriri: fuerat inter cetera concordatum quod dicta regina dicto Ricardo debet matrimonialiter copulari, et quod rex Francie, contemplacione dicti maritagii, solveret dicto regi Ricardo octingintos mille francos; unde soluti fuerant quingenti mille franci. A.D. 1400.

"Item, concordatum erat quod, si post solemnizacionem dicti matrimonii rex Anglie discesserit sine liberis de dicto matrimonio procreatis, et quod dicta regina ipsum regem supervixerit, ipsa existente infra etatem vel etate xij. annorum plenarie non completorum, summa quingentorum mille francorum, aut illud quod fuerit solutum de dicta majori summa ultra summam trecentorum mille francorum, deberet restitui prefate regine: ad quod dictus rex Anglie obligavit se et heredes et successores suos et habentes causam ac omnia bona sua mobilia et immobilia, tunc presencia et futura, consensu tamen parliamenti ad hoc non interveniente. Factum.

"Numquid rex Anglie modernus ex hoc fuerit obligatus per dominum regem Ricardum, et teneatur ad restitucionem pecunie sic recepte ultra trecenta[1] millia francorum, attento quod, in obligacione antedicta per regem Ricardum, ut premittitur, facta, regnum non prestiterit suum consensum? Et, si non, numquid cause et suggesciones in tractatu matrimonii expresse, ac superius enarrate, que utilitatem publicam utriusque regni videntur respicere, regem modernum ad restitucionem dicte pecunie poterunt astringere et sufficienter obligare? Questio. Questio. f. 167 b.

[1] tria. MS.

A.D. 1400. Factum. "Item, vigore tractatus, dominus noster rex modernus, tempore quo fuerat comes Derbeie, et alii domini proximiores de regali sanguine omnes simul et singuli, pro se et particulariter propriis heredibus et successoribus et habentibus causam, per suas litteras promiserunt, ex certa sua sciencia et plenaria voluntate, quod, si dictus rex Ricardus decederet ante consummacionem dicti maritagii, dicta regina, libera et soluta ab omnibus ligamentis et impedimentis matrimonii et aliis obligacionibus quibuscumque, deberet plene restitui, cum omnibus jocalibus et bonis suis, regi Francie, patri suo, heredi et successori suo, obligantes et expresse ypothecantes dictus comes et alii domini supradicti se ipsos, heredes, et successores eorum predictos et habentes causam, et eorum bona quecunque mobilia et immobilia, tunc presencia et futura, pro premissis et quolibet eorum tenendis et servandis, fiendis, et plenarie adimplendis, juxta formam et tenorem dictarum litterarum obligatoriarum et tractatus de et super maritagio supradicto.

Questio. "Queritur, quomodo debet intelligi de bonis hujusmodi, an de illis dumtaxat que cum regina fuerant liberata, an tam illa quam alia ex tunc hactenus acquisita per eam; et an ducenta millia francorum, de quibus supra in tractatu matrimonii supradicti fit mencio, sub et in bonis hujusmodi debeant comprehendi?"

"Sequntur questiones super aliis articulis tangentibus tres milliones scutorum per regem Francie regi Anglie solvendorum:—

Factum. "Olim, in tractatu pacis finalis inter Johannem, regem Francie, et Edwardum, regem Anglie, fuerat inter cetera concordatum quod rex Francie solveret regi Anglie, vel suo deputato, tres milliones scutorum auri, certis terminis limitatis; ad quam solucionem faciendam rex Francie, aput Calisias, dum erat in potestate regis Anglie, obligavit se et heredes suos, et eorum bona, mobilia et immobilia. Unde medietas restat solvenda.

Questio. "Numquid rex Anglie modernus poterit juste petere de

rege Francie moderno hujusmodi pecuniam non solutam; et, si non, an competat accio executoribus regis Edwardi; et, si sic, numquid rex Anglie modernus, jure directo et utili ab executoribus regis Edwardi sibi cesso, tanquam cessionarius poterit eandem pecuniam petere?" A.D. 1400. Questio.

"Sequitur tenor effectus literarum dicti regis Francie super premisso articulo, in quibus cause tractatus hujusmodi continentur: 'Johannes dei gracia rex Francie omnibus et singulis presentibus et futuris, notum vobis facimus per presentes quod, super omnibus dissencionibus et discordiis quibuscumque, motis inter nos, pro nobis et pro omnibus illis ad quos pertinet ex una parte, et regem Anglie et omnes illos quos tangere poterit ex altera parte, pro bono pacis, extitit concordatum, tali die et tali loco, modo qui sequitur: In primo quod rex Anglie habebit talia castra et talia loca, etc. Item, concordatum est quod rex Francie solvet regi Anglie, vel deputato suo, tria millia millium scutorum auri certis terminis,' etc. Litere.

"Item, ex quo rex Francie, captus in guerris per regem Anglie, in concordia pacis finalis obligavit se et heredes suos ad solvendum regi Anglie tres milliones, dum idem rex Francie Calesius in potestate regis Anglie erat, non facta mencione in litteris dicte concordie quod illa solucio fieret racione financie redempcionis ejusdem regis Francie, numquid illa obligacio viciatur ex eo quod pretenditur metum intervenisse, non obstante quod notorium sit toti mundo quod summa pecunie pro redempcione seu financia debebatur hujusmodi? Factum. Questio.

"Post dictam obligacionem prefatus rex Francie, aput Bolaniam, in sua libertate, ut asseruit, constitutus, in litteris suis recitavit illum articulum, in quo cavetur quod rex Francie solveret regi Anglie, vel deputato suo, dictam summam terminis, ut premittitur, limitatis; et subsequenter, in eisdem litteris, narrat se solvisse carissimo fratri suo, regi Anglie, certam summam pecunie, in parte solucionis dicte majoris summe; et in illis litteris obligavit se et heredes Factum. f. 168.

A.D. 1400. suos et eorum bona quecunque ad solvendum dicto fratri suo residuum non solutum, volens quod omnes alie obligaciones in hac parte prius facte pro nullo penitus habeantur.

Questio. "Queritur sicut prius in dicto articulo, et presertim numquid hec secunda obligacio regis Francie facta Bolonie, de predicta pecunia solvenda regi Anglie, videatur primam obligacionem factam regi Anglie tollere seu ipsam quovismodo novare, cum de ipsius consensu expresse circa hoc non appareat per scripturam.

Factum. "Item, in alio articulo in eodem tractatu expresse continetur quod, rege Francie certa castra, etc., restituente, simili modo rex Anglie certa castra alia, per se et suos occupata, teneatur restituere.

Questio. "Numquid, si appareat quod rex Francie castra, etc., restituerit, ac premissa omnia pro parte sua adimpleverit, at rex Anglie promissa per eum non perfecerit, solucio pecunie promisse per regem Francie regi Anglie, prout in tractatu continetur, juste poterit denegari?

Factum. "Item, in alio articulo in tractatu [de] quo supra fit mencio continetur quod rex Francie certa castra promisit regi Anglie liberare, quoque, post liberacionem hujusmodi, certas renunciaciones super certis juribus et resorto ac aliis faceret; necnon literas super hujusmodi renunciacione et dimissione, sigillo suo sigillatas, certo termino, aput Bruges, regi Anglie aut deputatis suis faceret liberari realiter et tradi. Et rex Anglie promisit simili modo certa castra liberare ac juri, quoad coronam Francie, renunciare, etc.

Questio. "Si appareat quod rex Francie ex parte sua, predictis die et loco, premissa omnia paratus erat adimplere; nec appareat quod rex Anglie promissa per eum in hac parte perfecit, seu quod nuncios suos ad Bruges in termino limitato transmiserit, qui promissa et oblata per regem Francie poterant acceptare et promissa per regem Anglie eciam adimplere—numquid solucio pecunie, ut premittitur, per regem Francie regi Anglie promisse, propter negligenciam seu defectum dicti regis Anglie, juste poterit denegari?

"Item, si predicta summa de predictis tribus millionibus non soluta domino nostro regi Anglie debeatur, jure proprio seu per executores regis Edwardi cesso, etc., et ita contigerit quod idem dominus rex teneatur restituere domine regine, filie regis Francie, ducenta millia francorum, de quibus supra fit mencio, numquid de summis hujusmodi, hinc inde petitis et debitis, debeat de jure fieri compensacio, licet dicta regina, in hoc casu, censeatur esse tercia persona, cui fienda est restitucio seu solucio? Quia, quamvis restitucio ducentorum mille francorum referatur ad ipsam reginam, obligacio tamen originaliter fuit contracta et radicata inter Ricardum, regem Anglie, et Karolum, nunc regem Francie. Et sic videtur quod rex Anglie modernus, jure proprio seu cesso, etc., inter easdem personas poterit compensare. A.D. 1400. Questio.

"Item, supposito, absque prejudicio veritatis, quod si rex modernus, ut comes Derbeie, teneatur predicta ducenta millia restituere, seu illa, ut prefertur, compensare poterit, numquid alii nobiles secum obligati, tanquam corei seu confidejussores, teneantur, juxta beneficium epistole, etc., ad solucionem dictorum ducentorum millium contribuere, seu eadem ducenta millia de bonis et jocalibus regis Ricardi idem rex primitus debeat excomputare? Factum. Questio.

"Item, presupposito, absque prejudicio eciam veritatis, quod si rex modernus teneatur reginam cum bonis et jocalibus simpliciter restituere, juxta formam clausule in tractatu expresse, numquid idem rex modernus, jure proprio, tanquam rex Anglie, aut jure cesso ab executoribus regis Edwardi, ut prefertur, excipiendo, restitucionem predicte regine una cum bonis, etc., poterit impedire, ac jure retencionis uti, quousque rex Francie de residuo trium millionum, notorie debito et non soluto, regi moderno velit satisfacere? Factum. Questio.

"Istud est querere breviter:—Numquid rex Anglie modernus predictam excepcionem de residuo non soluto seu aliam excepcionem poterit apponere, que restitucionem f. 168 b. Questio.

A.D. 1400. regine una cum bonis poterit impedire, quousque excepcionem hujusmodi rex Francie poterit elidere seu removere?

Factum. "Item, ambassiatores domini regis moderni, aput Caliciam, ambassiatoribus regis Francie nunc ultimo in tractatu promiserunt reginam cum bonis, ante festum Purificacionis Beate Marie proxime futurum, simpliciter restituere, juxta formam obligacionis inde facte.

Questio. "Si consilium regis Francie, seu ejusdem regine, recusaverit aquitanciam super hujusmodi restitucionem primitus cum effectu tradere, que mala non faciliter numerabilia et presertim materiam scandali et effusionem sanguinis humani poterit tollere et penitus extirpare (et ea omnia verisimile est aliter evenire occasione hujus matrimonii, prout sepius inter Angliam et Franciam acciderat, retroactis

Questio. temporibus, in diversis terminis consimilibus),—numquid ergo ambassiatores supradicti restitucionem regine una cum bonis, non obstante promissione ac eciam salvo honore regis et regni, poterunt denegare, quousque talem acquitanciam exclusoriam, etc., velint liberare?

Factum. "Item, olim in tractatu pacis finalis, de quo supra in tercio dubio continetur, fuit inter alia inter eosdem reges concordatum, prout asseritur, quamvis hoc non appareat scriptura, quod rex Edwardus stipendiarios suos et alios sibi subditos, per regnum Francie discurrentes, expensis suis a regno Francie, infra certum terminum, expelli et penitus removeri faceret.

Questio. "Si appareat quod rex Edwardus promissa non adimplevit infra predictum terminum, sed eisdem stipendiariis suis et aliis subditis in armis auxilium, consilium, et favorem prestitit, numquid, si liqueat de predicta concordia facta in primo tractatu pacis sive post illum tractatum, ex illo capite solucio residui dicti trium millionum[1] juste poterit denegari?"

Moritur comitissa Arundelle. Vij° kalendas Octobris, nobilissima domina mea, domina Philippa, domini mei comitis Marchie filia, primo juveni

[1] millium. MS.

probissimo comiti Penbrochie aput Wotstok in hastiludio perempto, et postea nobili comiti Arundelle decapitato, tercio domino de Seynt John conjugata, modicum postquam mihi ecclesiam de Westhanfeld, in Essexia, donaverat, nondum xxiiij^{tum} etatis sue annum attingens, aput Halnakyt juxta Cicestriam, viam universe carnis est ingressa, et in prioratu de Bosgrove jacet tumulata. A.D. 1400.

Lumbardi et alii mercatores transmarini aput Londiniam, in propriis hospiciis morari soliti ac mercimonia sua libere exponere tollerati, in tantum, more transmarino, sunt restricti, quod non per se, sed in domo alicujus civis in ea parte fidejussuri, morari debeant; nec sua mercimonia, nisi juxta ejusdem civis supervisionem, exponere sunt aliquatenus permissi. Lumbardi restringuntur [1].

Dux Bavarie, frater regine Francie, Bohemie rege a diu imperium occupante, quia inutili et nondum per papam coronato, contempto, Francorum auxilio in imperatorem erectus, cum pluribus Francis campestri bello per dictum regem devincitur. Fit imperator dux Bavarie.

Quatuor campanelle, ad quatuor angulos tumbe Sancti Edwardi aput Westmonasterium affixe, propriis motibus et multo plus quam viribus humanis pulsate, ad magna conventus terrores et prodigia, quater in uno die mirabiliter sonuerunt. Campane per se pulsant.

Fons, in quo caput Llewelini ap Gruffyd, Wallensium principis ultimi, in pago de Buellt situato [2], post ejus amputacionem lotum extitit, per diem naturalem integrum merissime sanguine manavit. Fons manat sanguine.

Unum est quod hiis diebus dolenter refero, quod duo pape, quasi monstrum in natura, jam per xxij. annos tunicam Christi inconsutelem, contra id Sapiencie: "Una est columba mea" [3], neffandissime dividendo, mundum animarum erratibus, corporum diversis cruciatorum terroribus, nimium perturbarunt. Et heu !, si verum est quod memorie Duo pape per xxij. annos. f. 169.

[1] retinguntur. MS. [2] situati. MS. [3] Cant. Cantic. vj. 8.

A.D. 1400. reduco, scilicet illud evangelii[1]: "Vos estis sal terre, sed quid si sal evanuerit? Ad nichil valet ultra, nisi ut eiciatur foras et conculcetur ab hominibus." Unde, quia sacerdocio modo quasi venali, etc., nonne Christus ementes et vendentes in templo, facto funiculo, ejecit foras? Et unde timeo, ne cum magna flagellacione et conculcacione a gloria sacerdocii eiciamur, attendens quod in veteri testamento, postquam venalitas sacerdocium violarat, fumus impressabilis, ignis inextinguibilis, fetor innocissibilis, cessarunt in templo. Ut quid mora? En[2]! mater virgo, juxta id Apocalypseos[3], a facie bestie in trono sedentis in desertum fugit cum filio. Hic me jubet quiescere Plato, cum nil sit cercius morte, nil incercius hora mortis. Ideo, benedicatur Deus!, in mei originis, scilicet de Usk, ecclesia, jam mori adiscens, memoriale meum in competentibus missali, gradali, tropario, sequencia, antiphonario, noviter et cum novis addicionibus et notis compositis, ac plena vestimentorum secta, cum tribus capis, ornanter compositorum meis signis, scilicet nudi fodentis in campo nigro, oracionum suffragiis ibidem me comendando relinquo; ulterius, si Deus dederit, ecclesiam eandem reparacione honestiori, ad Beate Virginis gloriam, in cujus Nativitatis honore est dedicata, perornare proponens; hoc ad mei laudem non reputando, quia presentis fatuitatis mee scripturam in vita mea videri detestor.

Venalitas in sacerdocio.

Ornamenta ecclesie de Usk.

Filius regis Francie fit dux Aquitanie.

Primogenitus Francie, in exheredacionem et detestacionem regis Anglie, in ducem creatur Aquitanie; quo statim mortuo, secundogenitus subrogatus cum exercitu ad partes Aquitanie sibi transit subjugandas.

Imperator Grecorum venit in Angliam.

Imperator Grecorum, pro subsidio contra Sarazenos habendo, regem Anglie, ab eo honorifice receptus, in festo Sancti Thome Apostoli, Londoniam visitat, cum eodem rege maximis suis expensis per duos menses continue existens,

[1] Matt. v. 13. More correctly—"Vos estis sal terræ. Quod si sal evanuerit, in quo salietur? Ad nihilum valet ultra nisi ut mittatur foras," *etc.* [2] an. MS. [3] Cap. xij. 14.

et eciam in recessu maximis donariis relevatus. Iste imperator semper uniformiter et sub uno colore, scilicet albo, in longis robis, ad modum tabardorum formatis, semper cum suis incedere solebat; multum varietatem et disparitatem Anglicorum in vestibus reprehendendo, asserens per eas animarum inconstanciam et varietatem significari. Capita neque barbas capellanorum ipsius non tetigit novacula. In divinis serviciis devotissimi erant isti Greci, ea tam per milites quam per clericos, quia in eorum vulgari, indifferenter cantando. Cogitavi intra me, quam esset dolendum quod iste major et ulterior Christianus versus orientem princeps, vi per infideles compulsus, ulteriores occidentis insulas, pro subsidio contra eosdem, visitare cogebatur. O Deus! Quid tu facis, Romana olim gloria? Tui imperii magnalia notorie sunt hodie scissa; unde tibi poterit id Jeremie merito dici: "Princeps provinciarum facta est sub tributo"[1]. Quis umquam crederet quod ad tantam devenires miseriam, que, in solio majestatis residere solens, toti mundo principabas, jam Christiane fidei nequaquam succursum prestare valendo?

A.D. 1400.

Miseria Rome.

Rex cum imperatore aput Eltam suum tenuit Natale.

Dominus meus Cantuariensis misit abbatem Leycestrie et me ad prioratum monialium de Nonetona, Lichfeldensis dioceseos, ad inquirendum contra dominum Robertum Bowlond, super diversis criminibus, heresibus, et erroribus ibidem per eum, ut diffamabatur, tanquam a colubro sub sanctitatis simulate specie, nequiter perpetratis. Ubi et quando invenimus unam monialem, ipsius Roberti extraordinaria libidine, more sodomidico, per seminis lapsum, et non per instrumenti ingressum, tam per confessionem ejusdem monialis quam literas dicti Roberti, quam eciam inspexione corporis impregnate, ante partum, per matronas facta, fuisse impregnatam; et ex hoc filiam dicto Roberto similem, in festo Sancte Petronille jam ultimo lapso[2], pepe-

Bowlond.

f. 169 b.

Per sodomiticum seminis lapsum fit impregnacio.

[1] Lament. i. 1.

[2] lapsum. MS.

A.D. 1400. risse. Et hoc idem ipse Robertus in plena cleri convocacione extitit confessus.

A.D. 1401. Rex, in octavis Sancti Hillarii, Londoniis, aput Westmonasterium, tenuit solempne parliamentum. Et dominus meus Cantuariensis in ecclesia Sancti Pauli magnam cleri convocacionem habuit.

Lis super armis de Hastynges. Tempore istius parliamenti, dominus Grei de Ruthyn, comitis [Pembrokie] et domini de Hastyng ab intestato heres, admissus in curia militari Anglie, super armis de Hastyng, scilicet manicam auream in campo rubio habentibus, contra dominum Edwardum Hastyng, quia ea integre portantem et se pro herede in ea parte gerentem, litem movit sumptuosam; ob quam me de consilio retinuit. Isti liti dominus Wyllylmus Bewchampe, dominus de Berkeney, quia in illo dominio et in aliis, que dicti comitis extiterant, ex dicti comitis dono, si sine herede ex corpore suo procreato, de consensu regis factus, dimidium habens, pro suo interesse cum dicto domino Grey viriliter assistebat. Et nemirum, quia victoria dicti Edwardi utrumque in toto duceret excludendum.

In convocacione, quidam dominus Wyllylmus Sawtri, capellanus, de heresi convictus et condempnatus, domino meo Cantuariensi statim, lata contra ipsum hujusmodi sentencia, magno impetu dixit ista verba: "Ego, missus a Deo, dico tibi quod tu et totus clerus tuus et eciam rex estis in brevi mala morte morituri; et extranea nacionis lingua in regno superveniet regnatura. Et hoc est in hostio proxime expectans." Qui quidem sic dampnatus, primo solempniter degradatus, postea in Smythfeld, Londoniis, posti derecte stando catenatus ac dolio, ignitis focalibus circumdatus, in cineres redactus existit.

Heredicus crematur.

Istius parliamenti tempore, in festo Carniprivii, quidam Wyllylmus Clerk, scriptor Cantuariensis et oriundus in comitatu Cestrie, militaris curie judicio dampnatus, primo lingua quia in regem hec aliis imponendo verba maledicta protulerat, secundo dextra manu qua illa scripserat priva-

Pena talionis.

tus, tercio pena talionis, quia falsa proposita non probavit, aput Turrim decapitatur. A.D. 1401.

Solempnes nuncii, ex parte ducis Bavarie, in imperatorem, ut premittitur, noviter electi, pro regis nata sibi copulanda, in Angliam advenerunt. Quibus ad partem dixi: "Numquid rex Boemie electus est in possessione imperii? Unde ista nova eleccio, prima non cassata?" Unus magnus clericus ex eis mihi respondit: "Quia inutilis fuit, et, quia per papam nondum coronatus, electores in ea parte hoc fecerunt." Tunc dixi, "Per capitulum: 'Venerabilem,' extractum: 'De eleccionibus'[1], ad solum papam hoc pertinere dinoscitur, quia ipse imperium a Grecis transtulit in Germanos." Tunc episcopus Herffordensis mihi silencium induxit.

A quo clerico contra symoniam, de quibus gaudeo, hos habui versus:—

Versus.

"Hec duo damna feres, si tu sis Symonis heres,
Mortuus ardebis, et vivus semper egebis."

Sed ex quo tactum est superius de eleccione imperatoris, et quot et quas coronas, et a quibus electus recipiet easdem, et quid significant. Septem sunt electores, unde versus:— Versus.

"Maguntinensis, Treverensis, Coloniensis,
Quilibet imperii fit cancellarius horum,
Et Palatinus dapifer, dux portitor ensis,
Marchio prepositus [camere], pincerna Boemus[2]:
Hii statuunt dominum cunctis, per secula summum."

Extractus: "De re judicata"; capitulum: "Ad apostolice"; in glossa penultima per Johannem Andream[3].

Primam coronam ferream, in signum fortitudinis, dabit electo archiepiscopus Coloniensis; secundam argenteam, in signum puritatis, dabit Treverensis archiepiscopus; terciam auream, in signum excellencie, dabit Maguntinensis archi- Tres corone imperatoris.

[1] Decret. Greg. ix. lib. i. tit. vj. § 34.

[2] The words "Palatinus," "dux," "Marchio," and "Boemus," are explained by interlinear glosses: "comes," "Saxonie," "Brandenbergiensis," and "id est rex Boemie."

[3] Sext. Decret. lib. ii. tit. xiv. § ij.

A.D. 1401. episcopus, quam papa in confirmacione ipsius electi, pedibus, capiti confirmati, et genuflectendo in signum humilitatis et honorem sancte Romane ecclesie, cujus vassallus existit, eam recipienti apponet.

Ordinatum fuit in isto parliamento, quod homines
f. 170. marchie contra Wallenses sibi indebitatos vel eos ledentes, habitis prius ad emendandum unius septimane induciis, represaliis possent visitare.

Item, pro parte prelatorum fuit propositum quod, cum ipsi tanquam barones ad parliamentum sunt vocati sicque temporalia sua a rege tenendo, quod non sit eorum condicio deterior quam aliorum regni patronorum, quoad beneficiorum collaciones. Plebei tamen insteterunt pro provisione papali in relevamine universitatum et cleri. Prelati promiserunt infra regnum per se de beneficiis clericis virtuosis providere ipsorum mera et propria voluntate.

Novi unum monachum, in domo Cartusiensi prope Londoniam, satis sanum et fortem, licet se voluntarie ab omnimodo victualium usu per quindenam continue abstinentem. Unde prior domus, de cujus eram consilio, an, si sic morеretur, ecclesiastica sepultura gaudere mererетur, me consuluit.

In isto parliamento et convocacione, concesse erant regi, a clero decima cum dimidia, et a populo quintadecima omnium bonorum, cum duobus solidis ex quolibet vini dolio, et, in aliis mercimoniis, ex singulis xx. solidis viij. denariis, licet cum magno murmure et interna cleri et populi malediccione.

Finitur istud parliamentum x. die mensis Marcii; quo tamen die, modicum ante presens, audivi plurima aspera contra Wallenses ordinanda agitari, scilicet, de non contrahendo matrimonium cum Anglicis, nec de adquirendo aut inhabitando in Anglia, et alia plura gravia. Et, sicut novit me Deus, nocte previa me excitavit a sompno vox, ita auribus meis insonans: "Supra dorsum meum fabricaverunt," etc.; "Dominus justus," etc., ut in psalmo:

" Sepe expugnaverunt " [1]. Unde expergefactus, timens mihi eo die aliquid infortunii contingere, me Spiritus Sancti gubernacioni specialiter timidus commissi. A.D. 1401.

Sequitur annus Domini mccccj.

Anno Domini mccccj° intrante.

Comes Warwyci, vir benignissimus, de quo supra, a carceribus ereptus, in die Parasceves, quem maximis elemosinis, penitenciis, ac aliis multimodis devocionibus colere solebat, ab hac vita subtractus, pro transitoriis celestia perhenniter commutavit, unicum filium suum sibi relinquendo heredem ; cui rex, veniam bienalis etatis largiendo, hereditatem liberavit paternam. Mors comitis Warwyc.

Wyllylmus ap Tedur et Reys ap Tedur, fratres, naturales de insula de Anglesey alias Mona, quia graciam regiam de dicti Owenii insurrexione optenere non valentes, eodem die Parasceves, castrum de Conwey, armis, victualibus tutissime instructum, duobus ejus janitoribus subtilitate cujusdam carpentarii, ad opus suum solitum se venire asserentis, interfectis, cum aliis quadraginta ingressi, occuparunt pro tutamine. Sed statim per principem et patriam obessi, xxviij. die mensis Maii tunc sequenti, idem castrum, vecorditer quoad se, et proditorie quoad socios, quia novem eorundem magis dicto principi exosos, post vigilias nocturnas dormitantes, per ipsos dolose a tergo ligatos, sub condicione sui et aliorum vitas servandi, reddiderunt. Quos ix., sic ligatos et principi redditos, primo trahi, postea eviscerari, suspendi, decollari et quatripartiri ad statim viderunt. Castrum de Conwey.

Isto eodem tempore, quidam ville de Usk burgenses, clam ecclesiam de Usk, instante servicio Passionis Dominice, exeuntes, castrum ibidem fraudelenter intrantes, quendam Johannem fiz Pers, nuper ibi senescallum, mortalibus penis, de adulterio cum domina quadam quia diffamatum [2], fiz Pers.

[1] Ps. cxxviij.

[2] " quia diffamatum " is written over an erasure, the name of the lady being probably suppressed. There are other alterations in the sentence.

A.D. 1401. per fratrem suum naturalem tantum, dominum Edwardum Charleton, mirabiliter dampnatum, nudum, in penis hujusmodi manicipatum, a vinculis per ipsos, fractis carceribus, absolutum, domino de Berkeveny in ipsius castro ibidem ad magnas eorundem grates, licet postea, hac de causa, propter seduccionem [1] per regem exulatum, apud Bergeveny predictam reddiderunt.

A.D. 1402. Hiis diebus, filius et heres regis Persarum Aremirandine, Turcorum Babylonie soldanum, magnum timorem Christianitati incucientem ut ipsius fidem pervertere jactantem, in centum mille bellicosos Christianos, et presertim Hungaros, invadere solitum, in campestri bello per se devictum obtinuit; Jerusalemque funditus destruxit, et partes illas in magna pompa occupavit. Unde Christianorum peregrinacio ad illas partes jam extitit impedita.

Destruccio Jerusalem.

A.D. 1401. Resistencia pannariorum et aliorum mercatorum. f. 170 b.

Kalendis Maii, apud Phillipis Norton, pannorum mercatores quendam regis domicellum, literas regias secum deferentem, censum, vectigal, sive tributum contra promissum regis in ingressu suo felici eis remissum, exigere, pro hujusmodi pannorum vendicione, nitentem, in medio foro trucidabant. Unde, quia regis justiciariis, licet regni proceribus, hujusmodi excessum punire, propter pagensium recistenciam, non valentibus, rex, in propria persona pagum visitando, dictum excessum aliqualiter reformavit, licet modica coreccione.

Alius hujusmodi exactor apud Dertmouth in comitatu Devonie, per vulgus invasus, vix mare per unam naviculam captatam apprehendit.

Uxores Bristollie.

Bristolie uxores, maritos inde exonerando, hujusmodi exactoribus hujusmodi repulsam, aliquando et vulneribus intermixtis, dederunt.

Dominus insularum Orcadum Ultoniam in Hibernea, ad magnum dampnum domini mei de Marchia, jam in custodia regis existentis, ipsius comitis duxit hostiliter invadendam.

[1] produccionem. MS.

In festo Ascencionis Domini, in hoc anno, subditi de Berkeveny contra eorum dominum, Wyllelmum Bewchampe, insurrexerunt; et tres viros propter furtum morti damnatos, et eodem die, scilicet juxta voluptatem secunde Jesabel, loci domine, festivitati aut tempori non reverendo, suspendendos, juxta furcas liberantes, dominum Wyllelmum Lucy, militem, ad mortis execucionem eorundem deputatum, sagittis suffocarunt. A.D. 1401. Insurreccio de Berkeveny.

In vigilia Apostolorum Petri et Pauli, Isbella, regis Francie filia, Anglie regina, regis Ricardi olim Anglie uxor, licet inutilis, quia nondum undecim annorum, a Londoniis versus patrem, pluribus tractatibus intermediis ad hoc habitis, recessit nigris induta, regi Henrico multum depressum et malevolum in recessu, vix os apperiens, exhibendo vultum. De cujus recessu, quem vidi, vulgus tumultuabat, potestas frendebat, quibusdam adventui ejus ad regnum, quia ipsius totam turbacionem causanti, maledicentibus, quibusdam aliis quod, post ejus recessum, ob dicti regis Ricardi mortem, olim ipsius mariti, majorem causaret vindicte fomite inferri molestiam asserentibus procurari per eandem. Recessus regine.

Isto anno Domini millesimo cccci^{mo}, in festo Commemoracionis Sancti Pauli, quidam regalis armorum de Scotis descriptor, Anglice herode vocatus, propter obloquia sua de rege Henrico in regno Francie habita, suis insigniis primo spoliatus, facie versa ad caudam equi, per Londoniam equitaturus et demum lingua privandus curie militaris judicio adjudicatus extitit. Rex tamen eundem, cum literis ex causa ipsius herawd ignominiosa missivis, ad dominum suum regem Scocie, cum ipsius causa scripta, graciose preter dictum remisit equitatum. Herowd Scocie.

Eodem die, lis magna in dicta curia inter dominum de Grey de Ruthyn, pro quo in ea parte [eram], et dominum Edwardum Hastyng, propter arma rubeii campi cum manica aurea, de quibus supra, que olim erant dominorum de Berkeveny; et inter dominum Johannem Colvyll de Dale, contra Lis armorum.

A.D. 1401. quem tunc advocavi, et dominum Walterum Byttervey, de comitatu Salopii, milites, propter arma de auro et una fees et tribus tortellis de rubio in capite, interdicto utrobi judicio scilicet posessorio, agentes quam tumultuose, habebatur.

Oweyn. Tota illa estate, Oweyn Klyndor, cum pluribus Wallie proceribus, regni exules et regis proditores habiti, in montanis et silvestribus delitentes, aliquando depredando, aliquando insidias et insultus eis inferentes interficiendo, partes West-Walie et North-Walie non modice infestarunt, ac dominum de Grey captivarunt[1].

Gallici magnam partem Vasconie, Anglie adherentis, sibimet, et presertim totum comitatum de Perago, civitatem scilicet ipsam cum xxx. castris et omnibus terris ipsius comitis, hostiliter ad eorum usum occuparunt. Ipsum

Comes Peragi. comitem ad dominum regem de premissis vidi, die predicto, accedere[2] relaturum.

Hibernia. Tunc eciam vidi Hibernie nobiliores contra mercenariorum Hibernicorum ferocitatem penes regem multum querelantes.

Tytmannus, Wigorniensis episcopus, vj. die mensis Junii, olim de Haylys monachus, cujus consilio retentus fueram, quem rex Ricardus, a suo monasterio expulsum propter medicandi et incantandi artes, primo in Landavensem, secundo in Wygornensem erexerat, diem suum clausit extremum. Unde rex scripsit pape pro magistro Ricardo Clefford, ipsius privati sigilli custode, quod, mutata ecclesie Wellensis provisione, eidem Ricardo, nondum tamen propter regis recistenciam sacrato, facta, de Wigorniensi, ac magistro Henrico Bowet, legum doctori, cum quo retentus fueram,

f. 171. de Wellensi, jam per annum et dimidium propter dictam resistenciam vacante, ecclesiis dignaretur providere.

Dicto Comemoracionis festo, dominus Georgius, comes de

[1] A note is added in the margin: "Dominus de Grey per O. captivatur et pro xvj millibus libris redimitur."

[2] accedereque. MS.

Donbar in Scocia, homo legeus regis Anglie devenit, sibi omnia possessiones et castra sua in regno Scocie habita reddendo; tamen dicebatur quod Scoti, factum suum hujusmodi precaptantes, eadem ad usum regis Scocie occupabant, sic quod hujus devencio et redditus modicum, ymmo minime, regi Anglie videbantur proficere. A.D. 1401.

Hujusmodi literam tempori convenientem ecce regi Henrico transmissam[1]: "Illustrissime princeps et [serenissime] domine, dignetur vestra celsitudo solito benignissima, me vestre sublimitatis servulum, vere totum et integrum dolore nunc plenum, vestris pedibus provolutum graciose habere recomendatum. Et quia vestra unica[2] serenitas mihi, vestro servulo minimo, in ultimo recessu [meo] a vobis corde tristissimo, demandavit quod, si qua [sinistra] audirem[3], vestre excellencie [ea] significarem indilate, ut servulus vester obedientissimus, pennam sumpsi in manibus que audieram et videram ostensurus. Sane, illustrissime princeps, ut testatur sapiens Solomon in Proverbiis Spiritus Sancti: 'Meliora sunt vulnera diligentis quam fraudulenta oscula blandientis'[4], ideo, ut verus vester et regni vestri dilector, atque pro viribus Dei et vestri fidelis servitor, 'elegi [magis] abjectus esse in domo Dei [mei]'[5] pro veritate, cum psalmista[6], quam regalibus interesse deliciis et ferre osculum adulacionis in ore, cum Juda proditore. Igitur, totus in lacrimas resolutus, corde vulneribus lacerato pre dolore, assero cum propheta, quod 'qui beatum te dicunt Litera regi directa.

[1] This letter, addressed by Philip Repyngdon, abbot of St. Mary de Pré, Leicester, to Henry the Fourth, is printed in the *Correspondence of Thomas Bekynton*, ed. Williams (Rolls Series), i. 151. A copy is also found in Stow MS. 67, in the British Museum, added to a brief chronicle of English history, which ends in the reign of Henry IV, and having the title: "Anno regni regis istius secundo scripsit ad eum venerabilis doctor in theologia, magister Philippus abbas Leicestrie, qui postea Lyncolniensis episcopus fuit effectus." Adam's text, which is faulty, has been amended by collation with these two copies, words which are supplied from them being printed within brackets.

[2] uncta. MS. [3] audiveram. MS.

[4] Prov. xxvij. 6. [5] Ps. lxxxiij. 11. [6] baptista. MS.

A.D. 1401. ipsi te decipiunt et semitas gressuum tuorum dissipant'[1]. Unde tantam desolacionem in cordibus prudencium, pre[2] confucione et turbacione quam timent infra breve in isto regno evenire, a tempore juventutis mee non memini me audisse. Quia lex et justicia sunt exules a regno; habundant furta, homicidia, adulteria, fornicaciones, [extortiones, ac] pauperum oppressiones, injurie, injusticie, et diverse contimelie; et nunc pro lege sufficit tirannica voluntas. Et ideo certus sum quod, si evangelium [Christi] sit verum, asserens quod 'omne regnum in se ipsum divisum desolabitur'[3], et si dicta sapientis non sunt insana, affirmantis quod 'regnum de gente in gentem transferetur propter injusticias, injurias, contumelias, et diversos dolos'[4], si, inquam, omnia ista in regno superhabundent sine freno, nec sit aliquis potens in regno, fidelis Christi procurator, in clero vel in milicia, qui hiis et aliis innumerabilibus Dei nostri offensis et contemptibus obviet vel succurrat, dico, cum fideli propheta, quod Dominus 'Deus fortis et paciens[5] irascitur per singulos dies, et, nisi conversi fueritis, gladium suum vibrabit; archum suum tetendit et paravit illum, et in eo paravit vasa mortis, sagittas suas ardentibus effecit'[6], ut, post tam manifesta Dei miracula et ejus stupenda gratissima beneficia in effectu et opere contempta vel neglecta, celerem et quasi furore plenam inferet[7] vindictam in ejus ingratos servos et manifestos contemptores. Nos autem sperabamus quod vester miraculosus ingressus in regnum Anglie, non dubito quin manu Dei peractus[8], fuisset redempturus Israel, et omnium peccatorum et malorum contemptuum reos reformaturus[9], 'ad vindictam malefactorum, laudem vero bonorum'[10]. Nunc vero flent discreti et rident discoli; vidue, pupilli, et orphani stringunt nunc

[1] Isai. iij. 12. [2] pro. MS. [3] Luc. xj. 17.
[4] Ecclest. x. 8. [5] potens. MS. [6] Ps. vij. 12—14.
[7] infert. MS. [8] non factus. MS.
[9] id est omnium pretactorum malorum et Dei contemptum ref. MS.
[10] 1 Pet. ij. 14.

manus, fluunt lacrime per maxillas, qui jam tarde, in vestro ingressu in regnum Anglie, erant omnes[1] plaudentes manibus et Deum voce unanimi collaudantes, cum filiis Israel in die Palmarum obviam Christo procedentes, [et] in celum clamantes, et de vobis, sicut de altero Christo, in regem uncto, concinentes: 'Benedictus qui [venit] in nomine Domini, rex noster Anglie'[2], in spe felicis regiminis hujus regni. Nunc vero 'versa est in luctum cithera nostra'[3], [et] gaudium [nostrum] transit in merorem, dum omnia mala multiplicantur, et spes remedii a cordibus hominum recessit [lacrimabiliter] cum dolore[4]. Ideo, in justam penam et vindictam negligencie et ommissionis gubernatorum populi, Deus judex justus[5] permittit plebeos, tanquam feras bestias, irregulariter et irracionabiliter judicare, et regimen superiorum innaturaliter presumere, et erga superiores, equales, et inferiores, sine discressionis libramine, bestialiter desevire. Et revera, nisi fallor, [licet] super rebelione populi indignetur vestra regalis dignitas, et ad tantum irritetur vestra strenuitas et militaris ferositas[6], ut eciam in una plaga regni vestri, quod absit, trucidentur in ore gladii viginti milia vestrorum legiorum, et exinde sacietur lictorum crudelitas, qui in vestro ingressu [in regnum Anglie] Deo et populo[7] spopondistis, omnes et singulos regni vestri incolas, pauperes et divites, majores et minores, defendere ab adversis. Non eo magis cessabit murmur populi nec indignacio Dei nostri[8] irati; sed magis incitabitur in furorem, et magis ac magis, captata oportunitate, deseviet in vindictam; donec, servata lege [et legali] regni vestri justicia, remotis et extinctis injuriis, injusticiis, et populi oppressionibus supradictis, per rectam regulam legis justicie,

A.D. 1401.

f. 171 b.

[1] omnes gentes. MS. [2] Matt. xxj. 9.
[3] Job, xxx. 31. [4] merore. MS. [5] et justus. MS.
[6] The text in Bekynton's correspondence has: "et revera, nisi fallar valde super rebellione populi, si non dedignetur vestra regalis dignitas, et ad tantum irritetur vestra sublimitas, timeo ne militaris accendatur ferocitas."
[7] Dei populum. MS. [8] vestri. MS.

A.D. 1401. reddatur unicuique quod suum est, ut sic primo inter Deum et hominem pax reformetur, et sic deinde inter hominem et proximum suum veraciter et non ficte derivetur. 'Quis enim restitit ei et pacem habuit?'[1] Quia [enim] peccata[2] vestra et 'iniquitates vestre diviserunt inter vos et Deum vestrum et absconderunt faciem ejus a vobis'[3], ideo, digno Dei judicio, qui 'sine lege peccaverunt, sine lege peribunt'[4], et qui legem contempnunt, redarguti a lege, secundum legem judicabuntur. Et, secundum beatum Jacopum, 'non auditores sed factores legis justificabuntur'[5], et e contrario contemptores confundentur, sicut [infra] biennium in rege Ricardo, tanquam in speculo stupendo, vidimus exemplatum[6], universo orbi et omnibus seculis supervenientibus indelebiliter et indefectibiliter memorandum. Auferat ergo Deus meus, sol justicie, velamen ab oculis vestris, ut clare intueamini oculis mentis vestre quid in vestro ingressu felici in regnum Anglie Deo fideli [et] inoblivioso promisistis publice et privatim, et, insuper, quid justicie et quid obsequii Deo grato et gracioso et regno Anglie pro omnibus beneficiis retribuistis. Et, si quid minus injusto libramine inveneritis, celeriter, pre timore vindicte, retribuere satagatis; et, si quid justum inveneritis, reddite gracias Domino, bonorum omnium largitori et unicuique secundum merita [sua] justissimo[7] redditori; et benedicta sancta Trinitas, [in] cujus manu corda sunt regum et omnia gubernacula regnorum, det vobis cor docile et tractabile et ad omne bonum ductile ad peragendum fideliter injunctum[8] vobis officium regie dignitatis, et ad intelligendum memoriter et efficaciter [et] ad remediandum miserias populorum; adaperiatque Dominus cor vestrum in lege sua et in preceptis suis, et faciat pacem in regno Anglie per dies sempiternos. Scriptum, si vestre placeat domi-

[1] Job, ix. 4. [2] pacta. MS. [3] Isai. lix. 2.
[4] Rom. ij. 12. [5] Jas. i. 22; Rom. ij. 13.
[6] exempla tamen. MS. [7] institissimo. MS.
[8] inminutum. MS.

nacioni, corde tremulo, amore languido, Londoniis, die Mercurii in crastino Invencionis Sancte Crucis, manu propria vestri soliti precatoris. Serenissime princeps, hec, in sentencia liberando animam meam, ut verus Dei cultor, et boni regiminis vestri zelator, reique publice et regni vestri fidelis amator et orator, vive vocis oraculo locutus sum vobis, apud vos manens; et nunc, si placeat, hec scribo vobis, eodem accensus desiderio et amore, et amoris langore, 'priusquam fiant, ut [1], cum factum fuerit, credatis,' et 'ut, cum venerit hora eorum, reminiscamini quia ego dixi vobis: Cum autem venerit ille spiritus veritatis, docebit vos omnem veritatem, et que ventura sunt annunciabit vobis' [2]. Ecce, 'vir desideriorum' [3], amore langueo" [4]. A.D. 1401.

Item, xxviij. die mensis Julii, anno Domini millesimo cccc. primo, regina Anglie predicta, adhuc pupilla, Calicias transfretavit, et ibidem, usque ad primam diem Augustii proxime sequentem, pendente tractatu inter nostrates Anglie et consiliarios regis Francie, morabatur; quo die primo, cum suis jocalibus et dotaliciis, patri suo regi Francie transmittenda, honorifice recipiebatur per Francigenas, omnibus Anglicis utriusque sexus omnia ad propria remissis.

Ista estate, classes Anglie et Francie se multum in mari mutuo infestabant.

Item, in crastino Assumpcionis Beate Virginis anni predicti, dominus rex Henricus, cum suis proceribus ab omni parte regni ad hoc vocatis, in magno consilio et solempni apud Westmonasterium celebrato, adversarios suos Francie et Scocie per eum fore militariter invadendos decrevit.

Item, isto autumpno, Oweynus de Glendor, cum tota Northewalia, Cardikan, et Poysia sibi adherentibus, Anglicos

[1] id. MS. [2] Joh. xiv. 29; xvj. 4, 13. [3] Dan. ix. 23.

[4] languido. MS. The copy in the Stow MS. has these additional words: "Vestre, si placeat, celsitudinis indignus servulus, Philippus, predicator vester assiduus."

A.D. 1401. in illis partibus habitantes, cum eorum villis et presertim villa de Pola, ferro et flamma multum infestabat. Unde Anglici, in multitudine glomerosa illas partes invadendo, totaliter depopulatas et depredatas ferro, fame, et flamma, eciam pueris et ecclesiis non parcendo, et monasterium de Stratflur, in quo rexmet hospitabatur, et ejus ecclesia et choro eciam usque ad summum altare pro stabulo utendo, ipsasque pateras penitus spoliando, et ultra mille utriusque sexus pueros secum in Angliam vehendo ipsorum serviciis mancipandos, desolatas reliquerunt easdem. Dictus tamen Oenus non modicum Anglicis nocuit, plures eorum interimendo, arma, equos, et tentoria primogeniti regis et principis Walie ac aliorum dominorum hostiliter auferendo, et eadem pro usu ad montana sua et tutamina de Snowdon secum transferendo.

Monasterium de Stratfleyr stabulum equorum.

f. 172.

Hiis diebus, australis Wallia, et presertim tota Landavensis diocesis, ab omnimoda invasionis sive defensionis molestia satis stetit pacifica.

Inter trucidatos per Anglicorum ingressum predictum, Ll. ap Greffit Vaȝan, de Cayo in comitatu de Cardikan, vir multum nobilis et dapsilis, sexdecem dolia vini in familia sua omni anno expendens, quia dicto Oeno confavens, in festo Sancti Dionysii, apud Lanamthryvry, in presencia regis et de ejus mandato, cum filio suo primogenito, trahitur, suspenditur, decollatur, et quatripartitur.

Ll. ap. Gr. Vaȝan.

Rex in Wallia.

Hoc tempore, circa festum Sancti Michaelis, quarterium frumenti a nobili ad duo nobilia, et in quibusdam partibus Anglie ad tria, ad annonam subito mutatur cariorem.

Ubique in Walia, per muros et fossata renovantur tutamina.

Moritur nobilis dominus, dominus Johannes Charleton, dominus Poysie, apud castrum suum de Pola, in festo Sancti Luce; cui dominus Edwardus, frater suus, juvenis elegantissimus, de Usk et de Kaerlyon, in jure dotalicio uxoris sue, comitisse Marchie, tunc dominus, jure successit hereditario.

Mors domini Poysye.

Dominus Thomas, regis secundogenitus, in Hiberniam, ad Hibernicorum domandam rebellionem, cum magno transiit exercitu. Sic eciam et comes Rutlondie, ad resistendum Gallicorum invasionibus, transiit in Vasconiam. A.D. 1401.

Scoti, cum Anglicis pacem aut treugam tractare detestantes, diffidenciam et guerram Anglicis decreverant in festo Sancti Martini fore inducendas.

Plebei de Cardikan, ad vite perdonacionem recepti, Oeno dimisso, licet cum magna miseria, redierunt ad propria, lingua Walicana uti permissi, licet ejus destruccio per Anglos decreta fuisset, omnipotente Deo, rege regum, infallibili omnium judice, hujusmodi decretum ad gravatorum appellacionem et querelam misericorditer revocante. Decretum destruccionis lingue Wallice.

In crastino Omnium Sanctorum, Oenus, volens obsidionem ponere circa Caernarvon, in multitudine glomerosa[1] vixillum suum album cum dracone aureo ibidem displicuit; tamen per intraneos aggressus, trecentis[2] de suis interemptis, in fugam pulsus est.

Isto tempore, pro maritagio filiarum suarum, dominus rex totum regnum colectavit. A.D. 1402.

Domini de Percy, pater et filius, Scotorum rebellionem strenue domarunt, ipsos in magno numero interimendo et captivando.

Oenus cum suis dominium de Rethyn in North-Wallia et ejus pagum, penultimo die Januarii, ferro et flamma crudeliter infestavit, predas patrie, et presertim pecudum, ad montana de Snowdon secum deferendo; tamen dominiis comitis Marchie de Dynby et aliis multum parcebat, duos comitatus scilicit de Kaernarven et Murionnit sibi inclinatos, quoad jurisdiccionem et guerram, ad votum habendo.

Quidam miles, vocatus Davit ap Jevan Goz, de comitatu de Cardigan, qui per viginti annos continue cum rege Cypry et aliis Cristianis Sarazenos debellaverat, per regem Francie ad regem Scocie pro Oeno directus, per nautas Anglie tentus, carceribus Turris Londoniensis mancipatur.

[1] glomerosum. MS. [2] trecentum. MS.

A.D. 1401. Nuncii Oeni cum literis infrascripti tenoris, regi Scocie et dominis Hibernie directis, in Hibernia capti decapitantur:

Litere ad regem Scocie. "Treshaut et trespuisant et tresredoute seigneur et cosin, je me recomande a vostre treshautisme roial mageste si humblement come suy dygne en toutz maneres des honors et reverencez. Et, tresredoute seigneur et tressovereygn cosin, pleser seyt a vous et a vostre dit treshautisme mageste dasavoyr que Brutus, vostre tresnoble auncestre et le meyn, estoyt le primer roy corone qui primerment enhabita deinz cest realme dengleterre, qui jadis fuist nomme Brataygne graunt. Le quel Brutus engendera troi fitz, cest assavoir, Albanactus Locrius, et Loctrinus et Kamber. De quel dit Albanactus vous estez descenduz par droit lyne. De quel dit Kamber les issuez ount reygnes roialment, tanque a Kadualadir, qui estoit le darrein roy coronne de ma dit nacioun, dount je, vostre simple cosin, suy descenduz par droit lyne. Apres que decesse mes auncestres et tout ma dit nacion avons este et ore sumes en oppression et bondage desouz mes et vostres morteles enimys Sacsouns, come vous, tresredoute seigneur et tres-

f. 172 b. sovereygn cosin, ent avez bone conisance. Des quex oppressions et bondages le prophecie dit que je serray delivere par eid et socour de vostre dit roial mageste. Mais, tresredoute seigneur et sovereigne cosin, je me grauntement complaigne a vostres ditz roall mageste et tressovereigne cosinage, que moi defaut graundment genz dez armez; pur quoy, tresredoute seigneur et tressovereygne cosin, je vous supplie humblement en mez genoils engenuler, si pleiser soit a dit vostre roial mageste, de moy maunder certeyn nombre de gentz darmez de moy eidir et resistre, en laide de Dieux, mes et vostres ennmys susditz; eiant consideracion, tresredoute seigneur et tressovereigne cosin, a le eschatisme de meschyf et meschifs que je et mes ditz auncestres de Gales susditz avons suffres et meyntes autres passez par mez et vostres mortuels enimys susditz. Entendant, tresredoute seigneur et tressovereigne cosin, que ensi soit que je serray

jour de ma vie oblige de fayr service et plesance a vostre dit roial mageste et amender a vous. Et pour ceo que je ne puis vous envoir touz mez bussoignes en escript, vous envoir lez portours de cestez de toutz mez bussoygnes pleinement enformez, as quex vous pleaise doner foy et credens de ceo quils vous durront par bouche. De par moy. Tresredoute seigneur et tressovereygn cosin, le trespuisant Seigneur vous [garde]." A.D. 1401.

"Salutem et amoris plenitudinem, domine reverendissime et consanguinee confidentissime. Sciatis quod maxima dissencio, sive guerra, orta est inter nos et nostros vestrosque mortales inimicos, Saxones. Quam guerram viriliter sustentamus hucusque, fere per duos annos elapsos, ac eciam de cetero intendimus et speramus sustentare et ad bonum et effectualem finem perducere, mediantibus gracia Dei, Salvatoris nostri, vestrisque auxilio atque favore. Sed, quia vulgariter dicitur per propheciam quod, antequam nos altiorem manum in hac parte haberemus, quod vos [et] vestri carissimi consanguinei in Hibernea ad hoc manus porrigetis adjutrices; quocirca, reverende domine et consanguinee confidentissime, vos corditer et affectuose requirimus quatinus, de equestribus et peditibus vestris armatis, ad succurrendum nobis et nacioni nostre, a diu per inimicos nostros ac vestros predictos oppressis, necnon ad resistendum voluntati fraudabili et deceptabili eorundem inimicorum nostrorum, talem numerum qualem commode et honeste poteritis, salvo in omnibus vestro honorabili statu, nobis, tam cito quam bene videbitis expedire, necessitatem nostram considerando, transmittatis. Istud amore nostro, et sicut in vobis maxime confidamus, licet incogniti vestre reverende persone fuerimus, facere non tardatis, intelligentes, domine et consanguinee reverendissime, quod quamdiu nos valebimus istam guerram fortiter sustentare in partibus nostris, quod vobis satis constat sine dubio quod vos et omnes alii magnates de partibus vestris Hibernie pacem desiderabilem et tranquilitatem placabilem medio Litere ad dominos Hibernie.

A.D. 1401. tempore impetrabitis. Et quia, domine consanguinee, latores presencium vos[1] plenius viva[2] voce informabunt, eis[3], si placet, credenciam adhibeatis in omnibus que vobis ex parte nostra[4] dicent, et, qua volueritis, domine et consanguinee reverende, que per nos vestrum humilem consanguineum fieri poterunt, vos mandetis cum fiducia. Domine et consanguinee reverende, vestram reverenciam et dominacionem in prosperis Altissimus conservet longevam. Scriptum apud Northwalliam, penultimo die Novembris."

A.D. 1402. Jam, Deus, qui me studium Oxonie et ipsius doctoratus regimen trienale, et demum in curia Cantuariensi septenale advocacionis officium, tam honorem quam utilitatem, ex tue infinitate gracie concessisti perficere, ac in aliis meis agendis quibuscumque a juventute mea me adjuvisti, usque ad senectam et senium, me ne derilinquas; et fac mecum signum in bonum, ut videant qui me aderunt et confundantur, "quoniam tu, Domine, adjuvisti me et consolatus es me"[5]. Meumque jam, Deo disponente, directum Romam aggressum, cum ibidem progressu necnon ad partes votivas regressu, sive advocatorum sive auditorum numero aggregandum, ad tui nominis honorem et laudem, et mei utriusque hominis sospitatem, et cum honore triplici temporalibusque auxiliis, da misericorditer consolari.

Quid mora? xj. kalendas Marcii, anno Domini m^{mo}cccc^{mo}j., presencium compilator, ut, Deo disponente, proposuit, Londoniis apud Byllyngesgate navem ingressus, prospero flante vento et mari sulcato, in Brabancia terra satis votiva, apud Berwk-super-sabulum, suos gressus versus Romam dirigendo, infra diem naturalem terre applicuit. Et extunc per Dyst, Mestryk, Aquas Grani, Coloniam, Bunnam, Confluenciam, Wormeciam, Spiram, Argentinam, Brisacam, Basiliam, Luceriem et ejus mirabilem lacum, Bernam, montem Godardi et ejus cacuminis hermitogium, in caruca per bovem tractus,

f. 173. nivis frigoribus quasi peremptus, oculis velatis, ne loci

[1] qui vos. MS. [2] una. MS.
[3] qui. MS. [4] vestra. MS. [5] Ps. lxxxv. 17.

discrimina conspiceret, ad Belsonam in Lumbardia Palmarum devenit vigilia. Et inde, per Cumam, Mediolanum, Plesanciam, Burgum Sancti Dionisii, Carenciam, Pontemtremulum, Petrum Sanctam, Pisas, Senas, et Viterbium, Bolonie, Florencie et Perisii, propter frementes ducis Mediolani, de quo infra, guerras ac obsidiones et earum discrimina, declinando vias, in omni notabili hospicio, ad sui suorumque et presertim equorum refocillacionem, per duos dies repausando, nonis Aprilis, Dei favore arcuumque terrore, Romam per omnia devenit salvus. Ac, infra quindenam extunc, per dominum Balthasarum, tituli sancti Eustacii diaconum cardinalem, postea papam Joannem xxiij., domino Bonifacio pape nono cum sui commendacione presentatus, et per eum honorifice ad pedis et manus et faucis oscula receptus, et demum pro rigore sciencie sue examinis cardinali Bononiensi, postea pape Innocentio septimo, per eum commissus et approbatus, infra quindenam in pape capellanum, palaciique apostolici auditorem, urbisque et orbis judicem, cum hujusmodi prerogative insigniis, capa scilicet, rochetto et capello, per ipsum papam insignitus, ipsius et rote consiliis exstitit sublimatus. Cui et papa infra octo dies extunc triginta magnas causas commisit ad sui audienciam delatas, ipsius industria terminandas. A.D. 1402.

In dicto transitu, primo apud Coloniam et continue usque ad Pisas predictas, tam de nocte quam eciam de die, solem precedentem cometam terribilem, solis scilicet cleri et lune scilicet milicie mundi terrorem, ipsius ducis cito post defuncti mortis prefiguracionem, conspexi. Cujus arma terribilia, quia serpentem blavium hominem rubium et nudum in campo albo devorantem, eciam in aere sepius fuerant tunc visa. Stella.

Dux Baverie in imperatorem eligitur et Ytaliam, Romam pro coronacione anelans, ingreditur. Sed apud Padwam per dictum ducem repulsam passus, frustrato negocio, ad partes rediit confusus. A.D. 1401–2.

Dux iste, subjugata per eum Bononia, mundi delicia et A.D. 1402.

A.D. 1402. Ytalie gloria, et ante cujus conspectum quasi siluit terra[1], qui et magnum fluvium Powe per medium montium et multa miliaria abducens, ad modum Ciri magni a Babilone Efraten evertentis, Padwamque lucratus, subita peste ad magnum peregrinorum dolorem succubuit, quia, in virga ferrea terras suas regendo, tutum viantibus prestabat transitum per easdem, et certe credebatur quod, si per annum diucius vixisset, quod Almanie et Ytalie in solidum imperasset. In cujuslibet Europe principum familiis, pro novis sibi explanandis, suis magnis expensis, eciam ipsos principes magnis muneribus sibi alliciendo, votivos exploratores habuit. Sed ecce! juxta illud vulgare: "In male quesitis vix gaudebit tercius," ejus avunculus, archiepiscopus Mediolanensis, vir magnanimus et imperii vicarius, in imperatoris castris suos nepotes, dominum Galias, istius ducis patrem, et dominum Bornabo, ipsius patruum, capitaneos, mortis sue tempore, dimittendo, eis elacionem et mutuam infestacionem imperii jura subtrahendo, in persona istius tercii dedit male quesita eradicari.

Mors ducis Mediolani.

Mediolanensi duce predicto defuncto, Bavarie dux, in imperatorem electus, ad papam pro confirmacione solempnes transmisit nuncios; quam obtinuit, ut infra.

Bononia, Perisium, et alie ecclesie terre duci defuncto commendate rebellant; sed dicti cardinalis Sancti Eustacii ad subjeccionem reducuntur industria.

Per totam Lumbardiam et Tuscaniam pacis et concordie dissolvuntur federa; et, Gwelforum et Gyblynorum parcialitate, ferro et flamma vibrantur disturbia.

Undecimo kalendas Januarii, indulgenciarum, unionum, excepcionum, pluralitatum, et aliorum curiam defamancium, me presente, revocantur, ymmo verius renovantur, excessus; quia heu! revocatorum novum forum reconciliacionum invaluit. In vim dicte unionis revocacionum, presencium compilatori archidiaconatum Bogomham cum eclesiis de

[1] 1 Mac. j. 3.

Knle, Tysbury, et Deverell in Anglia, sed, guerra Wallie hoc impediente, archidiaconatus Landavensem et de Kermerdyn, cum ecclesia de Landevaelauc cum prebenda de Lanbistre, papa sibi contulit in Wallia. A.D. 1402.

Anno Domini m^mo^cccc^mo^ij^o^, Ladislaus, rex Neapolis, regnum Ungarie jure hereditario pro se petens, manu id intravit forti, sed, sola Sclavonia subjugata, per Sysmundum, Anne regine Anglie fratrem, regno incumbentem, postea imperatorem, viriliter repulsus, in Italiam cum rubore est reversus. A.D. 1403.

O Deus!, quam dolenter jam ecclesia duobus, et imperium tribus, presidentibus mutuis se infestant et devastant cladibus. Et presertim Grecorum, ex genere Constantini magni, Brutonum regis, et Sancte Elene filii radicatum, imperium, per ipsum a Romanis in Grecos et demum a Grecis per Sthephanum papam in Germanos translatum, Turcis et Tartaris noscitur desolatum.

In festo Sancti Albani, juxta Knyghton in Wallia, inter Anglicos sub domino Edmundo Mortemere et Wallicos sub Oueno Glyndour quam gravi innito conflictu, et miseranda cede ad octo milia inde contingente, dicto O. cessit victoria. Et heu me! dictus dominus meus Edmundus, cujus me pater et dominus de Usk ad scholas exhibuit, belli fortuna abducitur captivus. Qui eciam per emulos in Anglia omnibus bonis privatus ac redimi impeditus, captivitatis dolores micius[1] ut evaderet, dicti Oweni filiam, de qua filium nomine Leonellum et tres filias, licet jam cum matre extra unam filiam mortuos, procreaverat, ad magnum populi rumorem noscitur duxisse uxorem. Ac demum in castro de Hardeleghe per exercitum Anglie obsessus[2], de [quo] adhuc mira canuntur in festo, dies suos quam dolorosos finivit. A.D. 1402. f. 173 b.

Isto anno eciam dominus Grey de Ruthyn, ad duorum milium de suis necem per eundem Owenum captus, manci-

[1] miscius. MS. [2] obcesso. MS.

A.D. 1402. patur et carceribus. Sed sexdecim milium librarum auri redempcione ab eisdem liberatus exstitit.

De tanto infortunio Anglico dominio per dictum Owenum causato mea, dum cogito, viscera contremiscunt. Nam totam Walliam cum ejus marchia, triginta milium de cavernis exeuncium consorcio stipatus, omnia parcium castra, inter que de Usk, Carlyon, et Nuportus, subvertit, ac opida succendit. Quid mora? Velut alter Assur, furoris Dei virga, inauditam tyrannidem ferro et flamma miserime vibravit.

Ista Rome per auditum habui; in qua tunc omnia sub foro venalium procedebant negocia, adeo quod non secundum merita, sed ad majora precia conferebantur beneficia. Unde quisque pecuniosus et inanis glorie cupidus ad sui promocionis effectum pecunias suas in mercatorum habuerat banco. Quare, sicut veteris testamenti venalitate sacerdocium corrumpente tria cessarunt miracula, ignis scilicet sacerdocii inextinguibilis, et odor interfeccionis non gravabilis, ac fumus inpressibilis, timeo quod in novo testamento et ita continget. Et ad hoc, ut mihi videtur, indies ad januas ecclesie pulsat.

Hoc anno, rex, cum centum milibus et ultra in tres partes divisis, Walliam militariter contra Owenum invadit. Sed, ipso cum suis miseris in cavernis et nemoribus delitentibus, rex, devastata patria, et cum infinita animalium preda, gloriose rediit ad propria.

Dominus de Fyz Walter, dum Rome erat meis adquiescens consiliis, sed in hoc inconsulto, volens a Roma per mare Neapolym transire, a Saracenis capitur et Thony, principalis barbarorum civitatis, advehitur carceribus; sed, per mercatores de Janua redemptus, ad Angliam propter ejus disturbia redire differens, moritur Veneciis.

A.D. 1403. Pro dicta confirmacione imperatoris istud proponitur thema: "Pater, clarifica[1] filium tuum"[2]. Et per papam respondetur ad modum collacionis in utroque: "Manus

[1] carifica. MS. [2] Joh. xvij. 1.

mea auxiliabitur ei"[1]. Et ecce confirmacionis bulla: "Bonifacius, episcopus, servus servorum Dei, carissimo filio nostro, Roberto, Bavarie duci, in regem Romanorum electo, salutem et apostolicam benediccionem. Pater immense majestatis altissimus[2] clementi providencia cuncta disponens, terrarum orbem disposuit sub distinccione regnorum, illaque consulte dirigi voluit et salubri regimine gubernari, ne humane creature status[3], que sui creatoris ymaginem et similitudinem representat, tempestuose fluctuacionis mundi confunderetur turbine, vel ejus quietis dulcedine impediretur, quinymo ut omnes sub juris et honestatis regula limitati[4] vita pacifica viverent, et ab offensione alterutrorum abstinerent, ac naturali affectu Factorem summum cognoscerent, cognitum colerent et suo reverendo imperio subjacerent. Demum Pater ipse, ex alto prospiciens populum, quem creaverat, dampnacionis sentenciam incurrisse, regem pacificum, unigenitum filium suum, Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum, misericorditer in mundum pro ipsius redempcione populi destinavit. Qui, carne nostre mortalitatis indutus, populum eundem ab eterne cruciatu mortis eripuit et suo sanguine precioso redemit. Nos igitur, in hac terrestri patria gerentes, licet immeriti, vices ejus, vigilias more pastoris tam corporales quam mentales erigimus[5], visuri quid gregi commisso expediat et quid operis inpendi debeat, ut, Illius suffulti presidio, cujus sunt terre cardines[6], cui cogitaciones hominum preparantur[7], quique actus mortalium superat, partes officii salubriter exponamus ad ea que fidelibus necessario expedire viderimus. Sane dudum felicis recordacionis Urbanus papa sextus, immedia-

A.D. 1403. Bulla confirmacionis imperatoris.

[1] Ps. lxxxviij. 22.

[2] altissime. MS. This bull is published in Raynaldus, *Annales Ecclesiastici*, ed. Mansi, 1752, tom. viij. 94, where, however, it differs considerably from the text above.

[3] statum. MS. [4] limitata. MS.

[5] erigentes. MS. The passage in Raynaldus is: "Levamus vigilis more pastoris tam corporeos quam mentales oculos in circuitu," *etc.*

[6] 1 Reg. ij. 8. [7] 1 Reg. ij. 3.

A.D. 1403. tus predecessor noster, provida meditacione considerans mundum positum peccatis exigentibus in maligno, et quod, disponente Domino, cui obediunt universa, Romana mater ecclesia super reges et regna, tanquam mater omnium et magistra, suppremum obtinet principatum, ut per ejus ministerium regatur salubriter catholice fidei firmamentum, per diversos nuncios atque literas repetitis vicibus paternis affectibus excitavit karissimum in Christo filium nostrum Wynceslaum, tunc Romanorum et Boemii regem, ut pro defensione militantis ecclesie ac honore et statu sacri im-
f. 174. perii, prout ejus exigebat officium, ad suscipiendum imperiale diadema ad partes accederet Ytalie. Et videns eum ad hoc nimia tepere desidia, imperii electores, tamquam imperii membra precipua, sepe eum monendo interdum literis nonnunquam nunciis, instantissime requisivit ut prefatum Wynceslaum ad descendendum, premissorum causa, in Ytaliam oportunis modis atque remediis hortarentur, et instanciis ac monicionibus debitis propulsarent. Demum autem, eodem Urbano predecessore nostro, sicut Domino placuit, ab hac luce subtracto, nos, divina clemencia ad apicem summi apostolatus assumpti, maximo anime fervore flagrantes ad obviandum scandalis que Romane ecclesie, sponse nostre, ac consequenter imperio, cernebamus jugiter exoriri, tam per nuncios quam per literas paternis affectibus partes nostras intermisimus[1], ut prefatum Wynseslaum ad hujusmodi descensum diversis modis quos oportunos putavimus, nichil possibilitatis penitus omittendo quod expediens visum fuerit, inducere valeremus; et videntes exortaciones dicti predecessoris et nostras nichil proficere, ne quid [intentatum][2] in tam gravi causa ponderosoque negocio providencia apostolice curie amitteret, venerabilibus fratribus et dilectis filiis sacri imperii electoribus crebro nos scripsisse memoramus, ut, attentis periculis que ex tanta socordia Wynseslai prefati ecclesie et imperio ac Christiane religioni jugiter ingruebant, et signanter cum

[1] interposuimus. Raynaldus. [2] Supplied from Raynaldus.

Gallia, quam semper animadvertimus ad usurpacionem vel saltim divisionem ecclesie et imperii totis conatibus inhiare, imperialem civitatem Januensem, in ipsius Ytalie faucibus positam, occupasset, eundem W., ad veniendum in Ytaliam more dominorum predecessorum suorum, ut e manibus nostris imperiale diadema reciperet, et ad occurrendum ne predicti Gallici pedem in Ytalia radicari validarent, necnon ecclesiam et imperium juxta sui status debitum defensaret, [debitis modis et opportunis remediis et monitionibus excitarent][1]. Tandem electores ipsi, videntes moram ipsius infinita dispendia causare, et exortaciones predictas frustra fore et inanes, ad hanc rem tam sanctam et Christianitati necessariam penitus obduratas, ipsumque W. ad regimen dicti imperii esse omnino inutilem, et ne bona imperii ipsius desidia tenderent irreparabiliter in collapsum, nobis per eorum nuncium significari curarunt quod, prefati W. segnicia diligenter inspecta, ex qua mundo pullularunt[2] discrimina, ipso amoto, ad alterius eleccionem qui eis potenter occurreret procedere disposuerunt, licet ipsius W. deposicio ad nos totaliter spectare noscatur, ad ipsius W. deposicionem a prefato regno Romanorum, auctoritate nostra suffulti, concorditer processerunt, et te, karissimum filium nostrum Bavarie ducem, comitem Palatinum, Renicorumque coelectorem, in regem Romanorum et futurum imperatorem concorditer eligerunt. Tuque, super hoc digesta meditacione prehabita, ad ipsorum et aliorum instanciam, hujusmodi eleccioni consensum tuum liberum prebuisti. Postmodum vero per solempnes ambaciatores pro parte tua nobis fuit humiliter supplicatum ut hujusmodi W. deposicionem et tui eleccionem et quecumque inde secuta auctoritate apostolica approbare, et personam tuam abilem et ydoneam ad suscipiendam prefatam imperialis culminis dignitatem decernere et declarare de benignitate solita dignaremur. Nos igitur, de omnibus premissis fide plenaria nobis facta, et de persona tua quantum tua paciebatur A.D. 1403.

[1] Supplied from Raynaldus. [2] ululârunt. MS.

A.D. 1403. absencia, de tuis [1] quoque moribus et condicionibus virtuosis ac devocione quam te ergo nos et Romanam ecclesiam gerere comprobaris, et super hiis omnibus cum fratribus nostris sancte Romane ecclesie cardinalibus diligenti deliberacione prehabita, tuis supplicacionibus inclinati, de ipsorum consensu, ad laudem et gloriam Dei ac gloriam Virginis Marie et beatorum apostolorum Petri et Pauli ac honorem dicte Romane ecclesie et bonum ac proficuum sacri imperii et prosperum [2] statum mundi, discriminibus et periculis ex dicti W. negligencia verisimiliter venturis, ipsius W. deposicionem et tui eleccionem prefatam et quecunque inde secuta rata habentes et grata, te in specialem nostrum et dicte ecclesie filium suscipimus, tibi nostros graciam et favores concedentes, tuaque persona idonea computata, te pronunciamus et in regem Romanorum assumimus, te idoneum ad hoc declarantes, ac decernentes unccionem et consecracionem imperialem ac imperii diadema per manus nostras tibi fore impendenda; suplentes omnem defectum, qui circa hujusmodi eleccionem inveniri poterit quovismodo, ex certa sciencia et apostolice plenitudine potestatis. Precipientes omnibus fidelibus et vassallis imperii, cujuscumque condicionis existant, eciam si regali aut pontificali dignitate prefulgeant, ut tibi sicut regi Romanorum, in imperatorem promovendo, pareant efficaciter et intendant. Nulli ergo omnino hominum liceat, etc. Datum Rome, apud Sanctum Petrum, kalendis Octobris, pontificatus nostri anno xiiij^mo."

f. 174 b. Anno sequenti, pro Anglie, ut dicitur, corona comiti Marchie captanda, sussitata inter regem et domum de Persy, scilicet comitatus Northumbrie, quia dicto comiti affinem, hostili discordia, ad commocionem regni permaximam cum utraque parte divisi, et disposito in crastino Sancte Marie Magdalene ob hoc bello, rex, ad consilium comitis Dunbar de Scocia, eo quod ad tunc pater domini Henrici Persy et Owenus de Glyndour cum multitudine glomerata contra

[1] votivis. MS. [2] presertim. MS.

regem adventuri erant, diem statutum preveniens, contra dictum dominum Henricum et dominum Thomam Persy, comitem tunc Wygornie, dirissimum induxit bellum, et, facta ex utraque parte clade ad numerum sexdecim milium in campo vocato Berewyk cruentissima (ubi et idem rex pro ibidem cadencium animabus hospitale fundavit), per duo miliaria a Salopia, in vigilia dicte sancte, eidem regi bellum hujusmodi aggredienti cessit victoria. In quo bello dictus dominus Henricus, milicie Christiane flos et gloria, cum dicto patruo suo dolenter occubuit. Unde et illa prophecia exstitit impleta, quod "bestia abjecta duo lune cornua sibi auferet." Ceciderunt eciam duo nobiles milites in armatura regis, ac si alter rex insigniti, qui causa salvacionis regis in ultima belli acie positi exstiterant. Unde et comes de Duclas de Scosia, in campo cum dicto domino Henrico et ejus captivus existens, cum regi Henrico victoriam acclamari audivisset, mirando dixit: "Nonne duos reges Henricos (scilicet dictos milites innuendo) manibus meis interfeci? In mala hora nostra adhuc tertium victorem patimur superstitem."

A.D. 1403.

Mors Persy.

Plene circuitus indulgencie, aliarum ecclesiarum visitando labores diffusos alleviando, in septem consistunt ecclesiis, scilicet Sanctorum Johannis Latronensis, Marie Majoris, Crucis in Jerusalem, Petri, Pauli, Laurencii extra muros, Fabiani [et] Sebastiani. Item, cum diffusum fuerit visitare omnia loca indulgencie in ecclesia Sancti Petri, citra circuitum septem sufficit altaria visitare, scilicet, Sancti Petri majus, in quo et requiescit, prout et Sanctus Paulus ita in ecclesie sue majori altari, eorum licet capita apud dictum Sanctum Johannem Latronensem auro existant ornata; item, Sancte Crucis, Veronice, Sancti Gregorii, Fabiani et Sebastiani, Leonis pape, et Sancti Andree.

Circuitus.

Item, in urbe quatuor existunt patriarchales ecclesie, scilicet, Sancti Johannis Latronensis, que est mater urbis et orbis, in qua et est sedes papalis et per quam papa vocatur Pontifex Romanus, olim Constantini magni palacium,

Patriarchales.

A.D. 1403. Sancto Silvestro per eum ad hoc donatum, sed per Neronem tamen prius constructum; secunda, Sancte Marie Majoris; tercia et quarta, Sanctorum Petri et Pauli; in quibus omnes cardinales tanquam canonici intitulantur, et in quarum altaribus majoribus nemo celebrat nisi papa solus, licet in urbe multe sunt alie ecclesie, prout hoc versu continetur :—

"Sunt Rome mille sexcente quinque capelle."

A quodam coauditore meo in Rota, Neapoli oriundo, habui quod hiis diebus quedam navis ejusdem civitatis a Saracenis capta erat, in qua una nobilis domina existens, pocius eligens mori quam per ipsos violari, se subito misit in mare et ita submersa est.

Post dictam cedem inter regem et dictum dominum Henricum Persy contingentem, Owenus cum homunculis cavernas et nemora [relinquens], quasi oportunitatem captans, in multitudine glomerata usque ad Sabrinum mare totam circuit Walliam, et quosque sibi resistentes, aut ultra idem mare ubi per pagenses tanquam Wallici expoliati erant, aut ferro et flamma, eciam ecclesiis non parcendo, unde et ad ruinam finaliter devenit, ad sui dedicionem subegit. Et cum maxima preda ad suas aquilonares Wallie partes, unde panditur omne malum Wallie, cum interna adulteriorum suorum publicorum maledicione, pro suo tutamine, et ad montes rediit Snowdonie.

Homines Bristollie cum armata classe sub capitaneis, Jacobo Clyfford et Willelmo Rye, armigeris, Glanmorgancie partes, ecclesiam Landavensem spoliando, invadunt; sed, per miraculum sancti Theliai a pagensibus divicti, cum eorum ruina non modica confuse sunt repulsi.

A.D. 1402. Suspensio fratrum. Prior de Launde et dominus Rogerus Claryndone, miles fraterque regis Ricardi spurius, ac undecim de ordine fratrum minorum, in theologia doctores, quia dicto Oweno confederati, per proprios socios regi detecti, apud Tybornam Londoniis post tractum crudeliter furcis sunt suspensi; multique domini et domine, eciam comitisse, eadem causa carceribus sunt mancipate.

Rex ducis Brytanie relictam regisque Navarie sororem, per eam relevari sperans, duxit in uxorem. Sed statim, spe frustrata, Britones nupcias detestantes una cum Gallicis, comite marescallo Aquitanie et domino de Hugvyle Normannie eorum ducibus, in magno exercitu in succursum et expedicionem Oweni intrarunt Walliam, et totam marchiam ferro et flamma devastando nocumenta non modica intulerunt Anglicis. A.D. 1403. Invasio Brutonum.

Rex duas filias suas, unam regi Dacie et alteram [filio] ducis Bavarie tunc imperatoris electi, de [quo] supra, cum non modica regni collectacione contulit in uxores. A.D. 1402, 1406. Maritacio filiarum.

Domus de Persy, modicum ante predictum ejus infortunium, apud Hyllyndone Hylle in marchia Scocie, in uno conflictu multa milia Scotorum trucidavit, necnon multos nobiles, de quibus et Duclas, de quo supra, captivos fortuna belli sui advexit carceres. Ex qua, ut creditur, victoria dicta domus in nimia superbia elata, juxta illud vulgare: "Ante ruinam cor hominis exaltatur"[1], collabitur in occasum. Et nemirum, quia lignum non sarra cedit nec securis secat, sed manus hominis. Ita manus Dei sola victoriam tribuit. A.D. 1402. f. 175.

Hiis diebus, ecclesiam Herfordensem vacantem pro presencium compilatore papa disposuit, sed Anglicorum sibi resistencium invidia suisque literis una cum intoxicacione ipsum regi, unde eciam magnis infortuniis[2] iiij. annis in terra et in mari velut exul cruciatus exstitit, depravancium, non promocionem sed depressionem ac ultimatam paupertatem omnibus beneficiis et bonis, inter extraneos cum Joseph linguam quam non noverat audiendo, licet pro consilio auro remuneratus, reportavit privatus. A.D. 1404.

In Anglia interim parliamenta celebrantur multa, in quibus et contra provisiones apostolicas strictiora sunt statuta, et plus solito clerus et populus graviori taxantur collecta. Et nemirum, quia ita gravantur et guerra contra Franciam, Scociam, Hiberniam, Walliam, et Flandriam se

[1] "Ante ruinam exaltatur spiritus."—Prov. xvj. 18.

[2] Magnus infortunius. MS.

A.D. 1404. defensando, ac sexaginta milibus auri libris a Wallia eis solvi consuetis guerra causante destituti.

Owenus apud Machenllith et montani, sua eciam miseria[1], cum duellorum et aliarum regaliarum usurpacione, licet ad sui confusionem, celebrat ymmo symulat seu confyngit parliamenta.

Comes Northumbrie, pater predicti domini H[enrici] incliti, ad instanciam et rogatum tocius parliamenti, licet ad cassum, in brevi reconsiliatus exstitit domino regi. In quo parliamento quidam vernaculus, Serlo cognominatus, propter mortem ducis Gloucestrie, de quo supra, trahitur, suspenditur, evisceratur, decapitatur, et quatripartitur.

Presencium compilator, propter emulorum suorum detractaciones, suis scriptis regi literas, licet et in cassum, eidem regi transtulit directas, et per episcopum Sarisburiensem sibi presentatas: "Humillima ac devotissima recommendacione premissis, cum jugibus oracionibus ad Deum pro salute regie majestatis. Excellentissime et clementissime principum, quod, cum aliis, obtenta per me licencia a celsitudine regia ut curiam Romanam visitarem, sicuti postea visitaveram, placuit sancto in Christo patri ac domino nostro Bonifacio, divina providencia pape moderno, me, licet ad hoc indignum, ipsius sacri palacii dominorum auditorum aggregare collegio. Ego vero in Eo confisus, qui aspera in plana convertere ac mentem aridam fonte sue gracie solus potest irrigare, quod insufficienciam meam sue benignitatis rore fecundet, sperans, hujusmodi gratuitum munus, ad laudem Dei, et ut culmini regio suisque devotis per hoc utilius obsequi possem, acceptando, illud exerceo, et aliquamdiu, si expensarum morandi fortuna arrideat, prout melius scivero, divina gracia inspirante, exercere propono, offerens me corde et animo regiis beneplacitis et mandatis, quibus juxta parvitatis mee modulum servire jugiter sum paratus; supplicans quam humiliter et devote majestati regie, sub cujus umbra vivo et volito, cum nichil aliud mihi

Litera regia.

[1] misera. MS.

adeo sit acceptum sicuti incolumis status, felix processus, A.D. 1404.
et insignis triumphus ejusdem, quatinus, cum regie pietatis benigna memoria qualiter de absencia alias ejusdem invidie jaculis causata, teste domino meo, fratre vestro, condolui, cui tunc vestri prosperum, ut accidit, predixi regressum, de quo quam felici eciam gavisus, prout spero vestram regiam non latere bonitatem, ad quod particeps mea servicia, licet imbesillia, usque ad apicem majestatis regie condignissime adeptam, propriis expensis fidelissime adhibui, meeque tantillitatis etatem jam provectam uberius promovendam, caritatis intuitu, eadem majestas dignetur habere recommissam. Hanc mei humilis et fidelis sui oratoris ac servuli bone voluntatis oblacionem innatis sibi clemencia et mansuetudine placite accipiat, meis detractoribus sue pietatis aures nullatenus inclinatura, sed me cum rebus et amicis meis sub alis et protectione celsi brachii sui benignius dignetur confovere; cui contra hostes votive triumphare, hic quoque feliciter et diu regnare, et postea ad regna pertransire celestia concedat Ille per quem omnes reges et principes dominantur. Scriptum Rome, regni vestri anno quinto, mensis Septembris die duodecimo."

In festo sancti Michaelis, Francie, Castelle, Arragonie regum aliorumque Av[in]ionensis presidentis principum obedienciariorum ex parte, ad Bonefacium papam, eis publicam audienciam prestantem, solempnis pro unione ecclesie venit ambassiata. Quem archiepiscopus sancti Poncii de Francia affatur in hec verba, ipsum nullatenus papam approbando: "Metuendissime domine, si non proprie aliorum saltim animabus compaciamini, dominus meus ad omnem unionis viam eciam usque ad mortem inclinari se offert paratum." Unde et dominus Bonefacius ita prorupit: "Dominus tuus est falsus, sismaticus, et ipsemet antichristus." "Salva reverencia, pater, non ita. Dominus meus est sanctus, justus, verus, catholicus, et in vera sancti Petri cathedra residens"; et ultra cum impetu idem archiepiscopus hec protulit verba: "et non est symoniacus." Unde Bone-

A.D. 1404. facius, illis verbis adeo attonitus, in cameram rediens infra biduum post vita eradicatur humana. De quo, eadem nocte, duas visiones habui. Prima erat, quod beatum Petrum, pontificalibus solempniter insignitum, ultra sui portam sedere, et alium figuratum tristem et squalidum papam a sinistris sedentem in terram proicere conspexi. Secunda apparuit mihi una vulpes, canibus insecuta et
f. 175 b. in aqua ramum salicis superexcrescentis in ore pro sui sustentacione tenens, usque ad nares absconsa, et iterum a canibus ibidem explorata timore quod aquam dimisit et in foveam pro ultimato refugio intrans de cetero disparuit. Unde intellexi quod vulpes, licet semper rapax, macra tamen continue remanet; sic et ipse symonia plenus nunquam tamen usque ad sepulturam satiatus.

Item, unus Teutonicus ostendit mihi quandam literam per unum sanctum virum a partibus directam, qua et ipse asseruit se Sanctum Michaelem vidisse eundem Bonefacium violenta alapa ad terram projesisse; et ita in die suo, etc., ut supra.

Per mortem domini pape finitur salvus ambassiatorum conductus. Unde per capitaneum castri Sancti Angeli in eo detruduntur captivi.

Pro eleccione novi pontificis Romani cardinales intrant conclave, regis Neapolitani suorumque sex mille militum custodie commendatum.

Insurgunt Romani pestiferi in duas partes Guelforum et Gybilynorum, et per tres septimanas cladibus et spoliis et homicidiis se mutuo infestantes et pro pape in parte eorum singulari creacione instantes, ad palacium tamen Saneti Petri et conclave propter dictam custodiam accedere non valentes. Unde eorum parcialitas unum extra utriusque gremium, Innocencium scilicet septimum, in Solmona oriundum, in papam eligi causavit. Cujus eleccione publicata, Romani ipsius hospicium invadunt et, more eorum rapaci, ymmo verius corruptela mordaci, ipsum spoliant, nichil penitus quantum fenestrarum barras in eo relinquentes.

Conclave est locus continuus, nullo intermedio separatus,

pro eleccione futuri pape cardinalibus deputatus; et debet esse undique conclusus et muratus, ita quod, preter unum parvum ingressus hostiolum, et post hujusmodi ingressum omnino claudendus, remanebit fortiter munitus. In quo et una parva fenestra pro victualibus, propriis expensis cardinalium, eis attribuendis, et ad aperiendi et claudendi oportunitatem erit aptata. Et habent singuli parvas pro dormiendi et reficiendi necessitate tabulatas camerulas; loca tantum tria communia, scilicet privetam, capellam, et eleccionis tractande locum solum habituri; post primos tres dies, dum in eo fuerint, unum solum carnium vel pissium ferculum in die, et, post quinque extunc dies, solum panem et vinum, usque ad concordiam accepturi. A.D. 1404.

O Deus!, Cesaris, et Augusti, Salamonis, et Alexandri, Assueri, Darii, et Constantini magni, quo pertransivit gloria; sed quo transibit et ista? Futuro eventui sit committenda!

"Sedetur hic in trono et osculantur pedes.
Regis et Cesaris non curantur edes.
Christus dedit veniam, nulla data mammona.
Hic non intrat aliquis, nisi facta annona."

Christus fuit humilis et ejus vicarius piscator quam mitis. Sed hic me Plato quiescere jubet, etc.

Promocionem hujusmodi domini mei Innocencii ita previdi, quod a sacristia Sancti Petri ad ejus altare, rubiis de serico auri textis papalibus insignitus ornamentis, missam ascendebat celebraturus.

Papa mortuus, pro obsequiis per novem dies tentis, post eleccionis publicacionem ad Sancti Petri defertur ecclesiam.

A novo papa cum Romanis feda fit concordia (quia cito post contrita) quod, retentis pape urbis dominio cum Sancti Petri burgo et Sancti Angeli castro ac sex milia florenorum censu[1] annuo, necnon senatoris, dum tamen ultra centum miliaria a Roma oriundi, prefeccione, cetera in Romanorum regimine cederent et comoda.

[1] sensu. MS.

A.D. 1404. Rex predictus, Campania et maritima ad annuum quinque annorum censum, quod postea causavit ecclesie tedium, a papa per eum captis, cum suo exercitu recessit a Roma.

In festo Sancti Martini, novus papa pro sui coronacionis solempnitate a palacio Sancti Petri ad ejus ecclesiam descendit, et ad altare Sancti Gregorii, auditoribus vestimenta sibi deferentibus, pro missa investitur. Et in capelle Sancti Gregorii ad hoc egressu capelle sue clericus unam longam cannam cum stupa in summitate gerens, qua stupa ignita per candelam, in hanc vocem clamat: "Pater sancte, sic transit gloria mundi!", ac iterato in medio ita bis alciori voce: "Pater sancte, pater sanctissime!", et tercia vice, ad ingressum altaris sancti Petri, trina ita voce: "Pater sancte, pater sancte, pater sancte!" altissima voce; et statim singulis vicibus extinguitur stupa. Prout et in coronacione imperatoris, in summitate glorie sue, cum omni genere artificii eorum ministrorum cujuscumque generis et coloris lapides per latamos sibi offerri solebant, ita ei clamando: "Excellentissime princeps, de quo genere lapidum vis tibi tumbam fieri?" Item, novus papa, finita per eum missa, altum theatrum ad hoc ordinatum ascendit et ibi per cardinalem Hostiensem, quia collegii decanum, triplici corona aurea solempniter coronatus existit. Prima designat potestatem in temporalibus; secunda, paternitatem in spiritualibus; tercia, et magnificenciam in celestibus. Et subsequenter, in eodem apparatu albo, prout et omnes prelati ita in albis, eciam ab inde ad ecclesiam Sancti Johannis Latronensis, quia propriam pape cathedralem sedem, per Romam equitant. Ad detestacionem tamen pape Agnetis, cujus ymago de petra cum filio suo prope Sanctum Clementem in via recta existit, per obliquum declinans, pro sui intronizacione, eandem ecclesiam papa, ab equo descendens, ingreditur. Ubi in porphirea cathedra, ob hoc forata ex parte [inferiori, ut probetur] per juniorem cardinalem quod habet virilia, sedet; et, cum cantu "Te laudamus," ad summum altare defertur.

Triplex pape corona.

Judei, in via eorum, legem, hoc est vetus testamentum, ei obtulerunt, ejus confirmacionem petentes; quam papa, eo quod per eam ad agnicionem Filii Dei et fidem nostram devenimus, dulce in suis recepit manibus, et ita respondit: "Lex vestra bona est; vos tamen non intelligitis eam, quia vetera transierunt, omnia nova facta sunt."[1] Sed quasi obprobriose, quia eam non intelligunt in errore indurati, ultra sinistram scapulam, non infirmando nec confirmando, ipsam retradit eisdem. A.D. 1404. Lex Judeorum.

Item, equitabant cum papa non solum ejus curiales et clerus, ymmo eciam tresdecim urbis regiones cum eorum capitaneis et vexillis precedentibus. In transitu, ad evacuandum populi pressuram, tribus vicibus jactabantur missilia in vulgus, per quorum colleccionem facilior erat transitus. f. 176. Missilia in vulgus.

Jam gaudeo in tanta solempnitate me ministrum interfuisse, prout et ita in coronacione Henrici regis Anglie quarti ac confirmacione imperii, ut supra, eciam interfui.

O Deus!, in quantum Roma est dolenda, quia olim principibus et eorum palaciis plena, jam tigurriis, furibus, lupis, et vermibus, desertisque locis, eciam per ipsosmet Romanos se mutuo confringentes quam dolenter noscitur desolata! Ab Enea post Trojanum bellum, prout et nacio mea ejus pronepote, originem, Roma, traxisti; unde et mutuo est locus dolendi. Et nemirum primitus imperium per gladium, secundo ejus sacerdocium per canteloquium rodebant mundum. Unde versus:

"Romanus rodit, quos rodere non valet odit.
Dantes exaudit, non dantibus hostia claudit."

Unde et quidam Teutonicus, coram me super uno beneficio litigans et anticipacione date facta per cameram pape venditus, ait:

"Roma dolenda, dole, quia laus perit et decus in te;
Vendere defendis nam[2] tu, tamen omnia vendis.
Sic quoque transibis, quia heu! vendendo peribis."

Vacante ecclesia Londoniensi, collegium auditorum una-

[1] 2 Cor. v. 17. [2] Nam vendere defendis. MS.

A.D. 1404. nimiter ad papam ascendit, rogando quatinus dominum Guidonem Mone, episcopum Menevensem, ad ipsam transferret, et de Menevensi ecclesia istorum compilatori provideret. Quod et sibi summe placuit, ita dicendo: "Regracior vobis permaxime quod ipsum ita recommissum habetis; et nos gaudemus de tanta oportunitate qua sibi poterimus de meliori ecclesia patrie sue providere, quia solempnis ecclesia est. Et bene ejus statum et dictum Guidonem Mone, tempore quo fuimus collector in Anglia, novimus." Sed, devulgato negocio, cum clamore valido et ore obtestantes regi[1] ac cardinalibus in Anglia beneficiatis minando quod, si hoc permitterent, indignante rege, beneficia sua perderent, jurarunt eciam quod rex eundem compilatorem ad carceres et furcas mitteret. Insuper mercatoribus, ne sibi de pecuniis providerent, et sub pena expellendi socios ab Anglia prohibuerunt. Et certe hic fuit summum negocii impedimentum, et ita frustratum.

Die Natalis Domini, misse pape et conviviis, prout et in aliis festis, cum aliis coauditoribus meis officiariisque[2] interfui. Et in prima missa, ad dextrum cornu altaris unus de auro perornatus gladius, erecto mucrone unum capellum cum duabus labellis ad modum mitre episcopalis portante, ponebatur, ad effectum quod imperatormet, si presens esset, cum illo gladio extracto evangelium: "Exiit edictum a Cesare,"[3] tanquam diaconus, quia unctus, legeret, et eundem gladium a papa pro se haberet. Sed, propter imperatoris absenciam, uno diacono cardinale evangelium legente, comiti de Malepella, quia tunc nobiliori presenti, eundem gladium contulit papa. In eadem missa, dupliciter leguntur evangelium et epistola: in Latinis per duos Latinos, et in Grecis, ad eorum approbacionem quia dicunt se expulsos ab ecclesia, et per duos Grecos.

Papa unum nobilem Romanum militem in hospitalis Sancti Johannis creavit priorem, ipsius mareschallo ipsum gladio cingente; sed papa, extracto gladio, manu solum in

[1] regio. MS. [2] mei officiisque. MS. [3] Luc. ij. 1.

fronte percussit eum, dicens: "Hunc ictum pro republica et fide Christiana sustineas." Novus miles et alios circumstantes osculatur milites, et de manu pape tunicam religionis induitur, talisque suis calcaria aurea de mandato pape per alium imponuntur militem. A.D. 1404.

Duo religiosi de Yndia nigerimi barbati papam salutant, et, in signum fidei Christiane, cruces ad eorum pectora delatas necnon eorum baptisma ad aurem dextram non flumine sed flamine ostendunt, dicentes: "A tempore quo in omnem terram apostolorum Jesu Christi sonus exivit [1], et presertim a tempore Sancti Thome, apostoli nostri, licet alii deviaverint a fide, nunquam tamen deviavimus, sed veri sumus Christiani." Et gratam audienciam habuerunt.

Hujusmodi supplicacionem presencium compilator tradidit pape: "Pater sancte, in villa seu burga de Usk, Landavensis dioceseos, est quoddam monasterium priorisse et conventus monialium honestissimum, sub professione ordinis Sancti Benedicti, ab olim competenter in possessionibus, redditibus, et aliis proventibus honeste dotatum, devotissime Deo famulancium; in quo monasterio solum virgines de nobili prosapia procreate recipi consueverunt et solent. Jam vero, propter incendia, spolia, et alios fortuitos casus ex guerris in illis partibus frementibus et alias causatos, idem monasterium ad tantam inopiam devenit, quod, nisi eidem per sanctitatem vestram de remedio cicius provideatur oportuno, eedem moniales pro victu et vestitu aut discurrendo per patrias mendicari, seu in domibus amicorum privatis morari, compellentur; ex quo verisimiliter scandala timentur provenire. Et, cum infra cepta dicti monasterii sit quedam capella in honore Sancte Radegundis virginis monialis, olim Francie regine, constructa, ad quam homines illius patrie magnam gerunt devocionem, et eam frequenter et presertim infra festa Pasche et Pentechostes visitare solent, ideo supplicat sanctitatem vestram devotus capellanus vester, sacri palacii apostolici Supplicacio. Usk.

[1] Rom. x. 18.

A.D. 1404. causarum auditor, qui de eadem villa seu burgo originem duxit, et cujus nonnulle earundem monialium existunt consanguinie, quatinus, monasterio priorisse et monialibus supradictis pro paterno compacientes affectu, omnibus Christicolis qui in secundis feriis dictorum festorum devote, tociens quociens dictam capellam visitaverint, perpetuis futuris temporibus duraturis, et ad eam manus porrexerint adjutrices, aliquam, eidem sanctitati conplacentem, indulgenciam dignemini concedere graciose, cum clausulis necessariis et oportunis, ut in forma." Et ita papa signavit: "Fiat, ut petitur," pro quinque annis et totidem quadragenis, prout in dicta capella patet.

f. 176 b. Prope jam palacium Sancti Petri hospitatus luporum et canum, de nocte sepius ad hoc surgens, condiciones inspexi. Nam, canibus pro domorum tutamine in dominorum suorum hostiis latrantibus, lupi in medio majorum minores canes secum in predam abstulerunt, et, licet sic ablati, per majores defendi sperantes, forcius inde murmurarent, de locis suis tamen, alcius ob hoc licet latrantes, nullatenus se movebant. Et sic cogitavi quod consimilis liga inter fortes patrie et exules silve in partibus dinoscitur esse.

Gens Lumbardie viperina, in Guelfos et Gibilinos divisa, in spolio et incendio mutuaque clade ac mortuorum carnes rodendo, prolesque proprias, si ex adversa parcialitate productas, ad petras elidendo, se et eorum civitates nonnullas hoc tempore exterminarunt.

Romani, circa Dominicam in Quinquagesima, cum capitibus regionum, ad agonem, tanquam fallerata fallanx, conveniunt; et juxta id beati Pauli dictum: "Omnes quidem currunt"[1], etc., pro bravio fortiter certant. Tres magnos anulos argenteos, ad unam altam cordam ligatos, ponunt, et in equis, ut lanceas in eos mittant, currunt, inde hujusmodi anulos habituri. In isto ludo urbis senator[2], duo conservatores, et septem regentes ejusdem in magno apparatu, stipiti et securi pro cediciosorum decapitacione

[1] 1 Cor. ix. 24. [2] cenator. MS.

precedentibus, intersunt. Eodem ludo taberne crapula, sed miserie epula, cum indomita luxuria, ut Belial et Belfagor filii, quam bestialiter discurrunt Romani. A.D. 1404.

Deinde in ipsa Dominica, Judeorum expensis, ad quatuor currus, octo apros vivos continentes et scarleto rubio contectos, ad summitatem montis omnis terre, ideo quia ex omni terra mundi in signum universalis dominii illuc allata compositus, octo ponuntur tauri indomiti, et, per descensum montis dissolutis curribus et bestiis liberis, omnia cedunt Romanorum in predam; et tunc quilibet ac si dissoluto impetu[1] dictas bestias invadit suo instrumento. Itaque, si quis aliquid de hujusmodi preda uxori non attulerit, quasi miser et vecors ad Sancti Panchardi festum cum ea non coibit. Et sepius in hujusmodi discursu cedes et vulnera, et presertim curtesanis, propter uxores et filias sibi exosis, inferunt.

Postea tres pannos, primum aureum pro melioribus, secundum argenteum pro secundis equis, et tercium sericum pro equabus velocius currentibus, in lancee ponuntur summitate; et, si quis hujusmodi equester prius eos tetigerit, eos pro se in bravium reportat.

Et demum a dicto bestiarum incursu, aliqui cum modicis frustis, aliqui cum intestinis et stercoribus in gladiorum mucronibus, pomparum cum vilitate transeunt ad uxores.

Papa in festo Purificacionis candelas benedicit, et, in cathedra sua sedens, non solum singulis presentibus sed eciam omnibus mundi principibus et principissis catholicis easdem distribuit, majores et minores juxta dignitatum et graduum distinctiones. Et erant de alba virginea cera. Et ita eciam in festo cinerum, in propria persona, omnibus presentibus cineres distribuit; me teste, quia dictas candelas pro rege et regina Anglie recepi et cinerum bassinam sibi tenui. Candele.

In primo adventu meo Romam, audivi de quodam propheta pseudo se Heliam esse, ac per Dominum Patrem ad Pseudo-propheta genitor anti-christi.

[1] infetu. MS.

A.D. 1404. generandum sibi Christum filium in terram missum, ac inpungisse Christum pede, dum crucem ad tormenta portaret, ac illam mulierem, que ab eo inpregnari et Christum concepisse mereretur, benedictam in eternum et ultra fore, et veram gloriam que ficte Marie attribuitur habituram, asserendo. In latebris et angulis tamen cerimonias et ritus suos faciendo, se caute occultabat. Unde et domine Romane ab eo supponende, victualium cum deliciis, quam avide ipsum visitabant. Sed finaliter, a Romanis exploratus, a latebris extrahitur, ad capitolium ducitur, et ibi, se ultra centum dominas Romanas uxores, viduas, et virgines, et ita eciam Veniciis, violasse fatendo, crematur.

Dominica in medio Quadragesime, qua cantatur: "Letare Jerusalem," ad alleviamen Quadragesime jam mediate, papa in missa unum magni precii rosarium, auro et argento mira arte compositum, ac mista murra et balsamo ad maximum suavitatis odorem per locum redolentem delinitum, manu sua gerit, ac post missam nobiliori militi misse interessenti elargitur, cum quo et ipse et amici sui in sui honorem, ipsum in manu gerendo, ipso die postea phallerati equitant.

Ambaciata Grecorum. Ex parte imperatoris Constantinapolitani, solempnes ad papam venerunt ambassiatores, injuste se imperio Romano, eis ex persona Constantini magni descendentibus debito, privatos, ac per Almanie tyrannum nequiter usurpato, allegantes, et presertim cum toto regno Neapolitano et tota Lumbardia restitui, aut aliter diem et campum utrique parti ante urbem super hujusmodi jure ad bellandum per eum assignari, petentes. Papa respondit quod, propter eorum hereses et scismata, et presertim de Spiritu Sancto, quia ipsum solum a Patre et nullatenus a Filio procedere asserentes, nec vocalem confessionem facientes, ac quia in pane fermento conficientes, eodem imperio justissime erant privati; et subridendo hoc addidit: "Sanguinis Christiani effusionem tractare non affectamus."

A quibus Grecis et habui quod Grecie proceres a dicto

Constantino ejusque tribus avunculis, Treharn, Leolyn, et Mewryc, aliisque triginta milibus Britonibus cum eo de Britania illuc advectis, omnino descenderunt; ac quod hujusmodi Britonum genus, sue nobilitatis ac dominacionis in signum, secures portant in terra, et non alii. Habui ultra quod per Tartaros et Turcos ipsorum imperium stat quasi exinanitum; et ita Britonum regnum, eorum origo, per Saxones noscitur desolatum. A.D. 1404.

In festo Palmarum, papa palmas et frondes sanctificari facit, et demum easdem palmas, prout et supra candelas, eciam distribuit, expensis Januencium omnino transmissas; sed, ipsis palmis deficientibus, olivarum saltim presentibus dantur et rami. Sed papamet duas palmas et duos dactalorum magni ponderis ramos portat plenos, ad cujus ponderis alleviamen duo sibi assistunt milites. Palme.

In cena Domini, olium et crisma papa conficit, et post missam, extra portam Sancti Petri, cum omni solempnitate theatrum ascendit ac populum[1] in misse vestimentis, auro et lapidibus preciosis refulgentibus, benedicit. Unde, prius quia visa veronica, peregrini in multitudine glomerata cordis cum leticia recedunt. Cena Domini.

Demum nominatim antipapam, cum suis cardinalibus et fautoribus, et omnes hereticos, sismaticos, piratas, et malendrinos[2], liberumque peregrinorum et victualium ad Romam accessum, ac specialiter palacii apostolici, impedientes excommunicat. Et ad hoc ipse omnesque cardinales in manibus cereos albos tenent, ac, facta excommunicacione, in vulgus jactant, cum illo fine: "Fiat! Fiat!"

Demum post prandium suorum pedes convivarum lavat, duos singulis grossos elargiendo; quos grossos ejus servitores a recipientibus et recipiunt, quia eos in humeris suis ad papam in hoc portantes.

Die Pasche officium pape ab aliorum officio modicum Pascha.

[1] Here the Additional MS. 10,104 ends. What follows is from the concluding quire in possession of the Duke of Rutland.

[2] Ital. *malandrino*.

A.D. 1404. differt, excepto quod hostie unam partem suis subdiacono et aliam diacono et eciam sibi communicandas tribuit; Sanguinemque de calice, versa ad populum facie, per longum canale aureum, armis regis Aragonie in medio ornatum, sugit et attrahit. Habent et arma ejusdem regis duas alias, propter antecessorum suorum beneficia, in curia prerogativas; quia litere graciose, sub [coloribus][1] eorumdem armorum, in filis sericis, et[2] pape canapeum, flavi et rubii colorum, noscuntur perornari. Sed post prandium, in camera cum convivis communicans, in cathedra sedet; synziberum et piper propriis manibus, in signum piperis inter Darium et Alexandrum magnos intermissi, largitur et distribuit.

Agnus Dei. Festo Pasche in Sabbato papa in albis missam celebrat, ac agnos de alba cera benedictos, prout supra candelas et palmas, et distribuit. Bassinam sepius evacuatam et tenui, et remanentes in fine pro me habui. Et de agno hujusmodi ecce versus:—

"Balsamus et munda cera cum crismatis unda
Conficiunt Agnum, quod[3] munus do tibi magnum,
Fonte velut natum, per mistica significatum.
Pregnans salvatur, partus sine vi[4] liberatur.
Fulgura de sursum depellit et omne malignum.
Portatus munde salvat a fluctibus unde.
Peccatum frangit, ut Christi sanguis, et angit[5].
Donaque[6] dat dignis, virtutes destruit[7] ignis.
Morte repentina salvat Sathaneque ruina.
Si quis honorat eum, retinebit ab hoste triumphum."[8]

[1] Some such word seems to be wanting. [2] a. MS.
[3] cur. MS. [4] ve. MS. [5] abangit. MS.
[6] donat. MS. [7] astruit. MS.

[8] The version given in *Sacrarum Cæremoniarum Libri tres* (Venice, 1582), is as follows:—

"Balsamus et munda cera cum chrismatis unda
Conficiunt Agnum, quod munus do tibi magnum,
Fonte velut natum, per mistica significatum.
Fulgura de sursum depellit [et] omne malignum.
Peccatum frangit, ut Christi sanguis, et angit.
Prægnans servatur, simul et partus liberatur.

Magister Ricardus Scrope, jam sanctus ex multitudine miraculorum approbatus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, Anglie primas et apostolice sedis legatus, una cum decentissimo et illustri juvene comite Notynghamie et mareschallo Anglie, quia, ut asserebatur, regi rebellabant, apud Eboracum decapitantur. Cives Eboracenses, femoralibus exceptis, nudi jacentes in terra, ac si alter judicii dies esset, propter eorum in hac parte favorem, a rege veniam petunt et habent. A.D. 1405. Mors archiepiscopi Eboracensis.

Septimo die Augusti, quatuordecim Romani majores, quia in consistorio papam et ejus facta deridentes, per ejus nepotem, gentis armorum capitaneum, in eorum recessu apud Sanctum Spiritum trucidantur. Unde et Romani ad tres centa milia crudeliter insurgunt, et mortem pape suorumque curtisanorum omnium ac extraneorum mortem acclamantes. Fugit subito papa cum sua armorum gente ad Viterbium. Trucidantur, incarcerantur, et spoliantur ejus remanentes. Que dies illa presencium compilatori dies erat ire, calamitatis et miserie, quia, usque ad ligulas[1] spoliatus, vix cum vita, in habitu fratrum predicatorum per octo dies latitans, vix eorum tirannidem evasit.

Romani, tubis precedentibus, clamantes papam proditorem [et] ypocritam, foris ejus arma transvertunt et ipsum transversum depingunt, diabolo sibi diadema afferente. Statim rex Neapolitanus cum suis Gibilinis et exercitu occupavit urbem. Ope et favore cujusdam Romani, tamquam pauper prout eram, quia eciam mercator cum meis pecuniis in rumore efugerat, cum nautis, velut unus eorum, per Tyberym et Hostiam ac civitatem Albanensem, ubi Brutus, nepos Enee, rex Britonum primus, natus exstiterat, ingrediens per Cornetum ad papam Viturbii, ei omnia

Dona defert dignis, virtutem destruet ignis.
Portatus munde de fluctibus eripit unde."

The verses are stated to have accompanied three *Agnus Dei*, which were sent by Urban V. to the Byzantine emperor.

[1] legulas. MS.

A.D. 1405. exponens, veni. Unde et mihi burdando dicere solebat: "Ad fratres tuos vade, habitumque tuum resume!"

A.D. 1406. Romani miseri, in festo Epiphanie, quia per dictum regem oppressi, claves urbis pape mittunt, plenum ei urbis dominium promittentes.

A.D. 1405. Intoxicacio. Compilator presencium apud Viturbium spiculo intoxicatur invidorum; unde et sepcies extasi positus extenditur pro mortuo; et, propter Romanorum spolium et mercatorum fugam, ut premittitur, amicisque propter bonorum recessum et recedentibus, aliqualiter sustentacione exstitit desolatus. Sed, ad pape mandatum, a quodam Judeo, ejus medico, Helia nomine, in grossia ejus urina intoxicacione experta, post multos labores et expensas, benedicto Deo!, sanitas recuperatur. Ac ad Rotam, juxta Dei parabolam: "Factus est Adam quasi unus ex nobis,"[1] inter coauditores restituitur.

Rome interim in palacio Sancti Petri et in cathedra pape sedit Johannes de Columpnis, fautor Gybilynorum principalis et dicti regis delegatus truculentus; pedes ad[2] oscula porrigit et alia inaudita in pape derisum facere non omittit. Unde papa magnam expedicionem contra dictum regis et Johannis tirannidem Romam mittit sub Paulo de Urcinis capitaneo. Unde, fugientibus dicti regis fautoribus, dissolvitur obsidio et quassatur invasio.

A.D. 1406. Equitacio pape. Papa versus Romam cum curia regreditur, et juxta id:

"Nam rubia capa mortem denotat tibi, papa," et

"Ut sis semper equus, albus denotat tibi equus,"

quatuor solempnes albos dextrarios, pro sella[3] sua, auro, lapidibus preciosis, et serico rubio stratos, habet. In uno sedet; tres cum tribus in eis nobilibus insedentibus et sequuntur. Canopeum de armis regis Arragonie in summitate lancee ultra ipsum defertur. Capa latissima, ymmo perlatissima, de rubio scarleto, cujus fimbrie per iiij. cursores pedestres dilatate, ita quod equus videri non poterit, et ad magnam undique obumbracionem induitur. Ad mamillas

[1] Gen. iij. 22. [2] et. MS. [3] cella. MS.

ultra stolam et rochetum subtilissimum cingitur. Quatuor capelli latissimi, cum cordulis mire et preciose artis, de rubio serico, quorum uno utitur in capite; et tres alii super tres truncos, tribus equis quam preciose stratis, et quorum cordule nodate ex utraque parte equorum collorum terram attingunt, per tres nobiles eis insedentes, et ipsum precedentes secum cohabet; cum aliis inauditis mundo pomposis et a multis mirandis. Sequitur eum in uno dextrario albo una cathedra ad sedendum, ascendendum, descendendum et ad nature operis secessum [1], cum certis scalis sive gradibus aptata. Obviant sibi pueri cum olivarum ramis, clamantes "Osanna!" Multa vidit oculus meus, sed majora hiis non audivit auris mea [2]. Et certe presencium compilator multociens secum in hac confabulabatur via. A.D. 1406.

Ventilata coram me in palacio apostolico de et super monasterio beate Marie Scocie Vienne in Almania causa [3]. Mirans unde Scoti inde agere haberent, inde habui inquirens. Propter pestiferam [doctrinam] Machameti, per totam Alamaniam tam communi quam privata religione extincta, et postea per Carolum magnum communi restituta, sanctus Columquillus de Hibernia ad principum construccionem et fundacionem advectus, quia ibi fides non defecit, privatam reparacione instruxit. Unde, per totam in ejus locis insignibus Alamaniam, Scotorum, jam Hiberniencium nominatorum, monasteria, tamquam celle [4] Hibernie, nuper a Scota filia Pharaonis sic dicta, monasteriis subdite, et in professione hujusmodi Scotorum, jam Hiberniencium, sanctorum, ad hoc transmissorum, occupate dinoscuntur. Et de nominis mutacione nemirum: Nonne, in Britannia[m] illis Scotis advenientibus, mutato nomine Albanie, ab ipsis dicitur Scocia? Nonne, Britonibus Armoricam occupantibus, mutato nomine, jam ibi vocatur Bri- Unde dicitur Scocia.

[1] cecessum. MS.
[2] Job xiij. 1.
[3] Added by another hand.
[4] selle. MS.

A.D. 1406. tania? Ac ex Anglis Anglia, de Hiberis Hibernia, subrogata sunt nomina. Et sic transit gloria mundi.

Inter cetera istius sancti Columquilli, cum sanctis Patricii et Brigita in Duna Scocie tumulati, miracula: ipsius nominis invocacio, et in ignem in scriptis missa, igni dominatur. Unde versus:—

"Sancte Columquille remove mala dampna faville";

atque

"Columquillus salvet ab igne domus."

Isti quia originaliter Scoti ab Egipto, post transitum filiorum Israel per mare rubrum, videntes plagas Dei contra ipsos percucientes, solum natale[1] deseruerunt; et sub rege Hispanie in Basclow incoluerunt. Sed, quia regi notati, et in notam falsitatis scissuram perante, et, secundo quia ita notati, a retro [patiebantur][2], in vestium scissura quasi infideles expulsi, sub rege Britonum Barbtroc, Cantuarie conditore, Bellini magni filio, [qui][2], a Norwegia pro ejus tributo recollecto [reversus][2], eis Hiberniam, tunc non cultam[3], ab eo delegavit tenendam.

De serpentibus Hibernie. Et nobiles Hibernici, quibus non credo, sed magis sancto Patricio, mihi, Rome eorum magnas promociones procuranti, asseruerunt quod post dictum transitum in deserto, et presertim serpentem eneum deferendo, filiis Israel servierunt. Sed, quia in fide discrepantes, repulsi, ad Bosclow descenderunt, ut supra, ac, pro hujusmodi servicio a filiorum Israel Deo remunerati, adhuc venenosis serpentibus non comitantur.

A.D. 1412. A quodam capellano Bangorensis dioceseos, de Terra Sancta reverso[4], habui quod ipse, cum aliis quingentis peregrinis, adversa maris tempestate infra districta Soldani Babilonie propulsus, ejus carceribus mancipatur et per annum detinetur captivus. Interim per regem Damasci campestri bello victus decollatur. Novus Soldanus dictos

[1] natalis. MS.
[2] Such words seem to be required.
[3] colatam. MS.
[4] reversus. MS.

peregrinos coram tribunali suo scisci[1] faciens, pro misericordia se prostrantes, gladio nudo quem tenuit in manu violenter bis tribunal percussit, sed tercia vice leniter et propicie, in signum pietatis et clemencie—alias omnes mortui fuissent—ita dicendo: "Januenses, cum omnibus Francigenis et Hispannis, quia de eorum liga, reducantur ad carceres, eo quod tres naves gentis sue depredassent, in repriseliam redempcionem facturi. Ceteri Christiani dimittantur liberi, quia omnibus Christianis libenter cum justicia confaverem." Et sic ille capellanus evasit liber. A.D. 1412. Soldanus Babilonie.

In festo sancti Barnabe, expensarum penuria, quia spoliatus, ut supra, et propter amicorum ingratitudines, ut infra, a curia versus partes recedens per Senas, Januam, marchionatum Mounteferati, Astham, Mountgalers, Susam, et in festo beatorum Petri et Pauli per Mountsynys, nivis frigoribus quasi peremptus, et per Sibaudiam et in ea Liburnam et Egobellam, ubi in uno hospicio vidi domini Leonelli ducis Clarencie, secundi geniti Anglie, ac ceterorum nobilium secum ad nupsias filie domini Galias, domini de Lumbardia, secum de Anglia devectorum, solempniter depicta arma. A.D. 1406.

In festo Sancti Gregorii, Griffinus primogenitus Oweni in multitudine magna castro de Usk, aliqualiter ad defensionem reparato, in quo tunc erat dominus Grey de Codnore, dominus Johannes Greyndour, et multi alii regis soudati, in mala sua insultavit hora. Quia dicti domini, viriliter exeuntes, ipsum captivaverunt, et suos ipsos usque ad montana superioris Wencie per Usce flumen, ubi plures, et presertim abbas de Lanterna, tam flammis quam gladii ore ceciderunt, et per monachorum silvam, ubi dictus Griffinus erat captus, indefesse contriverunt. Ac vivos captos, in numero trecentum, ante dictum castrum prope Ponfaldum decapitarunt, et quosdam nobiliores ad regem, cum dicto Grifino, captivos duxerunt. Qui Grifinus, per sex annos in captivitate existens, finaliter in Londonie A.D. 1405. Capitur filius Oweni. Cedes apud Uscam.

[1] cisci. MS.

A.D. 1405. Turri morbo extinguitur pestilenciali. Et de cetero in illis partibus viluit sors Oweni.

A.D. 1406. Demum a dicta Egoballa sub salvo conductu per medium Burgundie, Cartusiam, Digeonem, Beoniam, melioris vini Francie nutricem, ad Troyes in Champeyn, Francie initium, Provinciamque et Vile Robarde, ad civitatem Parisiensem et demum per Clermount per Amyas, ubi [caput?][1] sancti Johannis Baptiste vidi, et per Aras ad Brugges in Flandria descendi; ubi Ricardus Lancastell, rex armorum, consuluit mihi quod, propter regem mortem mihi minantem, citra ejus graciam adeptam, et quam mihi promisit et pro qua ipsum expectavi in illis partibus per biennium, licet frustra, quod non intrarem Angliam consuluit omnino.

A.D. 1406–1408.

Spoliacio Ade.

Habui eciam quod omnia beneficia mea aliis essent collata . . . . . .[2] gintarum marcarum totaliter erant exinanita. Quid mora? Cogitavi plura. Sed cum Job exclamavi[3]: "Si bona suscepimus de manu Domini," et cetera[4].

Per dictum biennium per Flandriam, Franciam, Normanniam, et Britaniam, multorum episcoporum, abbatum, et procerum consiliis, satis inde lucrando, perlustravi patrias. Et bis interim per Wallicos, quibus fiduciam habui, totaliter, saltem altera vice, dormiens usque ad braccas inclusive spoliatus fui. Et certe ex procerum predictorum largitate eodem die postea centum viginti coronas habui.

Comes Northumbrie et dominus de Bardolle, post multa infortunia, primo a facie Henrici regis fugientes in Scociam, ibi dimisso in pignus[5] domini Henrici Percy filio, dicti comitis nepote et herede, inde ad Owenum sub salvo conductu pro succursu in Walliam, ubi aliquamdiu moram traxerunt; ac demum in conflictu campestri sub domino meo de Powys per Anglicos devicti. Et in Franciam eciam, sub salvo conductu, pro relevamine contra dictum regem,

[1] Omitted. MS.
[2] A line of the MS. erased.
[3] explanavi. MS.
[4] Job ij. 10.
[5] pugnus. MS.

licet in vanum, duce Aureliano eis resistente, laborantes, devenerunt. Cum quibus quia sepius communicavi, majorem inde regis Henrici in hoc experti indignacionem reportavi. Demum comes iterato ad Scociam et inde in Angliam, sub fabricatis doli sigillis regnum pro se habiturum [1] promittentibus, proditorie est seductus. Ut transiret secum, magnas promociones mihi promisit. Visitavit Deus cor meum, et cogitavi: "Tu Adam, positus in labirintho, disponas te cum Deo." Malignum misit Deus spiritum, et merito, inter regem et istum comitem, ad modum Abymalech, ut legitur in libro Judicum [2]. Et sic verti mantellum, ac ad dominum meum de Poisia, regis et regni graciam expectaturus, si Deus daret, gressus meos dirigere disposui; et factum est ita. A.D. 1406–1408.

Predicti domini in Scociam, et deinde cum armata manu in Angliam, regnum pro se habere sperantes, transierunt. Sed vicecomes Eboracensis, de eorum adventu satis consultus, ipsos in campo contrivit decapitavitque, ac eorum capita, ultra Londonie pontem inde posita, ad regem Henricum transmisit. Quo audito, presencium compilator de sua a retro remanencia futurorum regraciabatur Scrutatori. A.D. 1408. Mors comitis Northumbrie.

Ope et favore ducis Burgundie, dux Aurelie, propter ejus inauditas excessus avaricias, regis Francie infirmitate hoc causante, licet ejus frater, tanquam regiminis usurpator, interficitur. Unde et commocio cedicionum permaxima, adhuc non cessans, in regno Francie noscitur causata. Episcopus Leodiensis, ducis Burgundie uxoris frater, in ipsius succursum cum quinque milibus armatorum venit ad Parisium. Quem succursum statim post idem dux remuneravit ad plenum. Nam diocese sua, eo quod ad sacerdocium nollet ordinari, totaliter rebellante, et alium auctoritate antipape subrogante, sub dicto duce in mortali bello cum sexdecim milibus et ultra perimitur in bello; et idem episcopus ad suum restituitur statum.

[1] habiturus. MS. [2] ix. 23.

A.D. 1408. Pares Francie. Et verum est quod in Francia duodecim debent esse pares: tres duces, tres comites, spirituales; tresque duces et tres comites temporales, prout hiis versibus patet:—

"Lyngo. Remi. Laudu. Nor. Aqui. Burgundia sunt du.
Belva. Chatel. No. Tholou. Campania, Flandria sunt co."

Verum quia rex paritates dedignando cum omni oportunitate eas sibi applicat, sic quod quatuor temporales corone unitas jam est adeptus; et duas alias, scilicet Burgundie et Flandrie, idem dux pro se habet. Et hoc fuit causa malorum, quia, infirmato rege, dux Burgundie ad se solum regni gubernacionem vendicavit pertinere.

A.D. 1410. Magister Prucie, de ordine militari Sancte Marie Teuthonicorum, hiis diebus regnum Turcorum invasit, et regem eorum, cum quingentis militibus aliis in fugam propulsis, in bello devicit. Statim postmodum per regem Polonie, propter ejus nimiam superbiam, devictus et est ipse.

Honor Arthuri. A Teuthonicis habui quod, ad honorem Arturi regis Britonum, quia eos liberavit de manibus Romanorum, per omnes civitates et loca insignia Almanie pro proceribus extraneis advenientibus maxime fiunt solempnitates. Locus communis ville cum redditibus ad hoc fundatus perornatur. Vina, species, et tripudia cum omni musicorum melodia, dominorumque et dominarum solaciis, gloriosissime impenduntur.

Magister Johannes Trevaour, utriusque juris doctor, Assavensis episcopus, abjecta Anglicorum quibus erat specialis amicicia, particeps sortis Oweni pace et guerra efficitur, bis in Franciam pro subsidio armatorum transiens, transfertur ad Indos, et abbas de Lan Eguestre Assavensis subrogatur episcopus. Idem magister Johannes, in tanto infortunio positus, Romam se transfert, et ibi trans Tiberym, de anno Domini M^mo^cccxij^mo^ et de mense Octobris die quinta, moritur.

A.D. 1406. Globus igneus. Dum eram apud Brugges, erant et dicti comes in monasterio de Ekows ac dominus in uno hospicio medie ville

hospitati. In vigilia Sancti Bricii, in crepusculo noctis, de Anglia in aere venit unus globus igneus, major magno dolio, quasi illuminans mundum. In cujus adventu omnes attoniti timebant perimi[1] villam. Sed directe transit contra campanile Sancte Marie, et, ex ictu divisus in duas partes, ipsas ante hostia dictorum comitis et domini eas dimittit, ad maximum ipsorum, ut apparuit postea, ruine presagium. A.D. 1406.

Et in dicti monasterii cronicis hoc quod sequitur, in derisum Francorum, quia per Flandenses alias devictorum, compositum inveni:— Passio mirabilis.

"*Passio Francorum, secundum Flemingos.*"

"In illo tempore Philippus, rex Francorum, convocatis discipulis suis, secreto ait illis: 'Quem dicunt homines esse comitem Flandrie?' At illi dixerunt: 'Alii Carolum, alii Lodewycum, aut unum ex prophanis.' Dixit iterum eis rex: 'Vos autem quem me esse dicitis?' Unus ex eis, nomine Petrus Flot[2], consilio accepto a Carolo, dixit: 'Domine, tu es rex Flandrie.' Dixit ergo ei rex: 'Beatus es tu, Petre, quia caro et sanguis non revelavit tibi, sed frater meus qui est infelix. Et ego dico tibi quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc petram edificabo consilium meum; et tibi dabo claves regni mei in Flandria; et quodcumque ligaveris erit ingratum Deo celi.' Rex vero, vocatis nunciis, dixit eis: 'Euntes in Flandriam, dicite Flemyngis, "Omne regnum in se divisum desolabitur, et domus supra domum cadet"; si ergo a regno meo divisi fuerint, domos eorum demolliar, gladium meum vibrabo, et potestas mea regia subjugabit eos, aut in mari, terram de eis mundando, ipsos fugere compellet. Congregaboque eos, quemadmodum gallina congregat pullos sub alis, et fiet unum ovile et unus pastor.'

"At illi, venientes in Flandriam, sicut rex precepit,

[1] perimeri. MS.

[2] Pierre Flotte, chancellor of Philip the Fair, who was slain in the battle of Courtrai.

A.D. 1406. Flemyngis dixerunt. Ac Flemyngi, respondentes et singula singulis reddentes, dixerunt: 'Civitates et opida gloriose construximus. Rex vester non pastor sed pocius lupus dicendus est, quia vult oves devorari et lupo subici. Et, cum boves non sumus, timemus subjugari; et, quia pulli non sumus, timemus sub alis congregari; et pocius gladio perire. Cum pocius pastorem deceat paci parcere quam gladio vibrare, nec credimus demollicionem domus ymmo demonis fieri, ymmo pocius tigurrium sibi in deserto fieri.'

"Nuncii ergo, responso accepto, abierunt, nunciantes regi omnia que audierant et viderant, sicut dictum est ad illos. Indignatus ergo rex propter jusjurandum, et simul discumbentes vocavit comitem Arthasie[1] et alios condiscipulos suos, et dixit eis: 'Euntes in mundum universum, docete omnes gentes contumaciam Flemyngorum in nomine meo. Qui dederit eis mala, hic salvus erit; qui vero non dederit, condempnabitur. Signa autem eos qui dederint hec sequentur: In nomine meo demonia suscipient; Deum despicient, et, si mortiferum quid susceperint, hoc eis nocebit. Et cum fueritis euntes in Flandriam, occidite omnes Flemyngos a bymatri et infra.'

"Comes abiit, facturus sicut dixit ei rex. Quidam vero Francorum dederunt quinque talenta; quidam vero duo; et quidam unum—unusquisque alteri propriam virtutem. Et, congregans comes universam cohortem, profectus est statim et venit in Flandriam. Cumque Petro Canyng[2] hoc relatum fuisset, perrexit obviam ei cum centum milibus virorum comitatus. Conversusque Petrus dixit: 'Tu quis es?' Respondit comes dicens: 'Jeo luy su. Quis es tu, qui interrogas?' Respondit Petrus Canyng: 'Sum ego.' Dicit ei comes: 'Amen, amen, dico tibi quia, antequam gallus cantet, ter me negabis.' Dicit ei Petrus: 'Etsi oportuerit

[1] Robert, Count of Artois.

[2] Pieter de Coninck, the leader of the men of Bruges, who took a prominent part in the revolt of the Flemings against Philip the Fair and in the battle of Courtrai.

te mori mecum, non te negabo.' Dixit iterum comes: 'Tu A.D. 1406.
es Petrus, et super hanc petram evaginabo gladium meum, et non relinquam tibi membrum sub capite eo quod non cognoveris [tempus] visitacionis tue.' Dicit ei Petrus: 'Scriptum est enim, "Non occides, quia qui gladio percutit gladio peribit."' Et Petrus ipse, extracto gladio, abscidit auriculam ejus dextram. Tunc dixit comes: 'Usquequo non parcis mihi ut gluciam salivam meam?' Petrus iterum percussit et dixit: 'Sic respondes pontifici?' Et procidit comes in terram et oravit dicens: 'Pater, si possibile est, transiat a me calix iste. Non tamen sicut ego volo, sed sicut tu vis, Petre.' Et terre motus factus est magnus ab hac hora tercia usque ad horam nonam. Et hora nona clamavit comes voce magna dicens: 'Bayard, Bayard, ou es tu? Pur quey as moy refuse?' Hoc est: 'Equus meus, equus meus, ut qui me dereliquisti?' Et hoc dicto expiravit. Et recordatus est Petrus quod dixerat comes: 'Jeo luy suy'; et ivit foras et clamavit alte.

"Et dixit unus ex Flemyngis: 'Vere vilis Dei erat iste.' Conversus vero Petrus Canyng, cum vidisset Petrum Flot, illum scilicet discipulum quem Deus neclexerat; eratque monoculus homo ille[1], ut adimpleretur quod dictum est per Scripturam dicentem: 'Si oculus tuus scandelizet te, erue eum et proice abs te.' Vir autem ille sequebatur a longe, ut videret finem, ut impleretur quod dictum est in Evangelio: 'Melius est cum uno oculo intrare prelium Francorum, quam duos oculos habere et mori a Flemyngis.' Ex quibus dixit unus: 'Vere et tu ex illis es.' At ille incepit de[te]stari et jurare quia non novisset hominem, et continuo nullus Gallicus cantavit. Et angariaverunt eum

[1] In one of the bulls of Pope Boniface VIII, Pierre Flotte was denounced as "semividens corpore," pointing to the loss of an eye, and confirming the statement here made that he was "monoculus." It is a curious coincidence that Pieter de Coninck had also lost an eye. See *Notice sur la Bataille de Courtrai*, by A. Voisin, 1836, p. 20.

A.D. 1406. Flemyngi ut sequeretur comitem Arthesie; et ille, ablato capite, secutus est eum.

"Putruerunt cadavera Francorum, ut impleretur id quod dictum est per prophetam dicentem: 'Putruerunt, corrupte sunt cicatrices eorum.' Venerunt Flemyngi, ut viderent corpora defunctorum, et dixerunt: 'Dormite jam et requiescite. Spiritus quidem promptus est, caro vero infirma.' Canes et volucres celi pascebantur ex carnibus eorum, ut impleretur Scriptura: 'Posuerunt morticina Francorum tuorum escas volatilibus celi, et carnes eorum bestiis terre.' Dixit unus ex Flemyngis: 'Sepeliamus corpora Francorum, ne tumultus fiat in populo.' Dixit Petrus Canyng: 'Nolite sepelire eos in terra, neque in mari, neque in arboribus, quousque signemus eos Francos in frontibus eorum, ne veniant vicini et cognati eorum et furentur eos et dicant plebi quia evaserunt a mortuis. Et erit novissimus error pejor priore.' Et erat numerus centum quatuordecim milia signati ex tribu Francorum; quadraginta septem milia signati ex tribu Picardorum; xxiiij. milia signati ex tribu Normannorum; xvj. milia signati ex tribu Britanorum; xiij. milia signati ex tribu Pictavorum; xvj. milia signati ex tribu Andagavorum.

"Et multa alia facta sunt que non sunt scripta in libro hoc. Post multum vero temporis venit dominus servorum ponere racionem cum eis, et, consilio accepto ne rediret ad Flemyngos pugnare paratos, per aliam viam reversus est in regionem suam."

De nativitate Christi. Item, inveni ibi, in cronica Martini in historia Constantini secundi, quod in vetustissima tumba defuncti apud Constantinopolim una aurea cum hac scriptura inveniebatur lamina: "Jesus Christus nascetur de virgine Maria, et credo in Eum." Item, quod in Hispania quidam Judeus, dum rupem frangeret, ad plantandum in ea vineas, in medio petre per eum fracte inveniebat librum foliatum lapideum eadem verba continentem, et hoc

addentem, scilicet, de divisione mundi ab Adam usque ad Antichristum in tres partes, et singularum parcium condiciones describentem. Et in Christo sic incipit: "Jesus Christus, Dei filius, nascetur de virgine Maria, et pacietur pro populo; et credo in Eum. Et inveniar tempore Ferandi regis Castellie." Et ita fuit. Et baptizatus est Judeus. A.D. 1406.

Ex annalibus Hebreorum ecce indicia diem judicii precedencia: Primo die, erigit se mare quadraginta cubitos supra omnes montes, non dispersim, sed ad modum muri stans in loco suo. Secundo die, descendet, ut vix videri posset. Tercio die, omnes pisses usque ad celum dabunt mugitum, quem solus Deus intelligit; et credo quod finale Creatori testimonium reddent. Quarto die, maria et omnes aque ardebunt. Quinto die, omnes arbores et herbe rorem dabunt sanguineum; et omnia genera avium congregata nichil gustabunt, suum Creatorem contemplancia. Sexto die, ruent edificia; fulminaque ignea ab occasu solis ad ortum ejus occurrencia. Septimo die, petre se mutuo collidentes scindentur in quatuor partes, quarum sonum solus Deus novit. Octavo die, tantus erit terre motus quod omnia ejus superficia penitus prosternet. Nono die, omnibus aliis inequalibus in pulverem redactis, equabitur terra. Decimo die, exibunt homines de cavernis, pre terrore sibi mutuo loqui non valentes. Undecimo die, omnia ossa mortua desuper sepulcra se ostendent. Duodecimo die, stelle et sidera et firmamenti cetera turbidas et igneas comas emittent; animaliaque terre in campis congregabuntur cum mugitu maximo nichil gustancia. Tercio decimo die, morientur viventes, ut cum mortuis resurgant. Quarto decimo die, ardebunt celi et terra. Quinto decimo die, fiet celum novum et terra nova, et resurgent omnes judicium accepturi; in quo ad dextram cum agnis nos collocet Filius Virginis, mundum eo quod suo sanguine redemptum judicaturus. Indicia judicii.

Ante tamen dicta signa, quatuor Sabbaciis mundum decipere conabitur Antichristus. Primo, sacre Scripture,

A.D. 1406. Christum se a lege promissum asserendo, intellectum pervertere, ac legem Christi destruere, ac suam statuere laborabit; et sedebit in templo tamquam Deus, ut legem Christi auferat: (Danielis, xj. "Ibi dabunt abhominaciones," et cetera; juncta sua glossa). Secundo, per operacionem miraculorum, quia ignem de celo, et cetera, per spiritum malignum, sicut Christus per Spiritum Sanctum: (Apocalypsis, xiij., juncta glossa). Tercio, per donorum largitatem, quia thezauri terre per demones sibi aperientur, quos cum terra suis distribuet fautoribus: (Danielis, xj.[1], cum sua glossa). Quarto, per tormentorum illacionem, quia quos in premissis allicere sibi non poterit crudeliter interficiet, ut in Apocalypsi, de Elya et Ennoc et aliis sibi resistentibus.

Unde ecce metricum signa describens Judicii[2]:—

Signa Judicii.

"Antequam Judicii dies metuenda
Veniat, sunt omnia mundi commovenda.
Nam per dies quindecim modo[3] sunt videnda
Signa nimis aspera, nimis et horrenda.

Legens ea Jeronimus libros Hebreorum
Ista signa reperit, que posteriorum
Scripsit ad memoriam, ut suppliciorum
Convertantur impii metu futurorum.

Nam in mundi vespere venient portenta,
Per que certa poterunt dari documenta,
Pravis quam crudelia manebunt[4] tormenta
Nimis qui amaverant[5] mundi blandimenta.

j. Prima dies seculo tale signum dabit:
Mare surgens turgidum[6] undas elevabit.
Quadraginta cubitus montes superabit,
Terram non operiet, sed nec minus stabit.

[1] xiij. MS.

[2] See Blume and Dreves, *Analecta Hymnica Medii Aevi: Pia Dictamina*, Leipzig, 1898–9, vj. 294.

[3] mundo. MS.

[4] manent. MS.

[5] amarunt. MS.

[6] rugidum. MS.

Erit namque postea tale quod sequetur: A.D. 1406.
Mare petet infima sic et abscondetur, ij.
Quod vix idem oculis hominum cernetur;
Et ad statum pristinum postea revertetur.

Pisces die tercia supra fluctus stabunt iij.
Et mugitus maximos versus celos dabunt;
Congregati volucres plangent et clamabunt,
Necnon omnes bestie planctum resonabunt.

Quarta lux horribile signum exhibebit: iiij.
Mare cum fluminibus omnibus ardebit;
Omne genus hominum videns hoc pavebit,
Arens metu nimio pro se quisque flebit.

Nubem nimis horridam quinta lux monstrabit, v.
Omnis herbe species sanguine rorabit,
Totam terram sanguinis sudor occupabit,
Omne genus arborum taliter sudabit.

Sexta die menia cuncta diruentur, vj.
Domus, turres, opida simul destruentur;
Instrumentis bellicis hec sic non labentur,
Ymmo propter proximum finem confundentur.

Die vero septima lapides pugnabunt vij.
Et alternis ictubus invicem crepabunt[1];
In cavernis homines metu latitabunt,
Et ut illos obruant montibus clamabunt.

Totam terram tremere lux octava dabit, viij.
Supra pedes animal suos nullum stabit;
Cunctis terram partibus nova lux equabit, ix.
Valles implens arduos montes[2] inclinabit.

In cavernis homines prius delitentes x.
Ibunt die decima campos per patentes,
Et errabunt undique veluti dementes,
Pre timore nimio loqui non valentes.

[1] clamabunt. MS.

[2] montes implens arduos. MS.

A.D. 1406.
xj. Post terrorem siquidem talium signorum,
Die sub undecima, claustris defunctorum
Fractis, foris salient ossa mortuorum
Et horrorem facient oculis vivorum.

xij. De supernis partibus postea pressure
Die duodecima mundo sunt venture;
Et de celo desuper stelle sunt casure,
Et per partes aeris flamme[1] volature.

xiij. Die terna decima cuncti morientur
Qui viventes seculo tunc reperientur,
Cum defunctis aliis ut resuscitentur
Et secundum merita sua judicentur.

xiiij. Ignis quarta decima die succendetur,
Ut quod homo polluit ignibus purgetur,
Unde superficies celi comburetur,
Atque terre facies idem pacietur.

xv. Dies quinta decima celum renovabit
Atque terre pariter novam formam dabit;
Et post hoc angelica tuba mox sonabit
Ac defunctos insimul omnes suscitabit."

Dies Judicii. "Aer post incipiet totus rutilare,
Nam in luce veniens Christus nubis clare,
Vivos atque mortuos omnes judicare,
Josaphat videbitur supra vallem stare.

Surgent ad judicium omnes qui vixerunt;
Hic corona, lancea, crux et clavi erunt.
Et videbunt reprobi quem reprobaverunt,
Eis tunc terribilem, in quem pupugerunt.

Hic occulta cordium omnium patebunt,
Opes et potentia nihil tunc valebunt;
Celi sed divicias justi possidebunt,
Amatores seculi flebunt et lugebunt.

[1] altis flammis. MS.

Nullus tantam[1] lucidam gloriam sanctorum A.D. 1406.
Vel dolorem dicere poterit dampnatorum;
Nisi quod fons omnium hiis est honorum,
Illis erit cumulus omnium malorum.

Ergo quisque properet reus emendari,
Studens a criminibus lacrimis lavari,
Et venturum Judicem bene contemplari,
Ut in die valeat mala liberari.

Quid dicturi miseri sumus[2] ante thronum,
Ante strictum Judicem, ante summum bonum?
Nam ibi advocatum non dat aut patronum,
Sed nostrarum premia reddet accionum.

Nam ad tronum stando tunc Judicis severi,
Non erit distancia laici aut cleri;
Nulla nos exempcio poterit tunc tueri,
Cum perventum fuerit ad examen veri.

Neque erit licitum quemquam allegare,
Aut tunc fas[3] excipere, sive replicare,
Nec ad apostolicam sedem appellare;
Reus condempnabitur: dicit nullus[4] quare.

Nichil ibi dabitur bulle vel scriptori,
Nichil camerario sive janitori;
Sed tradentur miseri pessimo tortori,
Quibus erit vivere sine fine mori.

Ad terrorem omnium surgo locuturus;
Omnis clerus audiat simplex et maturus.
Nichil est quod timeam, valde sum securus,
Nam hic sermo percutit velut ensis durus.

Puniendi presules sunt et cardinales,
Abbates et monachi, male moniales,
Sacerdotes emuli, clerici venales,
Congregantes insimul opes temporales.

[1] tam. MS.
[2] sumus miseri. MS.
[3] phas. MS.
[4] stimulus. MS.

A.D. 1406. Quanto plus accumulant tanto plus marcescunt,
Sunt velut ydropici quorum morbi crescunt,
Dum plus bibunt sciciunt magis[1] et arescunt;
Sic avari miseri nunquam requiescunt.

Apud nostros judices jura pervertuntur,
Et qui leges faciunt lege non utuntur;
Non attendunt miseri mala que sequuntur,
Nam qui dampnant alios primo dampnabuntur.

Homo, postquam moritur, statim fit sepultus;
Quid est avaricia nisi vilis cultus,
Vanitatum vanitas, cordium tumultus?
Pereunt divicie, perit homo stultus.

In sepulcro tegitur vili tegumento,
Deportatur postea miser in tormento,
Patitur supplicia, ut arundo vento,
Redimi non poterit auro vel argento.

Cogitate, judices, qui et quales estis,
Quid in hoc judicio dicere potestis;
Non utentur[2] codice juris nec digestis;
Idem erit Dominus judex, actor[3], testis.

Vos in lectisterniis, clerici, jacetis,
Curtinis et plumeis, laneis tapetis;
Unde vobis nuncio, qui modo gaudetis,
Tunc in hoc examine dolenda dicetis.

Quare, dum in prandio divites sedetis,
Hostium pauperibus claudere jubetis;
Pauper clamat vocibus admodum quietis;
Nil datis, sed aspere eis respondetis.

Semper carnem carnibus implere curatis,
Cum privatis opibus multa devastatis,
Vino nobilissimo ciphos vacuatis,
Ventrem cibis sordibus sepe reseratis.

[1] plus sciciunt. MS. [2] utetur. MS. [3] actorque. MS.

Pietatis opera Judex recitabit, A.D. 1406.
Prout ea fecerint quosque judicabit;
'Egentes non curastis' malis 'Ite' dabit,
'Veniteque' curantibus quam dulce sonabit!

Cunctis en preteritis, quicquid horrens erit
Dampnatos tunc ad 'Ite' sine fine terit;
Et quicquid solacii honorisque res gerit
Vocatis ad 'Venite' certe nunquam perit."

Longcastell armorum rex predictus, ab Anglia reversus, A.D. 1408. presencium compilatori intimavit Parisiis quod, facto per eum verbo regi pro reconsiliacione, quod tum propter dicti comitis Northumbrie communionem, tum propter detracciones suorum emulorum a Roma suis literis factas, modus non erat sibi se reconciliare, quia indies magis ac magis sibi indignato. Unde coram eodem armorum rege protestatus fuit Adam compilator quod fingeret se hominem fore Oweni, ac cum gente sua ad Walliam ad ipsum transiret; et inde, captata oportunitate, ab eo ad dominum suum Powys, sub ipso graciam regis expectaturus, latenter recederet. Et factum est ita. Et hec protestacio sibi salvavit vitam. Insidie michi erant in mari posite; et octo naves de Devonia me per duos dies naturales sequebantur, et sepius, prout et lepus inter tot leporarios agitatus est, exstiti.

Sed finaliter, sancti Thome de Yndia precibus, et quem in visione pro me Deum deprecari quod benedicatur conspexi, ad portum Seynt Poule de Lyons in Britannia evasi. Et ibi in sancti Theleai capella, ubi et draconem centum viginti pedum longitudinis destruxit, me sibi commendando missas indies celebravi.

Et demum, captata oportunitate, in Wallia ad portum A.D. 1408–1411. Abermo. Abermo applicui, et ibi in montibus, cavernis, fruticibus et silvestribus, antequam ad dictum dominum meum de Powys accedere valui, eo quod in partibus Devonie ipsius comitis filiam in uxorem tunc duxerat, delitui; multis ac

A.D. 1408–1411. magnis mortis et captivitatis falsorumque fratrum famisque et sitis, noctesque nonnullas[1] hostium invadencium metu insompnes ducendo, periculis satis cruciatus. Ulterius, per partem dicti Oweni, explorato quod ad dictum dominum meum pro salvo conductu miseram, sub strictis caucionum custodibus positus eram. Et demum a dicto domino meo, ad sua reverso, habitis ab eo ad eum veniendi et cum eo salvo standi licencie literis, ad eum et castrum suum de Pola noctanter et clanculo me transtuli; ubi et in ejus ecclesia parochiali, extra teritorium exire non ausus, tamquam pauper capellanus solum pro missa alimenta accipiens, ab ingratis cognatis et olim amicis nullatenus visitatus, talem, et in corde Deus novit qualem, languidam satis duxi vitam.

Pauper capellanus.

A.D. 1411. Interim, me ibi morante, inter ceteros generosos de parte Oweni, per dicti castri capitaneum tres incliti viri, scilicet Philippus Schidmore de Troya, Rys ap Gryvyth de Cardigan, et Rys ap Tydyr de Angleseya, captivati, primus Salopie, cujus caput adhuc ibi ultra pontem stat fixum, secundus Londonie, et tercius Cestrie ad patibula trahuntur et suspenduntur.

Ad instanciam demum dicti domini et David Harlech, magnifici viri, regis graciam per suas literas, ac ipsas Salopie proclamari, obtinui. Et tunc illuc pedester antiquos visitaturus amicos transivi; duos ab eis equos et centum solidos gratanter habui; famulum conduxi; tamquam denuo natus, statum ante exilium aliqualiter refigurare incepi. Ad partes proprias, per antiquos amicos et cognatos, promotos et alioquin[2] a me non modice relevatos, ac debitores, et relevari sperans, accessi; quos, non solum ingratos, dum eciam obprobria incucientes, ymmo eciam, ne quid ab eis de proprio exigerem, meam ruinam appetentes reperii. Illud vulgare: quod non propter me sed propter mea alii dilexerunt, unde et, fortuna labente, neclexerunt.

[1] nullas. MS. [2] aliosque. MS.

Ac illud poeticum: amicum mutuam me rogante pecuniam, ipsum et pecuniam perdo et reportavi. A.D. 1411.

Inde in Angliam, corde cum tremulo licet cum hillari vultu, dominos et amicos antiquos visurus me transtuli, omnia beneficia et bona perdita irrecuperabiliter exploravi. In parliamento cum aliis doctoribus interfui; ac paulatim, Deo operante, cor, vultum, et animum dilatavi.

Per dominum meum Cantuariensem, in curia sua Cantuarie restitutus, ad bonam ecclesiam de Merstham promotus fui; servientes, libros, pannos, et lares, ut alter Job, accumulavi: quare benedicatur Deus in eternum et ultra!

Uxor Oweni, cum ejus duabus filiabus et tribus neptibus, domini Edmundi Mortemari filiabus, et omnibus laribus, captivatur et Londoniam ad regem transmittitur. Owenus, cum unico filio suo, Meredyth nomine, in terris, cavernis et montium fruticibus delitet miserime. Ad bonam cautelam, regis expensis per ejus soldatos [ad] rebelliones novas refrenandas[1], de Snowdona et aliorum montium ac silvarum North Wallie saltus et passus custodiunt. A.D. 1409.

Henricus quartus, postquam quatuordecim annis quosque sibi rebelles confringendo potenter regnaverat, doluit intoxicatus; unde carnis putredine, oculorum ariffaccione, et interiorum egressione per quinque annos cruciatus, apud Westmonasterium in camera abbatis, ipsius genesim quod in Terra Sancta moreretur verificando, infra sanctuarium, anno Domini mccccxij., et mensis Marcii die vicesimo, diem suum clausit extremum; et per aquam transportatus sepelitur Cantuarie. Istam putredinem portentabat sibi sue coronacionis unctio, quia pediculorum in capite presertim generatio adeo quod nec crines sustinet, nec discoopertum caput per plures menses habere potuit. Unum de oblacionis ipsius tempore in coronacionis missa nobilibus de manu sua in terram cecidit; quod tum per ipsum memet et alios astantes diligenter quesitum et inventum ab ipso offertur[2]. A.D. 1413. Mors Henrici quarti.

[1] refrenatas. MS.

[2] These last two sentences added in the margin of the MS.

A.D. 1413. Henricus quintus, suus ex filia comitis Herfordie primogenitus, probissimus juvenis ac virtutibus et sagacitate plenus, xiiij. die a patris morte, Dominica scilicet in Passione tunc contingente, apud Westmonasterium coronatus solempnissime exstitit.

Eadem die nimis vehemens et inaudita tempestas regni montes cooperuit; homines, bestias et domos suffocavit; ac valles et palludes, cum nimiis hominum dampnis et periculis, mirabiliter submersit.

Novus rex omnibus quantumcumque eciam lese majestatis criminosis, dum tamen citra festum sancti Johannis Baptiste literas regias inde facerent expediri, in convivio coronacionis perdonacionem fecit proclamari; unde pro ipsis literis magnas pecunias habuit. Ac eciam in parliamento suo, inmediate ex tunc apud Westmonasterium tento, clerum in decima et populum in quintadecima parte collectavit. Item, in stipendiorum annuorum quorumcumque confirmacionibus primi anni comoda sibi reservavit. Necnon quascumque financias, in novis regum creacionibus fieri solitas, dupplicavit. Ac contra Wallicos et Hibernicos, ut singuli in suas proficiscerentur[1] patrias, edictum promulgavit; et inde ab eis, pro morandi licencia, magnos thezauros sibi congregavit.

A.D. 1411. Hiis diebus, in vim cujusdam exempcionis Bonefacii noni, universitas Oxoniensis unanimiter et manu forti metropolitice resistere visitacioni; unde tribulaciones permaxime, cedes hominumque nonnulle, propter supervenientes patrie proceres ad succursum dicti domini Cantuariensis, mutue contingebant. Sed incassum ad tunc idem dominus recessit; ac per Johannem papam vicesimum tercium hujusmodi exempcionem revocari obtinuit, et universitatem eidem ad renunciandum compulit.

A.D. 1414. Ambassiatores solempnes Francie pro regis maritagio et regnorum tranquillitate, suis cum eo expensis stantes per duos menses, ac demum cum eis recedentibus et suos transmisit.

[1] profiterentur. MS.

Domino comiti Marchie, et per ipsum domino regi, duo pupilli, alter novem annorum et altera septem annorum tantum, ad magnam et inauditam miracionem, offeruntur, in Wallia cum eorum prole communi matrem lactente oriundi. A.D. 1414.

Sub domino Johanne Oldcastell, milite, dicto per uxorem domino de Cobham, Lollardi eorum pestifera doctrina, et presertim circa sacramentum altaris, ecclesiam ejusque fideles ac regnum perturbant. Facultas eis in multitudine glomerata indies pululantibus onerose sub pena interdicti in locis aufertur. Dictus dominus Johannes per dictum dominum Cantuariensem et alios suffraganeos suos sibi assistentes dampnatur hereticus, et in Turri Londonie [ab] eo mancipatur intrusus. Inde ultra muros de nocte evadens suis literis et nunciis suos fautores sibi alliciendo regnum clanculo commovet. A.D. 1413.

In vigilia Epiphanie, regem fortem pro fide pugilem Christianissime zelantem, prelatosque ac ecclesias hostiliter ad invadendum et destruendum omnes, ad congregandum Fykettysfelde noctanter sibi et confederatis suis facinorosis hujusmodi ordinat campum. Sed, campo ea nocte per regem in hoc consultum manu militari prevento, dum ita veniunt, in multitudine capiuntur, trahuntur, suspenduntur, et cremantur. Inter quos et dominus Rogerus Acton, miles de Salopia, adhuc per mensem in patibulo stat suspensus. Plures dampnati et dampnandi in Londonie Turri et ubique per regnum tenentur incarcerati. Iste miles, tegulatoris filius, ex infimo genere Salopie oriundus, predis et spoliis guerre Wallie ditatus, se nimis extollendo, ordinis militaris prerogativa ac milicie cingulo per Henricum quartum insigniri, ac per duos ejus filios, primogenitum jam regem ac secundogenitum jam ducem Clarancie, calcaribus aureis adornari obtinuit. Post tamen in ipsos quam ingratus recalcitrari non erubuit. A.D. 1414.

Mors archiepiscopi Cantuariensis.

Mensis Februarii xix die, anno Domini M^mo. cccc. xiij, dominus meus illustrissimus, domini nostri regis et fratrum

A.D. 1414. suorum, necnon Marchie, Arundellie, et Notynghamie ac Staffordie comitum, necnon de Bergaveny et Spenser, patruus, comitis Arundellie defuncti filius, dominus Thomas de Arundellia, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, tocius Anglie primas et apostolice sedis legatus, virtus, lampas et sophia populi, lucerna ac delicie cleri, ecclesieque fidei Christiane columpna inpressibilis, qui me de Kemsynge in Cancia et de Merstham in Suthreya, cum prebenda de Landogy in Wallia, bonas ecclesias contulit, et per quem me ad majora, prout ita promiserat, promoveri sperabam, casu quodam quo omnia tendunt in occasum subita mutacione functus, dies suos, longe ante optatum michi terminum, pro dolor!, Cantuarie terminavit, Regis celestis illam dulcedinis vocem: "Serve bone et fidelis, intra in gaudium domini tui",[1] cum eternitatis gaudio recepturus. Quam terminacionem eadem nocte Londonie in visione habui, scilicet quod ipse, relicta tota familia et in curtis vestibus, quasi remote transiturus, velocissime currebat solus; et, cum ego omni nisu ipsum insequi laborarem, tradidit michi unam ceream candelam, dicens: "Scindas istam in medio inter nos duos"; et sic a visu meo disparuit. Et sic vigilans intellexi quod divisi eramus de cetero, et pro anima sua quam dolenter missam celebravi; et postea de morte sua certioratus fui. Qui, ad mortis sue tempus, toto provincie sue clero, nulli quantumcumque exempto ac laborare valenti parcendo, pro fide qua stamus, in ecclesia sancti Pauli Londonie solempnissimam celebravit convocacionem. In qua, pugil fortissimus existens, multa bona contra Lollardos et hereticos ordinavit: inter cetera, de consensu regio, quod committens in heresim, confiscatis ejus bonis mobilibus et immobilibus, in crimen eciam ex hoc lese majestatis incideret, ita quod ultra ignem heresi condignum eciam tractus et suspensus ad furcas adderentur pene; eciam quod per comitatus per regis justiciarios in hoc

[1] Matt. xxv. 21.

inquisiciones et judicationes fierent. Quas ordinaciones ante mortem suam bene execucioni demandari obtinuit. Et dicta convocacio[1] ad Oxoniam continuatur, ubi heresis nidus pululabat. Pendente continuacione, decessit, ut supra. A.D. 1414.

Frater Johannes Burghhull, vir avarissimus, de ordine predicatorum, episcopus Lychfeldensis, ad scandalosam ejus per totum regnum famam, magnam summam auri in quodam camere sue foramine abscondit; et, quia in alia parte foramen erat apertum, due monedule, merito a moneta dicte, volentes in eo nidificare, aurum per arbores et gardinum dispergentes, foramen eo ad multorum comodum evacuaverunt. Quod una die in mensa dicti domini mei ad magna solacia, per nonnullos convivas regni magnates fabulatum audivi.

Ad sedem transfertur Cantuariensem magister Henricus Chychley, legum doctor, Menevensis tunc episcopus; cui et subrogatur in Menevensem magister Johannes Kedryk. Dicto jam Cantuariensi in recessu meo ab Oxonia cathedram meam civilem dimisi. Demum et infra medietatem anni extunc predicto fratri Johanni Burchill ab hac vita subtracto, et sibi N. de Patryngtona, ordinis Carmelitarum, subrogatur in sedibus.

Rex apud Laicestriam tenet parliamentum; in quo prelatis et clero plures excessus et extorsiones ac negligencie in approbacionibus testamentorum, in abusu hospitalium, et in residencia curatorum et aliis, obiciuntur. Istorum reformacionem objectorum rex convocacioni remisit cleri; qua sub dicto Cantuariensi in ecclesia sancti Pauli Londonie tenta, in multis fuerat reparacio ordinata, presertim circa testamenta: scilicet quod infra c. solidos, xij. denarii, et sic usque ad viginti libras; et ultra, usque ad c. libras, x. solidi; et sic usque ad mille libras, pro singulis c. libris, x. solidi; ita quod, in quacumque summa bona testamenti existant, ordinarius ultra xx. libras pro omnibus laboribus

[1] convocacione. MS.

A.D. 1414. non recipiet. In ista convocacione a clero, licet contra ordinem, quia primo laici[1] concedere solebant, due conceduntur decime, ante quintedecime temporalium concessionem.

Jam, expensis cleri, ad consilium generale Constancie, tenendum regni et potissime cleri expensis, pro dictorum excessuum ac unionis universalis reparacione, solempnes mittuntur ambassiatores, episcopi Bathoniensis, Sarisburiensis, et Menevensis, ac abbas Westmonasterii et prior Wigornie, ac comes Warwici, ac domini Fyzhw et de Swiche, necnon milites domini Walterus Hunderford et Radulphus Racheford.

Hoc tempore Scoti partes Anglie boriales non modice infestant.

Ecclesia Londoniensis, proprio et discrepante usu dimisso, indies Sarisburiensia officia prima Dominica Adventus sibi ad usum primitus accepit.

Rex in hoc parliamento generalem pardonacionem omnibus literas hujusmodi citra festum sancti Michaelis expedituris concessit. Ordinatum est eciam quod capellani stipendiarii, si curati, octo alias vij. marcas tantum recipient. Sicut et alias lane, jam de sarcinis[2] panni ordinatur tributum. In vigilia Concepcionis Beate Virginis dissolvitur parliamentum.

Isto secundo regni sui anno, prope Schene super ripam Tamesii tres religiosas, unam Cartusie, secundam sancte Brigide, et terciam sancti Celestini, incepit fundare domos, de possessionibus monachorum Francie easdem dotando. Prioratus de Goldclef et de Nethe, alias Gallice, jam indigenantur.

Rex nonnullos suo lateri speciales ad quemcumque sui regni pecuniosum sibi pecuniam mutuaturos per totum suum regnum dispergit.

Rex, ad requirendum regem Francie pro terris suis hereditariis in ejus regno situatis, una pro filie sue mari-

[1] clerici primo laici. MS. [2] cercinis. MS.

tagio sibi pro bono concordie habende, ambassiatores, scilicet de Duram et de Norwicho episcopos, de Dorsettia comitem ac de Scrope dominos, dirigit quam solemnes in Franciam. Sed inde quasi derisi et infecto negocio redeunt in Angliam. Unde rex et regni heroes indignati, ut infra, indignacionis arma dirigunt in Francos. A.D. 1414.

Unum pejuratum[1] mirabile! Noster papa Johannes vicesimus tercius, contra sua ad unionem promissa, aliis duobus, scilicet Gregorio et Benedicto, secum, licet monstruose, concurrentibus, quia recalcitrans, et alias de perjuriis, homicidiis, adulteriis, simoniis, heresi, et aliis excessibus, et quia bis latenter ac ignominiose in apparatu vili recedens transfigurate, per ipsum consilium perpetuis mancipatur carceribus. A.D. 1415. Papa deponitur.

Decimo sexto die mensis Junii, Henricus quintus, anno regni sui tercio, locis sacris per eum primitus quam devote visitatis, in gloriosa facessia versus Franciam debellandam ad litus maris de Portysmouth transiturus, Londonia exit. Quo ad eum regis Francie ambassiatores, fictam pacem querendo venientes, a certis ejus consiliariis, Ricardo scilicet Cantibrigie comite, ducis Eboraci fratre, necnon de Scrope et de Gray dominis, ipsius mortem seu saltem viagii impedimentum in magno redemerunt auro. Qui, per comitem Marchie detecti, mortem tanta prodicione dignam merito reportarunt. Veniuntque solemnes ambassiatores a rege Aragonie ejus filiam regi nostro in uxorem offerentes ; cum quibus suos inde transmisit ambassiatores.

Deinde mari sulcato sub prospero velo tercio [decimo] die Augusti ad ripas Normannie prope Herflete cum suis votive applicuit. Tentoriisque fixis sibi insultat, subteraniaque fodina ipsius aream contribulat, suis machinis et bombardis ipsam et ipsius muros quassat ; finaliter suis cum hominibus nudis in colla funatis et cordulatis et

[1] The MS. seems to be corrupt: *pennatum* was first written; but has been touched, to convert it, apparently, into *peiuratum*. Perhaps *unum* should be *unicum*.

A.D. 1415. omnibus ejus bonis sibi in dedicionem reportat. Omnes olim indigenas expellit et suos Anglicos ibi collocat; comitem Dorsettie ipsius capitaneum errogat. Ventris fluxu in obsidione plures, de quibus Norwici episcopus, de Arundellia et Southfolk comites, perierunt. Ad milia eciam, quidam honeste quia licenciati, quidam causarie quia infirmati, quidam ignominiose quia desertores milicie et cum regis indignacione, ad propria remearunt.

Rex, Deo se et gladii fortune animose et tanquam alter leo se committens, decem vix milibus bellicosis stipatus, versus Calesiam perendinandam per medium pagi, imo per medium Francie, poncium ob fracturam, cautus vias suas dirigit. Cui hostes sui de Francia ad sexaginta milia nobiliorum et prefectorum occurrunt juxta Agingcourt in Picardia. Conserto bello, benedicatur Deus !, cessit victoria regi nostro; de cujus parte tantum xxvij. ceciderunt, de quibus Eboraci dux, de Suthfolk comes juvenis, ac de Kychlay et de Skidmore milites, et David Game, de Breconia, ceciderunt nobiles. Ex parte Gallorum, ad mortem, captivitatem seu fugam positorum, omnium tesaurum et vecturas regis, licet ad sui confusionem, secum habencium, de Aureliano et de Borbonia ducibus ac vj. comitibus captivatis, tres duces, vj. comites, xxiij. barones, lxxxx^{a} domini, et mille cccc^{ti} cum tunicis armature nobiles, vij.[1] M. plebei ceciderunt morti.

Quarto die Novembris, sub domino Johanne, Bedfordie duce, regis secundo fratre, et ejus in absencia locumtenente, Londonie incipit parliamentum solempne, ob regis in hominibus et expensis causatum relevamen. In quo per temporales conceditur quod integra quintadecima, per eos ad festum Purificacionis Beate Virginis extunc, ut supra, solvi concessa proximum, quod ante festum Sancte Lucie Virginis ad usum regis debeat indilate levari. Concessa est eciam et alia quintadecima ad proximum annum sequentem in festo Sancti Martini persolvenda; regi eciam,

[1] Originally xvij., but the x has been struck out. MS.

ad terminum vite sue, quoad merces de lane saccis quatuor marce, vinique doliis tres solidi, et aliis mercis libris xij. denarii, singulariter et in singulis; et merito, quia virtutibus collaudando. A.D. 1415.

Ad cujus laudem ita quidam metricus scripsit:— Versus.

"Anglorum cuncta prece pauset plebs operosa.
Crispini luce victoria sit speciosa;
Qua de Francigenis acies ruit invidiosa,
Cui fit Angligena probitas quasi ridiculosa;
Ridiculosa tibi, Francorum gens odiosa,
Fit vota, qua nostri regis stat mens animosa.
Mens animosa sibi datur, et tibi desidiosa.
Desuper hec dantur. Laus, Christe, tibi preciosa.
Truditur artis opus; meat arte supersticiosa
Excors, lapsura mens haurit amara morosa."

Et in festo Sancti Bricii dissolvitur parliamentum.

Ad proximum extunc mensem Novembris, die decima nona, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londonie, sub magistro Henrico Chicheley, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, fit cleri convocacio, ad regis subsidium, quia rebus per hostem spoliati, causata. In qua, non obstante quod ad proximum Purificacionis festum una integra remaneat regi persolvenda decima, ut supra, due alie integre ad duo Sancti Martini in Yeme festa proxime futura, de beneficiis eciam non taxatis, x. librarum et ultra annuum valorem attingentibus, et per ordinarium in valore estimandis, regi conceduntur et decime. A qua tamen concessione presencium compilatoris instancia Wallie, quia per guerram depauperata, beneficia relevari causavit. Ambassiatoribus eciam cleri, in consilio apud Constanciam generali pro unione ecclesie existentibus, expensarum[1] conceditur et subsidium.

Dies Sancti Georgii, ab omni opere liberanda servili, ad instanciam regis in duplex prorogatur[2] festum.

[1] expensarum quia. MS. [2] prerogatur. MS.

A.D. 1415. Vicesimo tercio mensis Novembris die, anno Domini M^mo^ cccc^mo^ xv^to^, a Caleciis Londonias cum captis rex adveniens, ad unum miliare extra civitatem per clerum in processione, et ad quatuor miliaria in loco vocato Blakheth nobilium et civium per populum in equis, ac rubeo, cum capuciis partitis de albo et nigro ornatis, ad x. milia indutum, cordis cum tripudio suscipitur obviam. In ingressu pontis Londoniarum, unus gigantissimus armatus, ut alter Pallas, longitudine excedens muros, et cum lancia, ut altera Turni (cujus lancea idem Pallas, ad quatuor pedum cum dimidio longitudinis confossus vulnere, de quibus supra[1], vj° libro, capitulo xxj^mo^ in fine, periit), et cum una securi permaxima, eciam solo ejus flatu non solum ad nemora struendum, verum et ad excercitum cedendum; ac juxta eum ejus uxor, tam grossa quod, non solum ad generandum giganteos demones, verum eciam ad producendum infernales turres sua magnitudine apta, ultra portam cum armis regiis ejus statuuntur custodes. In medio pontis, ante ejus levabilem pontem, duo stant propugnacula, in quorum uno a dextris unus leo lanceatus, et in altero antelupus cum armis regis circumcollatus, et ultra pontem ymago sancti Georgii decenter armata, ad ipsius pontis custodiam statuuntur positi. Aquarum conductus, vino emanantes et preciose ornati, potare volentibus cedunt ad solacium. Ad crucem in medio Chepe de una parte in aliam, ecclesiam sancti Petri attingentem, triplicatum gradatumque ascensum, cum mira arte acierum cumque turribus et propugnaculis, regnique et ejus principum armis undique affixum, mira carpentariorum et pictorum arte tabulis confectum, ac grosso lineo variis porphiricis, marmoriis, et eburniis petrarum coloribus ad murorum, in quibus ita scribebatur, "Gloriosa dicta sunt de te, civitas Dei,"[2] apparenciam velatum, angelorum, cantorum et organorum

[1] *i. e.* in Higden's "Polychronicon," to which Adam's chronicle was added as a supplement.

[2] Ps. lxxxvj. 4.

modice plenum, mirifice statuitur. Ex cujus portis ferreis duos bassinos aureos auroque plenos regi oblatos vj. magnifici deferentes exeunt cives. Ad modum regi David post Golye cedem, obvium, juxta inferiorem conductum, cum choris et tympanis et phiolis aureis, triputando, cantantes occurrunt et virgines. Quid mora? Omni jocunditatis indumento perornatur civitas, et merito facta est magna leticia in populo. A.D. 1415.

Rex, ad Sanctum Paulum descendens, sanctam crucem, beati Erkynwaldi sepulcrum, ac summum altare cum magna devocione et oblacione visitat; inde ad Westmonasterium ibidem pransurus recedens; ac in crastino pro utriusque partis in bello defunctis per prelatos et clerum apud Sanctum Paulum solemnes exequias celebrari faciens.

Predictas de Harflu capcionem et de Agingcourt belli victoriam brevi hoc habeas versu:—

"Harflu fert Mauric Agincourt prelia Crispin;"[1]

et hoc, sub data, anno Domini millesimo cccc^{mo} xv^{to}, ex eodem versu: M. semel, c. ter, l. bis, et v. bis, et j. quinquies colligendo. Dicta sanctorum festa intulerunt prelia.

Moritur Owenus de Glyndor, post quatuor annos quibus a facie regis et regni latitasset; et sub noctis tempestate[2] per suos fautores sepelitur. Sed, per suos emulos funere detecto, sepulture restituitur. Sed ubi receptatus erat nesciri poterit.

Rex cum magna devocione ad fontem sancte Wenefrede in Northwalia et pedes a Salopia peregre proficiscitur. A.D. 1416.

Comes Dorsetie, capitaneus de Hareflut, cum quingentis personis exiens, insultum Francorum sibi obvium ad duo milia trucidavit et multos captivavit.

Marcii tercio die, apud Westmonasterium celebratur parliamentum, et in ecclesia Sancti Pauli convocacio, in quibus a clero et populo due decime et due quintedecime regi conceduntur subsidio.

[1] Elmham, "Liber Metricus," l. 579.

[2] tempeste. MS.

A.D. 1416. Sismundus, rex Hongarie et Romanorum, postquam per annum pro unione ecclesie in concilio generali Constancie laborasset, ac Johannem papam xxiij., Rome presedentem, propter suas fallacias carceribus mancipasset, regesque Castellie et totius Hispanie pro dicta unione visitasset, per regnum Francie in Angliam, pro regnorum pacis reformacione. Sed, cum ad magnas regni exspensas Londoniis stetisset, Francorum versucia negocio frustrato, ad concilium adiit Constancie.

Dirum sub duce Bedfordie, regis fratre, cum Francis navale committitur bellum: quorum plures captivantur cum eorum navibus in Angliam; sed eorum victualia ad Harflut transmittuntur.

Rex Romanorum predictus, in suo recessu ab Anglia, propriis manibus hujusmodi tenoris mittens sedulas dispersit per plateas:—

"Vale et gaude glorioso cum triumpho, o tu felix Anglia et benedicta,
Quia[1] quasi angelica natura, laude Christum adorans, es jure dicta[2].
Hanc tibi do laudem, quam recto jure mereris."[3]

Venit eciam in Angliam, pro dicte pacis confirmacione, dux Holandie; qui et, infecto negocio, cito post intoxicatus pericius veneno periit.

A.D. 1417. Anno sequenti parliamentum et convocacio, scilicet anno Domini millesimo cccc^{mo}. xvij^{o}., celebrantur Londoniis; ubi eciam in duabus decimis et totidem quintadecimis clerus collectantur et populus.

Et demum, de mense Maii apud Redyngam unito consilio, exiit edictum a Cesare, ut describeretur universus pecuniosorum orbis; et sic vocati cistas evacuarunt.

[1] que. MS. [2] benedicta. MS.

[3] Elmham, "Liber Metricus," l. 925. The words in the second line should be "angelica natura gloriosa laude Jesum adorans," the initial letters forming the word "Anglia."

Et sic dominus rex cum magno exercitu in Normanniam se direxit debellandam; Iberniensibus primitus de regno proscriptis. Rex in trancitu suo classem Francie sibi instantem[1] contrivit; tamen ad litus maris regis exercitus ventum prosperum exspectans patriam non modice in anona depressit. A.D. 1417.

Scoti in multitudine glomerata sub duce Albanie, ipsorum rege in mari prius capto captivo in Anglia existente, in fugam sunt coacti.

Rex in Normaniam applicans Cadomi, ubi Willelmus tumulatur conquestor, cum triginta duobus civitatibus, castris, villis, et fortaliciis, ad australem partem Secane sibi subjugavit. Sed ad opsidionem Valecie, incuria domini Talbot, ultra quingentos homines per capitaneum de Chirburow interemptos. Normanie spolia per totam Angliam exponuntur venalia.

Dominus Johannes Oldcastell, hereticus, sacramentum altaris, Beatam Virginem, et confessionem detestans, et regem et regnum pervertere sategens, post longum exilium in Powysya, per ejus dominum, ad sui magnam remuneracionem, capitur; et parliamento ac convocacioni, in quibus et due decime et quindecime in regis conceduntur subsidium, presentatus, decimo quarto die Decembris ad furcas cum cathena, post ejus tractum, suspenditur ferrea, ac feroci igne apposito ad semel et simul crematur, utriusque gladii penam merito persolvens.

Post triginta annorum sisma Christianitatis orbem, aliquando quatuor, aliquando tribus, aliquando duobus monstruose et dolenter presedentibus, disturbans, per omnes cardinales et nacionum procuratores Odo de Columpnis, nobilis Romanus et Gybylinus, tituli sancti Georgii ad velabrum[2] diaconus cardinalis, in festo Sancti Martini, inde et Martinus quintus dictus, unanimiter et miraculose, Spiritus Sancti instinctu, in papam eligitur.

In dicta convocacione ultima ad promocionem gradua-

[1] insiandem. MS. [2] velum aureum. MS.

A.D. 1417. torum spirituales sub Henrico Chycheley, archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, onerantur[1] patroni; qui et tunc eciam magistrum Johannem Chaundeler, Sarisburiensem, et, modicum ante, magistrum Edmundum Lacy, Herfordensem, ubi et responsalis fui, electos, primitus per eum confirmatos, et consecravit episcopos.

Rex cum juventute patrie ac sue fortitudine milicie in Normanniam rediit; ac magnam civitatem Rothomagencem cum tota patria, miseris Gallicis sibi resistere non audentibus, civium vita pro l. milibus libris auri redempta, xix°.

A.D. 1419. die Januarii, post laboriosas obsidiones et multos insultus, quam victoriose sibi subjugavit. Unde et Londoniis exultacionis cum tripidio solempnes processiones cleri et populi, a feretro sancti Erkenwaldi ad feretrum sancti Edwardi, [non] una vice sed omni die Mercurii et Veneris, per totam civitatem facte fuerant.

Item, dominus rex, cum juventute patrie, militariter et gloriose in Franciam ad ipsam subjugandam se direxit; quam infra biennium, cum villis, castris, et municionibus

A.D. 1420. quibuscumque, sibi subegit. Regem eciam et reginam, ac eorum filiam Katerinam, in uxorem sibi applicandam, et regnum post mortem patris, et omnes magnates regni sue subjecit dicioni. Unde heredem et regentem Francie in

A.D. 1421. suis se scribit literis. Ac inde, cum eadem uxore sua, in Angliam pro ejus coronacione reversus, fratrem suum, ducem Clarencie, sui in Francia locumtenentem dimisit. Set langor stomagi perturbat negotium; quia quidam reputatus filius regis Francie putativus, Dolfinus nominatus, et per reginam partus suppositus diffamatus, partem pro jure suo faciens, comites de Pentever et Armanak et nonnullos Scotos sibi aliciens, in vigilia Pasce, anno Domini M^mo^. cccc^mo^. vicesimo, xxiij°. die Marcii contingente, dictum ducem, cum sua falerata et armata comitiva, comitibus scilicet de Suthfolkia, Somerset, Huntindona, Kyme et Tangervile et aliis multis nobilibus, subito insultu, ad

[1] honorantur. MS.

magnum dolorem Anglie, cede magna trusidavit. Quam cedem comes Sarisburie, cum suis complicibus, pro custodia patrie dimissus, ferro et flamma crudeliter vindicavit et vindicat. Et, quam vindictam augmentaturus, dominus rex, quoscumque pecuniosos divites et pauperes per totum regnum dilaniando, fortissime in Franciam redire disponit. Sed, heu me!, valide persone et regni peccunie circa hoc negocium dilabuntur miserime. Et nemirum exaccionibus populi importabilibus hoc exigentibus, cum murmure et oculta maladiccione sed interna sequentibus et excessum detestantibus, utinam non sit[1] dominus meus suppremus gladii furoris Domini, cum Julio, cum Assuro, cum Alexandro, cum Ectore, cum Siro, cum Dario, cum Machabeo, finaliter particeps! Inde videat lector decretum xxiij. in questione quinta: "Remittuntur eis."[2] . . . . A.D. 1421.

[1] scit. MS.

[2] Decret. II., caus. xxiij., quest. v., c. xlix. The MS. ends with a few meaningless letters, as if the scribe could not read what he was copying.

THE CHRONICLE

OF

ADAM OF USK

THE CHRONICLE

OF

ADAM OF USK

Our gracious king Edward departing this life on the eve A.D. 1377.
of the Nativity of Saint John Baptist [1], in the fifty-second year of his reign, Richard, son of Edward, prince of Wales, the eldest son of king Edward—a boy of eleven years, and fair among men as another Absalom—came to the throne, and was crowned at Westminster on Saint Kenelm's day [2].

During this king Richard's reign great things were looked for. But he being of tender years, others, who had the care of him and his kingdom, did not cease to inflict on the land acts of wantonness, extortions, and unbearable wrongs. Whence sprang that unnatural deed, when the commons of A.D. 1381.
the land, and specially those of Kent and Essex, under their wretched leader Jack Straw [3], declaring that they could no longer bear such wrongs, and above all wrongs of taxes and subsidies, rose in overwhelming numbers against the lords and the king's officers, and, marching to London on the eve of Corpus Christi (12th June), in the year of Our Lord

[1] This date is not correct. Edward III. died on the Sunday next before the feast of the Nativity of St. John the Baptist, the 21st of June, 1377, not on the eve of the feast, the 23rd of the month; and in the fifty-first, not the fifty-second, year of his reign.

[2] More correctly, the eve of St. Kenelm, the 16th July.

[3] Wat Tyler is quite lost sight of. Knighton (Rolls series, ij. 137), in like manner, confuses the two men: "ductor eorum proprio nomine Watte Tyler, sed jam nomine mutato vocatus est Jakke Strawe."

A.D. 1381. 1381, struck off the heads of Simon Sudbury, archbishop of Canterbury, then the king's chancellor, sir Robert Hales, the treasurer, and many others, hard by the Tower of London. And on the places where these lords were beheaded there are set up to this day two marble crosses, a lasting memorial of so monstrous a deed.

p. 2. In this rising of the commons were many great men of the land in many places beheaded. The Savoy, the palace of the duke of Lancaster and the fairest in the kingdom, standing near London on the bank of Thames, was, from the commons' hatred of the duke, utterly destroyed by them with fire; and the duke himself, for fear of them, fled into Scotland[1]. To appease them and to quiet their fury, the king granted that the state of villeinage, as well in their persons as in their labour, should be henceforth done away, freedom fully given, and all prisoners set at large. And this he commanded and made to be openly proclaimed throughout the counties of the kingdom. And then what a throe of grief passed through the desolated land! For they boasted that they would slay all those of higher birth, would raise up king and lords from among themselves, would stablish new laws, and, in a word, would make new, or rather disfigure, the face and estate of the whole island. Then every man struck off the head of his enemy, and despoiled his richer neighbour. But, by the mercy of God, when their leader, being in Smithfield near London, doffed not his hood before the king nor in anything did reverence to the king's majesty, his head was deftly struck off, in the very midst of his flock of kites, by sir William Walworth,

[1] John of Gaunt was at this time in the north, negotiating a truce with Scotland. Knighton (ij. 143–7) tells us that so unpopular was his name that his duchess was refused admission into his own castle at Pontefract, and that he himself was denied hospitality by the earl of Northumberland; and that it was reported that a large force of the insurgents was sent north in pursuit of him. He retired to Edinburgh on a safe-conduct from the Scots, by whom he was well entertained.

knight and citizen of London; and straightway, being raised on the point of a sword, it was shown before them. Then the commons in sore dread sought flight by stealth, and there and then casting away their rebellious weapons, as though unguilty of such riot and wickedness, like foxes into their holes, they pitifully crept home. But the king and the lords pursued them, and some they made to be dragged behind horses, some they slew with the sword, some they hanged on the gallows, some they quartered; and they destroyed thousands [1]. A.D. 1381.

In this same year there came into England one Pileus [2], cardinal priest of Saint Praxedes, to treat, on behalf of the emperor of Germany and king of Bohemia, with the council of England of and about a marriage between our king and the lady Ann, sister of the same emperor [3]; who afterwards became thereby our most gracious queen, howbeit she died without issue. At his coming, this cardinal, falsely feigning himself legate *a latere* and as having the power of the pope, then did exercise the papal offices. And among other things he made me notary, though to no p. 3.

[1] The severity of the punishments inflicted after the suppression of the outbreak is fully set forth in the pages of Walsingham's History. Richard, however, interfered to prevent indiscriminate slaughter of the insurgents when first beaten in the field.—Wals. *Hist. Angl.* (Rolls series), i. 466.

[2] Pileo di Prata, bishop of Padua, and, in 1370, archbishop of Ravenna. He was one of the papal legates employed, at Bruges, in negotiating a peace between England and France, in 1375. At the papal schism, in 1378, he threw in his lot with Urban VI., by whom he was made cardinal, and was sent nuncio to Germany. In 1386, he seceded to Clement VII., who employed him in an unsuccessful attempt to break the power of Urban in Florence. But three years after, on the death of Urban, he deserted Clement for Boniface IX., who made him cardinal bishop of Tusculum. By these agile changes he got the nickname of "Cardinalis trium Pileorum," the Cardinal of Three Hats. He was further appointed legate at Viterbo; but he exasperated the people to such a degree that they drove him out. He died in 1401.—Ciaconius, *Vitæ Pont. Rom.* ij. 637.

[3] Wenceslaus, or Wenzel, emperor of Germany, 1378.

A.D. 1381. purpose, in the house of the friars preachers of London, where he was then dwelling. Thus did he gather to himself countless money, and, the treaty of marriage being settled, he departed from England with his gains, to his own condemnation; idly trusting that the pope would
A.D. 1382. approve these his acts. And, after his departure, the said lady Ann was bought for a great price by our lord the king, for she was much sought in marriage by the king of France[1]; and she was then sent over into England to be crowned queen.

According to the saying of Solomon: "Woe to thee, O land, when thy king is a child,"[2] in the time of the youth of the same Richard many misfortunes, both caused thereby and happening therefrom, ceased not to harass the kingdom of England, as has been before said and as will hereinafter more fully appear, even to the great disorder of the state and to the last undoing of king Richard himself and of those who too fondly clung to him. Amongst all other misfortunes, nay, amongst the most wicked of all wicked things, even errors and heresies in the catholic faith, England, and above all London and Bristol[3], stood corrupted, being infected by the seeds which one master John Wycliffe

[1] This is not stated by the other chroniclers. The idea was no doubt suggested by the intention of the king of France, Charles V., to waylay and capture her on the sea, out of hostility to England. He desisted on the remonstrance of Ann's uncle, the duke of Brabant. Ann landed in England on the 18th December, 1381, and was married on the 14th January, 1382. Knighton (ij. 150) says:—"dedit imperatori, ut dicebatur, pro maritagio decem mille libras, præter alias expensas in quærendo eam et adducendo eam sumptibus suis propriis."

[2] Eccles. x. 16.

[3] Adam of Usk, as a native of Monmouthshire, would naturally take an interest in what went on in the neighbouring city of Bristol. John Purvey, Wycliffe's follower and part-translator of the Bible, preached there; and it is not improbable that Wycliffe himself also did so, as, in 1375, he was presented by Edward III. to the prebend of Aust, in the collegiate church of Westbury-on-Trym.—Seyer, *Memoirs of Bristol*, ij. 164.

sowed, polluting as it were the faith with the tares of his baleful teaching. And the followers of this master John, like Mahomet, by preaching things pleasing to the powerful and the rich, namely, that the withholding of tithes and even of offerings and the reaving of temporal goods from the clergy were praiseworthy, and, to the young, that self-indulgence was a virtue, most wickedly did sow the seed of murder, snares, strife, variance, and discords, which last unto this day, and which, I fear, will last even to the undoing of the kingdom. Whence, in many parts of the land, and above all in London and in Bristol, they, like the Jews at Mount Horeb on account of the molten calf (Exodus xxxij.), turning against each other, righteously had to grieve for three-and-twenty thousand of their fellows who suffered a miserable fate[1]. The people of England, wrangling about the old faith and the new, are every day, as it were, on the very point of bringing down upon their own heads rebellion and ruin. And I fear that in the end it will happen as once it did, when many citizens of London true to the faith rose against the duke of Lancaster to slay him, because he favoured the said master John, so that, hurrying from his table into a boat hastily provided, he fled across Thames and hardly escaped with his life[2]. Such errors and heresies grew in the city of London to so great a height (seeing that from such cause spring strife and variance), that, when such as were accused thereof came to answer before their ordinaries, the people were wont

A.D. 1382.

p. 4.

[1] The round number of 23,000 may be intended to represent the total of sufferers down to the time when the chronicle was finished, that is, towards the close of the reign of Henry V.

[2] In February, 1377, when Wycliffe appeared in St. Paul's to answer the charges brought against him. A quarrel arising between the duke of Lancaster, who was present as a supporter of Wycliffe, and William Courtenay, bishop of London, the duke made use of violent language, which roused the anger of the Londoners, who attacked the Savoy and would have done the duke mischief, had he not escaped by boat on the Thames.—Walsingham, *Hist.* i. 325; *Archæolog.* xxij. 256; *Chronicon Angliæ*, 1328–1388 (Rolls series), 119, 397.

A.D. 1382. to run together in thousands, some accusing, others defending, them, with clamour and strife, as if they were just rushing at each other's throats [1]. So great, too, grew their malice, that, at the time of the second parliament of king Henry the fifth, hereinafter written, these Lollards, flocking to London from all parts of the land, thought to have utterly destroyed the clergy there at that time assembled [2]. But my lord of Canterbury, forewarned of their evil design, found fitting remedies, as will hereinafter be told.

A.D. 1386. Owing to the many ill-starred crises of king Richard's reign, which were caused by his youth, a solemn parliament was holden at Westminster, wherein twelve of the chief men of the land were advanced, by full provision of parliament, to the government of the king and the kingdom, in order to bridle the wantonness and extravagance of his servants and flatterers, and, in short, to reform the business of the realm; but alas! only to lead to the weary deeds which are hereinafter written [3].

[1] Compare the passage in Walsingham: "Insuper nec illud esse silendum æstimo, cum episcopi prædicti cum isto schismatico in capella archiepiscopi apud Lambhith convenissent, non dico cives tantum Londonienses, sed viles ipsius civitatis, se impudenter ingerere præsumpserunt in eandem capellam, et verba facere pro eodem, et istud negotium impedire."—*Hist. Angl.* i. 356, ij. 65.

[2] The MS. reads "Henrici quarti," but this is a clerical blunder, The gathering in St. Giles's-fields, under sir John Oldcastle, is referred to. But Adam is not accurate: the actual date of the rising was in January, while Henry the fifth's second parliament, which was held at Leicester, did not meet till April, 1414. See below, p. 300.

[3] The actual number of the commissioners appointed by the Wonderful Parliament of 1386 was eleven, or fourteen if the three principal officers of state be included. The eleven were: the archbishops of Canterbury and York, the dukes of York and Gloucester, the bishops of Winchester and Exeter, the abbot of Waltham, the earl of Arundel, John de Cobham, Richard le Scrope, and John Devereux. Thomas Arundel, bishop of Ely, had replaced Michael de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, as chancellor; John Gilbert, bishop of Hereford, was treasurer; and John de Waltham, keeper of the privy seal. It will be remembered that John of Gaunt was at this time in Spain, as a reason for his name not appearing on the commission.

The king, bearing it ill that by this appointment the due freedom of his majesty should be bridled by his own lieges, and urged by his servants who were angered that their evil gains were thereby prevented, ceased not to thwart those who were thus set in authority, till the end came in the destruction of the king himself, his abettors, and many of these same rulers. And from thence alas! what griefs and weary deeds followed, and specially concerning the death of those nobles, the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel, it will appear more fully hereafter. To proceed: those who thus urged on the king, in order to the sudden suppression of the twelve rulers, planned that a general council should be holden in the Tower of London, wherein they thought suddenly and at one blow, by means of an ambush of armed men, to destroy the twelve when summoned to the council. But the Almighty disposed the twelve, being forewarned of that wicked design, to come in such strength that the king and his abettors, disordered by their warlike preparation, feared that the kingdom would rise in their favour. Wherefore a peace was made, though a hollow one. Hearing this, our lady the princess, the mother of the king, with heavy grief in her heart, and not sparing to toil on even by night, hastened from Wallingford to London, to allay the discord. And on her knees she prayed the king, her son, as he looked for her blessing, in no wise to bend to the wishes of flatterers, and specially of those who were now urging him on; otherwise he would bring down her curse upon him. But the king with reverence raised her up and promised that he would willingly be guided by the counsel of the twelve. To whom his mother replied: "At thy coronation, my son, I rejoiced that it had fallen to my lot to be the mother of an anointed king; but now I grieve, for I foresee the fall which threatens thee, the work of accursed flatterers." Then the king passed with his mother to Westminster Hall, and there, seated on his throne of state, by her mediation,

A.D. 1387.

p. 5.

A.D. 1387. made his peace with the twelve guardians; yet did he it falsely and with deceit [1].

Soon afterwards, the earl of Oxford [2] went with royal letters into the county of Chester, and led back with him a great armed power of the men of those parts, for the destruction of the twelve. But the duke of Gloucester and

[1] Adam has here mixed up several events in confusion. He tells us further on that we must not read this earlier part of his chronicle as consecutive history; and the hint is wanted nowhere more than in this his account of Richard's attempt to cast off the thraldom in which the Wonderful Parliament had placed him. The stories of plots laid by Richard for the destruction of his enemies are so many, and told in so many different ways in the chronicles, that some confusion in the mind of the writer may be pardoned. Knighton (ij. 216) first reports the rumour that the king, who had retired to Eltham on the meeting of the parliament, in 1386, designed to assassinate a deputation of forty of the members whom he had summoned to appear before him. Walsingham (ij. 150) records a plot to invite the duke of Gloucester and the parliamentary opponents of the earl of Suffolk to a banquet in the city, and there slay them. The Monk of Evesham (75) repeats this story, adding, "Michael statuit (ne dicam, hoc esse regis commentum)." The commons themselves, in their petition against the duke of Ireland's party, refer to some such design, saying that the traitors "firent que nostre seigneur le Roi commanda a Meire de Loundre de faire sudeinement lever un graunt poare de gentz de Loundre, d'occire et mettre au mort touz les ditz seigneurs et communs horpris ceux qui furrunt de lour coveine" (*Rot. Parl.* iij. 231, art. 15). Again, in 1387, after the council of Nottingham, when the revolted lords were invited by Richard to a conference at Westminster, they advanced with extreme caution on the report of an ambush in the Mews (Wals. ij. 165; Mon. Evesh. 91; Knighton, ij. 248). Unfortunately for the story of the intervention of the princess of Wales, that lady had already died in 1385. However, the fact remains that, not long before her death, she did undertake a fatiguing journey to reconcile Richard with his uncle, the duke of Lancaster; though the words which are placed in her mouth by our chronicler are not recorded elsewhere (Wals. ij. 126; Mon. Evesh. 60).

[2] Robert de Vere, earl of Oxford, created successively marquess of Dublin and duke of Ireland. He was killed while hunting at Louvain, in 1392. Richard had his body brought to England, and opened the coffin in order to gaze upon the dead features of his favourite. The earl was buried with great honours at Colne priory in Essex.

the earls of Derby, Arundel, Nottingham, and Warwick, A.D. 1387.
were forewarned thereof, and arrayed in a glorious host,
before the men of Chester could reach the king, they routed p. 6.
the earl's army on the eve of Saint Thomas the Apostle
(20th December), at Radcot-bridge in Oxfordshire. And
the earl himself they drove in flight beyond hope of
return; for he died beyond seas. Then, too, fled before the
face of the lords Alexander Nevill, archbishop of York, and
the lord Michael de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, the king's chief
councillors; and they came not back, but died in exile [1].

At that time, I, the writer of this chronicle, was at
Oxford, an "extraordinary" in canon law, and I saw the
host of the five lords march through the city on their way
to London from the battle-field; whereof the earls of
Warwick and Derby led the van, the duke of Gloucester
the main body, and the earls of Arundel and Nottingham
the rear.

The mayor of London, hearing of their coming, sent forth
to them the keys of the city; and thereafter those same
five lords did, on the feast of Saint John the Evangelist
(27th December), blockade the Tower [2] of London till it
yielded; then straightway they placed the king, who lay A.D. 1388.
therein, under new governance, and delivered his fawning
councillors into divers prisons until the next following
parliament [2]. On the morrow of the Purification of Our

[1] Alexander Nevill, archbishop of York, on his attainder, was translated by pope Urban to the see of St. Andrew's. This dignity was, however, worth no more than a bishopric *in partibus*, as Scotland followed Clement VII. The archbishop showed his wisdom by retiring to a small cure at Louvain, where he died in 1392.

Suffolk went first to Holland, but was afterwards invited to Paris, where he died in 1389. Walsingham (ij. 187) cannot find words bad enough for this able minister of Richard II. A good sketch of his administration, viewed in a favourable light, will be found in the work of M. Wallon, *Richard II.* (Paris, 1864).

[2] The confederate lords entered London on the 26th December, and immediately invested the Tower. Richard submitted, and summoned parliament to meet on the 3rd February.

A.D. 1388. Lady (3rd February), they declared exiles those who had fled, and they banished into Ireland all the king's justices, for that they had knowledge of the imagining of the death of the lords, as above written, and also the king's confessor, the bishop of Chichester[1]. Others who had wrongfully fostered the king's unruliness, if not the causers thereof, namely, sir Simon Burley, chamberlain, sir Robert Tresilian, chief justice, Nicholas Brembre, mayor of London, sir John Berners and sir John Salisbury, knights, and Thomas Usk and John Blake, esquires, and very many others were beheaded[2].

A.D. 1383. p. 7. In this king's reign, on account of the papal schism, the bishop of Norwich[3] crossed over into Flanders with a

[1] The judges who had taken a part in the council of Nottingham were—sir Robert de Belknap, chief justice of the Common Pleas; sir Robert de Fulthorp, sir John Holt, and sir William Burgh, puisne judges of the same; sir John Cary, junior baron of the Exchequer; and with them, John Lokton, serjeant-at-law. Belknap and Holt were banished to Drogheda, Fulthorp and Burgh to Dublin, Cary and Lokton to Waterford. Thomas Rushook, bishop of Chichester and the king's confessor, was sent to Cork.—Rymer, *Fœdera*, 8th and 13th July, 1388.

[2] The execution of sir Simon Burley, the retainer of the Black Prince and Richard's tutor, which was carried out in spite of all the king's efforts to save him, made an impression on Richard's mind which goes far to account for the fierceness with which he attacked his enemies in the parliament of 1397. Berners and Salisbury (as well as sir John Beauchamp, who was also executed) were of the royal household. Thomas Usk had been appointed under-sheriff of Middlesex, with the view of influencing the elections to parliament; and John Blake had been commissioned to draw the bill of indictment which Richard, had he not been forestalled, would have brought forward against the confederate lords, in 1387, after the council of Nottingham. Usk has recently risen into a more interesting position than that which he holds in history, having been identified as the author of "The Testament of Love," a work which has been wrongly attributed to Chaucer. (*Dict. Nat. Biogr.* lviij. 60; Skeat, *Chaucerian and other Pieces*, 1897.)

[3] Henry Spencer or Despencer, the warlike bishop of Norwich, had fought in his youth for pope Adrian against Bernabo Visconti of Milan, and received for his reward the see of Norwich in 1370. But "vulpis pilum mutat, non animum," and the bishop did not lose his

crusade, and there he destroyed in warfare some nine thousand men of that land who sided with the French heretics; but he was forced to withdraw thence and to return to his own country by the power of the king of France and his army, many of the English then dying of the flux. A.D. 1383.

The duke of Lancaster also, claiming the kingdom of Spain in right of his wife, sailed to that country two years after, with another crusade; and there he lost by the same sickness many of the nobles of the realm of England, and, I may say, the flower of its youthful chivalry. Yet he made peace with the king of Spain, receiving a duchy for the term of his life, and a large sum of gold for his outlay, and giving his daughter in marriage to the king's eldest son; and so he returned to England [1]. A.D. 1386–1388.

In these days there happened at Oxford a grave misfortune. For, during two whole years was there great strife between the men of the south and the men of Wales on the one side and the northerners on the other. Whence arose broils, quarrels, and ofttimes loss of life. In the first year the northerners were driven clean away from the university. And they laid their expulsion chiefly to my charge. But in the second year, in an evil hour, coming back to Oxford, they gathered by night, and denying us passage from our quarters by force of arms, for two days they strove sorely against us, breaking and plundering some of the halls of our side, and slaying certain of our men. Howbeit, on the third day our party, bravely A.D. 1388, 1389.

taste for fighting. He was distinguished at the time of Wat Tyler's rebellion for the vigour with which he repressed the uprising in his diocese: defeating, shriving, and executing the rebels with great zeal. His crusade in Flanders got him into trouble, for he had to pay the penalty of failure by the loss of his temporalities, which were, however, afterwards restored.—Godwin, *De Præsul. Angl.*

[1] There is no mention of the duchy in the other chronicles. By the terms of the treaty, Catherine of Lancaster married Henry, prince of the Asturias, in 1393. The duke received the sum of 200,000 crowns and a pension for the lives of himself and his duchess.

A.D. 1388, 1389. strengthened by the help of Merton Hall, forced our adversaries shamefully to fly from the public streets, which for the two days they had held as a camp, and to take refuge in their own quarters. In short, we could not be quieted before many of our number had been indicted for felonious riot; and amongst them I, who am now writing, was indicted, as the chief leader and abettor of the Welsh, and perhaps not unrighteously. And so indicted we were hardly acquitted, being tried by jury before the king's judge [1]. From that day forth I feared the king, hitherto
p. 8. unknown to me in his power, and his laws, and I put hooks into my jaws [2].

A.D. 1379. Again, another misfortune happened. For that noble knight, sir John Arundel, being sent forth against the land

[1] Anthony Wood, following the account given by Knighton, says:—"On the third of the Cal. of May (1388), arose a grievous discord among the scholars of Oxon, that is to say between the southern and Welsh on the one part, and the northern scholars on the other, and in very short time did it so much increase that the scholars for the most part (after several had been slain) departed to their respective counties." And again, under the year 1389, he tells us of a second outbreak of the rioting, in Lent, which was quelled by the intervention of the duke of Gloucester. "But," he continues, "you shall have from a certain inquisition taken by a jury that was appointed on purpose to take an account of the matter:—On Thursday in the fourth week of Lent, 12 Rich. II. (which is this year), Thomas Speeke, chaplain, and John Kirkby with a multitude of other malefactors, appointing captains among them, rose up against the peace of the king, and sought after all the Welshmen abiding and studying in Oxford, shooting arrows after them in divers streets and lanes as they went, crying out 'War, war, war, sle, sle, sle the Welsh doggys and her whelpys, and ho so loketh out of his howse, he shall in good southe be dead,' &c., and certain persons they slew and others they grievously wounded, and some of the Welshmen who bowed their knees to abjure the town, they the northern scholars led to the gates," and dismissed them with certain indignities not to be repeated to ears polite. The inquisition further gives the names of the different halls which were broken into, and of the Welsh scholars who were robbed of their books and other chattels, including in some instances their harps.—*Hist. and Antiqq. of the Univ. of Oxford* (ed. Gutch, 1792-6) i., 518.

[2] Ezek. xxix. 4; xxxviij. 4.

of France to subdue it, with the flower of the youth of the country, had his fleet shattered alas! by an unhappy storm on Saint Nicholas' eve (5th December), and perished[1]. The cause of his mischance was not unrighteously found in the taxes wrung from the clergy and the people. A.D. 1379.

Ever from the time of such levying of tribute, called tax, do I remember the kingdom to have suffered misfortunes either from internal slaughter or foreign treachery. Was it not so when the earl of Pembroke, carrying with him the tax levied to subdue France, was plundered with his men near Rochelle, and carried captive into Spain? The same befell king Edward, who, after taxing the clergy and the people, strove to invade France with a mighty host; but the winds were against him, and, though for six months long he lay near the shore awaiting their favour, he returned unprofitably with his army, as is told above in this volume[2]. See what says the prophecy of Bridlington against the tax:— A.D. 1372.

"While reigneth tax, large grace shall not abound;
So work begun shall foolish fall to ground."[3]

And thus alas! it is known to fall. Further, there fled before the face of this king Richard that most perfect man, A.D. 1385.

[1] Sir John Arundel, of Lanherne, was in command of an expedition in aid of the duke of Brittany, and repulsed the French fleet off the coast of Cornwall. He was afterwards wrecked and drowned on the Irish coast. Walsingham (i. 418–25) attributes the disaster to divine vengeance for an outrage on a nunnery at Southampton. Arundel appears to have been one of the fops of the period. In his ship were fifty-two suits of clothes: "pro proprio corpore novos apparatus, vel aureos vel auro textos."

[2] The passage in the "Polychronicon" here referred to, is as follows:—"Eodem anno, rex Edwardus cum magno exercitu mare intravit, ad removendum obsidionem de Rochell; sed ventus contrarius non permisit eum longius a terra recedere. Quare aliquamdiu prope litus maris commorans ventum prosperum expectavit; sed nondum venit. Demum cum suis ad terram veniens, illico ventus ad partes oppositas se convertit." Walsingham (i. 315) has nearly the same words.

[3] The prophecy of John of Bridlington is a political review of the reign of Edward III., compiled in the form of an ancient text with

A.D. 1385. William Courtney, archbishop of Canterbury, for that he was ready to stand up against such tax; and, pursued on Thames by the same king, he fled for his life in the garb of a monk, and sought safety in the parts of Devon[1]. Yet did they who were the movers of this persecution by the king die an evil death, of whom we have heard above, to wit sir Simon Burley and others.

Thus far, good reader, set not in order of years such things as have been told; for what I saw and heard I stored up in my memory, rather with regard to the truth of the event than to the time when it took place.

A.D. 1394. p. 9. In the year of our Lord 1394, on Whitsun-day (7th June), died that most gracious lady Ann, queen of England, at the

a recent commentary. The author was supposed to have been John, prior of Bridlington, who died early in the reign of Richard II. In some MSS. the work is ascribed to John Ergome; but who he was does not appear. It is dedicated to Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford and constable of England, 1361–1372, and was probably written about the year 1370. Its popularity is shown by the frequency of quotations from it by the writers of the fifteenth century, among whom Adam of Usk is not the most backward. As a specimen of the work: the passage quoted above, which more correctly is "Dum multat taxa non fiet gratia laxa. Sic opus inceptum laxum patietur ineptum" (dist. iij. cap. 2), has this commentary—"*Dum multat taxa*, id est, dum recipit taxam et exactiones de regno, *gratia non fiet laxa* sibi et larga, sed deficiet, et sic *opus inceptum* et *laxum* quod fuit de captione regis Francie, quando nos habuimus inceptionem et latam viam ad conquerendum regnum Franciæ, *patietur ineptum*, id est, deficiet seu destruetur."—T. Wright, *Political Poems and Songs* (Rolls series), i. 183.

[1] William Courtenay, successively bishop of Hereford and London, and archbishop of Canterbury, was son of Hugh, earl of Devon. Walsingham, under the year 1385, tells us of the archbishop's opposition to a tax being imposed upon the clergy; but on this occasion the king acted with him as against the designs of the nobles upon the possessions of the church. Earlier in the year, however, there was a quarrel between the king and archbishop, according to Walsingham, "ob leves occasiones" (ij. 128), when the latter was threatened with deprivation of temporalities. The Monk of Evesham (57) gives as the cause of his disgrace the king's anger at his remonstrance against bad government, and adds that the archbishop had to hide himself. Has our chronicler confused the two events?

manor of Shene, which lies on Thames near to Brentford. A.D. 1394.
Which manor, though a royal one and very fair, did king Richard, by reason that that lady's death happened therein, command and cause to be utterly destroyed. After the ceremony of her funeral, which was carried out with becoming honours on the morrow of Saint Peter ad Vincula (2nd August), the king, clad, with his train, in weeds of mourning, straightway passed over into Ireland with a great power, to subdue the rebellion of the Irish[1]. Yet he gained but little; for the Irish, then feigning submission to his will, straightway after his departure were in revolt, as all men know.

The next year, at the end of May, the king returned to A.D. 1395.
England, landing at Bristol; and forthwith he sent envoys into France to contract his second marriage, of which more anon. And so, a matter for wonder, he took to wife a child A.D. 1396.
not yet seven years old, rejecting the daughter and heiress of the king of Aragon, though very fair and of marriageable years[2]. But why he chose this young child,—and though a child she was married to him at Calais with much outlay of money and show—they say was that, eager to pour forth his pent-up venom, he thought by help and favour of the king of France to destroy his enemies. Yet this in the end turned to the ruin of himself and his confederates, as will afterwards appear[3].

[1] Richard sailed for Ireland early in September, 1394, and returned in May of the next year.

[2] The actual age of Isabella of France was eight years. The marriage took place at Calais, on the 1st November, 1396. The daughter of the king of Aragon, referred to above, appears to have been Yolande, daughter of John I. She married, in 1400, Louis II., titular king of Naples and count of Provence, and thus became grandmother to Margaret of Anjou, the wife of Henry VI.

[3] The surrender by Richard, in 1393 and 1397, of Cherbourg and Brest, which were held in pawn of the king of Navarre and duke of Brittany, was most distasteful to the English. Men recalled the conquests of Edward III. and their speedy loss, and had come to look upon even the giving up of towns held in pledge as a national wrong. This, added to the French marriage, gave rise to various rumours of

A.D. 1397. A parliament was holden in London, at Westminster, on Saint Lambert's day (17th September), a Monday, in the year of our Lord 1397; in which parliament I, the writer of this chronicle, was present every day[1].

In the first place, a speech, in the form of a sermon[2], was made by Edmund Stafford, bishop of Exeter, then chancellor, wherein he kept his discourse to the one point: that the power of the king lay singly and wholly in the king, and that they who usurped or plotted against it were worthy of the penalties of the law. Wherefore, to this end was it ordained of parliament: first, to enquire after those who molest the power of the king and his royalty; secondly,
p. 10. what penalties such molesters shall receive; thirdly, that things be so ordered that henceforth such molesting do not ensue. And straightway the king bade the commons that then and there, before their departure, they agree upon a speaker, and present him on the morrow, at eight of the clock. The king also made proclaim his grace to all who might be among the aforesaid offenders, only excepting fifty[3] persons and certain others to be impeached in this parliament, provided that they sued out in effect their

Richard's designs in favour of the French: among others, that Calais, too, was to be handed over to them. See the story of Richard's quarrel, on this score, with the duke of Gloucester, as told in the *Chronique de la Traïson et Mort de Richart II.*, ed. B. Williams (English Hist. Soc.), 1846.

[1] It will be seen that the account of the proceedings of the parliament as given by our author is nearly the same as that found in the pages of the Monk of Evesham. One or two passages are given more correctly in this text. Whether the one copied from the other, or both from the same source, is not very material. But it is of importance to notice that Adam was present during the session, and that therefore the story which he tells may be looked upon as a true one.

[2] The text was from Ezekiel xxxvij. 22, "One king shall be king to them all."—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 347.

[3] By a confusion of the abbreviation of l. for *quinquaginta*, and t. for *vel*, Hearne, in his edition of the Monk of Evesham's Life of Richard, has erroneously printed *vel* in this place. Otterbourne has the correct reading.

letters of pardon before Saint Hilary. He caused, too, A.D. 1397.
proclamation to be made that no man henceforth carry arms of offence or defence in parliament, save only our lord the king's own retinue.

On the Tuesday (18th September), sir John Bushy [1] was by the commons presented to the king their speaker in parliament, he making first due declaration; and the king accepted him.

Then straightway spake he thus before the king: "In that, my lord the king, we are bound by your dread command to make known to your royal highness who they be who transgressed against your majesty and royalty, we say that Thomas, duke of Gloucester, and Richard, earl of Arundel, did, in the tenth year of your reign, traitorously force you, by means of him who is now archbishop of Canterbury [2], and who was then chancellor, thereby doing you grievous wrongs, to grant to them a commission to govern your kingdom and to order its estate, to the prejudice of your majesty and royalty."

Also, the same day, that same commission was made of none effect, with all and every the acts thereon depending or thereby caused.

Also, a general pardon, granted after the great parliament by their means, and a special pardon granted to the earl of Arundel were recalled [3]. It was also prayed by the

[1] Bushy had been first elected speaker of the commons in 1394.

[2] Thomas Fitzalan, also called Arundel, was the third son of Richard, ninth earl of Arundel. He had been made bishop of Ely, in 1374, when in his twenty-second year, was translated to York in 1388, and to Canterbury in 1396. He was banished by the present parliament of 1397, and received from the pope translation to the see of St. Andrew's *in partibus infidelium*, the same appointment which had been conferred upon Alexander Nevill, his predecessor at York. He was restored to Canterbury on Henry's accession, and lived to the year 1413.

[3] This special pardon had been granted to the earl of Arundel on the 30th of April, 1394, and was the more binding on Richard as it was granted at a time when he was his own master and entirely free from coercion.

A.D. 1397. commons, still by the mouth of their speaker, that, whereas that special pardon had been gotten for a traitor by
p. 11. Thomas Arundel, archbishop of Canterbury, then chancellor of England, he, the procurer of the same, who should rather by virtue of his office have been against it, should be declared a traitor. And the archbishop rose up, wishing to make answer; but the king said: "To-morrow." But thenceforth he appeared not there again. The king also said, as to this petition, that he would take counsel.

Also, it was decreed that any man henceforth convicted of acting against the government of our lord the king should be declared a false traitor, and the fitting punishment of treason be awarded to him. Also, it was decreed, with assent of the prelates, that criminal charges henceforth be determined without their agreement, in every parliament. And then having leave they withdrew.

Then there was, as is wont to be, some bustle. And thereupon the king's archers, who, to the number of four thousand, surrounded the parliament-house, which was set up to this end in the middle of the palace-yard [1], thought that some quarrel or strife had arisen in the house; and, bending their bows, they drew their arrows to the ear, to the great terror of all who were there; but the king quieted them [2].

On the Wednesday (19th September), the same statute of the prelates was repealed; and they were bidden, under pain of loss of temporalities, to the stablishing of what

[1] This parliament was held in a building specially set up for the purpose. "Fecerat autem rex ante istud parliamentum in medio palacii apud Westmonasterium, unam aulam inter turrim et hostium magnæ aulæ situatam, ad judicia sua ibidem exercenda. In qua gloriosius et solemnius sedebat quam unquam aliquis rex istius regni residere consuevit. Quam quidem aulam mox, finito parliamento, prosterni fecit et penitus inde asportari."—Mon. Evesh. 131. See also an account of the building in *Annales Ric. II.* printed with the chronicle of J. de Trokelowe, ed. H. T. Riley (Rolls series), 209; and in Otterbourne's Chronicle, 191.

[2] The Monk of Evesham (134) improves upon this account by adding that the archers began to shoot.

should be done in the same parliament, on that very day A.D. 1397.
to agree upon one who should be their attorney to consent in their name to all that should be brought to pass in that parliament.

The king also spake these words: "Sir John Bushy, forasmuch as many ask me to disclose those fifty persons who are excepted in the general pardon, I simply will not; and whosoever asks it is worthy of death[1]. First, because they would flee; secondly, because I have also excepted those who shall be impeached in this parliament; thirdly, because, by naming them, others, their fellows, would fear, when there should be no need for fear."

On the Thursday (20th September), my lord of Canterbury came to the palace on his way to parliament; but the king sent him word, by the bishop of Carlisle[2], that he should withdraw to his lodging, which was done; and thenceforth he appeared not.

The prelates made sir Thomas Percy[3], the king's seneschal, p. 12.
their attorney, with clauses of stipulations, to agree to all that should be done in parliament.

Also, sir John Bushy spake as follows: "My lord the king, forasmuch as the second article of this parliament is concerning the pains to be laid on such as do violence to your royalty, I beseech you that you deign to give me

[1] This sentence is given in the Monk of Evesham's work in a mutilated form, from which no sense can be extracted.

[2] Thomas Merke.

[3] Thomas Percy, brother of Henry Percy, earl of Northumberland, created earl of Worcester at the close of this session, 29th September, 1397. He was born about 1344, and served in the campaigns of Edward's and Richard's reigns, both by land and sea. He became seneschal of the household in 1393. He was admiral of the fleet for Ireland in 1399, and accompanied the king thither, and returned with him to Milford. By some of the chroniclers he is accused of having then deserted to Henry; at any rate he was present in the parliament which approved Richard's deposition, and was taken into favour by Henry. He joined the revolt of the Percys, and was beheaded after the battle of Shrewsbury.

A.D. 1397. authority, by way of appeal, accusation, or impeachment, with leave to change from one to the other, as often as or whenever it shall unto me seem good and to my fellows." And so was it done. Then Bushy spake again: "I accuse Thomas Arundel, archbishop of Canterbury, of threefold treason. First, of the commission of government of your kingdom, treasonably granted to him, to Thomas, duke of Gloucester, and to Richard, earl of Arundel, at his instance and through him, who ought rather, by reason of his office, in that he was at that time your chancellor, to have withstood it. Secondly, that under veil of that traitorous commission, treacherously usurping the legal authority of your royalty, they did treasonably hold a solemn parliament to the prejudice of your royalty. Thirdly, that by such treacherous usurpation sir Simon de Burley and sir James Berners, knights and your faithful lieges, were traitorously done to death. Wherefore we, your commons, pray that a fitting judgement for so great treasons be by you issued against him. And seeing that the same archbishop is a man of great kindred, alliance, and wealth, and of a most cunning and cruel nature, I pray, for the salvation of your estate and of all your realm, as well as for the despatch of this present parliament, that he be set in safe keeping until the last fulfilment of his judgement." The king thereto answered that, on account of the high station of so great a person, he would consider till the morrow; and he declared all others who were joined in the said commission to be faithful, loyal, and free from treason, and specially Alexander Nevill, late archbishop of York. And then my lord Edmund of Langley, duke of York, the
p. 13. king's uncle, and my lord William of Wykeham, bishop of Winchester, who had been of the commission, shedding tears, fell on their knees and thanked the king for so great favour.

Also on the Friday (21st September), which fell on Saint Matthew's day, the earls of Rutland, Kent, Huntingdon,

Nottingham, Somerset, and Salisbury, the lord Despencer, A.D. 1397.
and sir William Scrope[1], in a suit of red robes of silk, banded with white silk and powdered with letters of gold, set forth the appeal which they had already proclaimed before the king at Nottingham; wherein they accused Thomas, duke of Gloucester, Richard, earl of Arundel, Thomas, earl of Warwick, and sir Thomas Mortimer, knight, of the aforesaid treasons, and also of armed revolt at Haringhay-park traitorously raised against the king. And, they having given surety to follow up their appeal, Richard, earl of Arundel, was put on his trial, clad in a robe of red with a hood of scarlet. And straightway the duke of Lancaster said to the lord Nevill: "Take off his belt and his hood"; and it was done. And when the articles of accusation were unfolded to the earl, he boldly declared that he was no traitor and claimed the benefit of his pardon granted aforetime, declaring that he would never withdraw him from the king's grace. But the duke of Lancaster said to him: "Traitor! that pardon is recalled." The earl answered: "Verily thou liest! never was I traitor!" Again the duke said: "Wherefore didst thou then get the pardon?" And the earl answered: "To close the mouths of mine enemies, of whom thou art one. And in truth, as for treasons, thou needest pardon more than I." Then said the king to him: "Answer to the appeal." The earl replied: "I see well that those persons accuse me of treason by showing appeals. In sooth they lie, all of them! Never was I traitor! I claim ever the benefit of my pardon, which, within six years last past,

[1] Edward Plantagenet, earl of Rutland, afterwards made duke of Albemarle or Aumarle, son of the duke of York; Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, afterwards duke of Surrey; John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, afterwards duke of Exeter; Thomas Mowbray, earl of Nottingham, afterwards duke of Norfolk; John Beaufort, earl of Somerset, afterwards marquess of Dorset; John de Montacute, earl of Salisbury; Thomas, baron Despencer, afterwards earl of Gloucester; and William le Scrope, afterwards earl of Wiltshire.

A.D. 1397. you, being of full age and of unfettered will, did of your own motion grant to me." Then said the king: "I granted
p. 14. it, saving it were not to my prejudice." Then said the duke of Lancaster: "So the grant holds not good." The earl replied: "Surely of that treason I knew no more than thou who wast then beyond seas." Then said sir John Bushy: "That pardon is recalled by the king, the lords and us, his faithful commons." The earl answered: "Where be those faithful commons? Well do I know thee and thy crew there, how ye are gathered together, not to do faithfully, for the faithful commons are not here. They, I know, are sore grieved for me; and I know that thou hast ever been false." And then Bushy and his fellows cried out: "See, my lord the king, how this traitor strives to stir up discord between us and the commons of the land who abide at home!" The earl answered: "Ye are all liars! I am no traitor!" Then rose up the earl of Derby and said to him: "Didst thou not say to me at Huntingdon, where first we were gathered to revolt, that it would be better first of all to seize the king?" The earl replied: "Thou, earl of Derby, thou liest at thy peril! Never had I thought concerning our lord the king, save what was to his welfare and honour." Then said the king to him: "Didst thou not say to me, at the time of thy parliament, in the bath behind the White Hall, that sir Simon Burley, my knight, was, for many reasons, worthy of death? And I answered thee that I knew no cause of death in him. And then thou and thy fellows did traitorously slay him." And then the duke of Lancaster passed sentence of death upon him in these words: "Richard, I, seneschal of England, do adjudge thee traitor, and I do by sentence and judgement condemn thee to be drawn, hanged, beheaded, and quartered, and thy lands, entailed and unentailed, to be forfeit."

Then the king, having regard for his noble birth, commanded him to be beheaded only. And there led him

away his foes, the earl of Kent, his own nephew, and others who coveted his lands,—and who were afterwards cut off, as will appear, by an evil death,—to the Tower Hill; and there did they behead him[1]. And with his soul may I be found worthy to rest in bliss!, for, assuredly, I doubt not that he is gathered to the company of the saints. As to his body, though it was then without honour laid in the church of the Austin friars of London, yet now is it most gloriously worshipped with deep reverence and with abounding offerings of the people. A.D. 1397. p. 15.

On the Saturday (22nd September), sir Thomas Mortimer was vouched, under pain of banishment as a traitor, to appear within six months, to stand his trial. And the king said: "Perchance the earl of March will not be able to take him; I will therefore wait until his capture be certified." The which sir Thomas, thus banished, stayed the time of his banishment in Scotland[2].

It was also declared that all benefices granted and transferred by such persons as had been, or should be, condemned in this parliament, and all other grants whatsoever made by them since the tenth year of the king, be recalled.

[1] Richard Fitzalan, earl of Arundel, was uncle to the young earl of Kent, his sister Alice having married Thomas Holland, second earl of Kent, lately deceased. The earl of Huntingdon is also said to have been present at the execution, and with him the earl of Nottingham, earl-marshal, the son-in-law of Arundel, though it seems that at this time he was at Calais (see Walsingham, ij. 225; Wallon, *Richard II.* ij. 456). However, the common belief that Nottingham was there appears in some lines of *Richard the Redeles* (pass. III. 105, 106), a poem written by William Langland in the year 1399 (ed. W. W. Skeat, Early Engl. Text Soc., 1873), wherein the story told by Froissart (IV. c. 92), that the earl-marshal actually bandaged his father-in-law's eyes, seems to be alluded to. Arundel was deservedly a favourite with the people. He was one of the best sea-captains of the day, as he proved by his victories in 1387 and 1388.

[2] It will be seen, on p. 165, that sir Thomas Mortimer is called the uncle of the earl of March. If he was so, it must have been by an illegitimate connection, as he is not recognized in the genealogy of the family.

A.D. 1397. On the Monday next following (24th September), was read the declaration of the earl of Nottingham, then captain of Calais, in whose keeping had been the duke of Gloucester, that the same duke could not appear on his trial, for that he had died in his keeping; and at the prayer of the said appellants the same judgement was issued against him, as against the earl of Arundel.

Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury, also, after that his temporalities had been seized, was banished the kingdom.

On the Tuesday following (25th September), Rickhill [1], one of the judges of our lord the king, a native of Ireland, read divers confessions drawn up in writings touching the said treasons, declaring them to be the confessions of the said duke of Gloucester, put forth by him and written with his own hand.

Also, the county of Chester was raised to the honour of a duchy, and was augmented by the addition of the forfeited lands of the earl of Arundel. And the earl of Salisbury prayed for a writ of *scire facias* to be granted to him
p. 16. against the earl of March touching the lordship of Denbigh in Wales; and the king answered thereon that he would consider it [2].

Also, on the Wednesday next following (26th September), it was decreed that the lands of the said earl of Arundel, which were added to the said duchy of Chester, should enjoy its liberties in all things, saving that the Welsh inhabitants of those lands should still hold their ancient rights and customs.

It was likewise ordained that all who gave counsel, help, or favour to the children of those who had been, or should be, condemned in this parliament, should be punished with

[1] William Rickhill, puisne judge of the Common Pleas.

[2] On the attainder of Roger Mortimer, first earl of March, in 1330, the lordship of Denbigh was granted to William de Montacute, afterwards earl of Salisbury, but returned, in 1342, to Roger, second earl of March, on the reversal of the attainder.

the pains of treason. And the parliament was adjourned to the next Friday. A.D. 1397.

On that day (28th September), the king declared what issue of the condemned should be debarred from their estates, and from the councils and parliaments of the king: to wit, heirs male, and all descending from them in the male line for ever.

Also, the king appointed to the said archbishop of Canterbury a term of six weeks to withdraw from the kingdom.

Also, it was ordained that all the lords, spiritual and temporal, should swear to observe unswervingly whatsoever had been or should be done, decreed, or despatched in this parliament; the prelates also hurling their censures from this time forth upon such as should make opposition.

Also, the earl of Warwick was brought to trial; and his hood was taken from him, and the appeal was read. And like a wretched old woman he made confession of all contained therein, wailing and weeping and whining that he had done all, traitor that he was; submitting himself in all things to the king's grace, and bewailing that he had ever been ally of the appellees. And the king asked him by whom he had been lured to them; and he answered, by the duke of Gloucester and by the then abbot of St. Albans and by a monk recluse of Westminster; and he kept begging the king's grace. And then, all as it were lamenting and seeking the royal favour for him, the king gave him his life to pine away in perpetual prison without the kingdom, his goods, moveable and immoveable—as in the case of the earl of Arundel—being first seized. And then the king sent him to the Tower of London, and at length ordered him to be taken to the castle of the Isle of Man, to be held in the keeping of William Scrope, lord of that island, a prisoner for life. p. 17.

Also, on the Saturday (29th September), the king allowed to the earl of Warwick one month to betake himself to the

A.D. 1397. said castle of Man. He also pretended to grant to him and his wife five hundred marks for the term of their lives; but he never paid them one penny, but took everything from them even to their shoe-latchets[1].

Also, to the earl of Salisbury was granted a writ of *scire facias* against the earl of March as touching the lordship of Denbigh, allowing grace of forty days to answer.

Also, it was ordained that debtors of the bridge of Rochester be distrained to the use of the said bridge[2].

Also, the king declared that, as to the foray of the Scots, rumoured abroad in this parliament, he would in council find a remedy.

Also, the earl of Derby was made duke of Hereford; the earl of Rutland, duke of Albemarle; the earl of Kent, duke of Surrey; the earl of Huntingdon, duke of Exeter; the earl of Nottingham, duke of Norfolk; the earl of Somerset, marquess of Dorset; the lord Despencer, earl of Gloucester; the lord Nevill, earl of Westmoreland; the lord Thomas Percy, earl of Worcester; and the lord William Scrope, earl of Wiltshire. And the parliament was prorogued to

[1] Thomas de Beauchamp, earl of Warwick, had been governor to the king on his accession. He was condemned in this parliament, for his share in the events of 1386–1388. The reference in the text to the abbot of St. Albans and the monk of Westminster can only be connected with the story of Gloucester's conspiracy, which is told in the *Chronique de la Traïson et Mort de Richart II.* as taking place in 1396, and in which John Moot, abbot of St. Albans, and John Worting, prior of Westminster, were implicated. Richard did not leave Warwick long in the Isle of Man, but brought him back to the Tower, whence he was set free by Henry. His wife was Margaret, daughter of William, baron Ferrers, of Groby. Their bad treatment is noticed in *Annales Ricardi II.* (Rolls series), 220: "Ibi constituit eum in carcere perpetuo conservari, promisso, tam sibi quam uxori suæ, victu honorifico de terris vel redditibus quondam eisdem pertinentibus, modo tamen forisfactis. Sed hanc sententiam postea non implevit penes comitem et comitissam, sed in magna protrahere miseria vitam permisit utrumque."

[2] Old Rochester bridge, formerly built of wood, was now replaced by one of stone.—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 354.

be dissolved at Shrewsbury, the quinzaine of Saint Hilary next following. A.D. 1397.

On the Sunday (30th September), the king made a great feast on the breaking up of the parliament; and it was done as was ordained on the Friday concerning the censures and oaths. But, although this parliament was ratified by the oaths of the lords, by the censures of the church levelled against evil-doers, and by confirmation apostolic, Peter, bishop of Acqs [1], in the name of the pope, in like manner hurling forth censures, yet, like the image of Nebuchadnezzar, in the height of its vain-glory it fell with its supporters, and righteously, according to what has gone before, as will presently more fully appear. The example of Chosroes, of Belshazzar, of Antiochus, and of other tyrants who have oppressed their people [2]. p. 18.

And so the king continued the parliament at Shrewsbury (28th January) with such worldly pomp, as ear hath not heard neither hath it entered into the heart of man [3]. What unprofitable things to the kingdom and destructive that great trooping together of people, all armed as though for war, did bring about, the world might wonder at. And in this parliament, besides other things hurtful to his people and ruinous to the price of food, even for his victuals he paid naught. And there was then appealed of treason the lord [John] de Cobham, for that he had been one of the twelve commissioners of the kingdom. And he said to the king in his trial: "It is well known to you that you did command me to take upon me the burden of the commission and to receive the same?" The king answered: "Thou knowest well that I bade thee do so against my will." "Assuredly not!" said the lord Cobham. A.D. 1398.

[1] Pierre du Bois, bishop of Acqs, in the south of France, formerly canon of Bordeaux. An order to seize his goods appears in Rymer's *Fœdera*, 30th May, 1400.

[2] This sentence appears to be a note of examples to be enlarged upon at a future time.

[3] 1 Cor. ij. 9.

A.D. 1398. And the king made him to be adjudged traitor by the duke of Lancaster; yet granted he him his life to pine away in prison. Thereupon the duke said to him: "Give thanks to our lord the king for thy life." "Nay, verily," said he, "for the rather my life wearies me, because I thought to rejoice in eternal life sooner than I shall do[1]."

Then and there, too, the king wrung from the clergy a tenth and a half, and from the people a fifteenth and a half, and on every sack of wool five marks, and on every tun of wine five shillings, and on every pound's worth[2] of merchandise two shillings, for the term of his life, amid the secret curses of his people[3]. At length he sent the said lord Cobham into perpetual prison in the island of Jersey.

To this parliament was summoned and came that noble knight, the earl of March, lieutenant of Ireland, a youth of exceeding uprightness, who had no part nor share in such designs and wanton deeds of the king. Him the
p. 19. people received with joy and delight, going forth to meet him to the number of twenty thousand, clad in hoods of his colours, red and white, and hoping through him for deliverance from the grievous evil of such a king. But he bore himself wisely and with prudence; for the king and others who were only half-friends, envying his virtue, laid snares for him, seeking occasions of complaint against him. But he, as though he cared not for the turmoil among the people, feigned in the king's presence, pretending that his

[1] John de Cobham, third baron Cobham, was at this time an old man, between eighty and ninety years of age. He was recalled from banishment by Henry IV., and survived till 1409. His granddaughter Joan was the wife of sir John Oldcastle. Walsingham (*Ypodigma Neustriæ*, Rolls series, 379) refers to him as "vir grandævus, simplex, et rectus," and confirms what Adam says regarding his indifference to life: "Rex tamen, concessa seni, quam non optavit, venia, sive vita, misit eum ad insulam de Gerneseya in exilium."

[2] The MS. reads, "librata ponderis."

[3] The parliament granted Richard a tenth and a half and a fifteenth and a half, and the tax on wools, skins, and wool-fells for life.—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 368.

deeds were pleasing to him, although in very truth they displeased him much. Yet the king mistrusted, and being ever evil-minded against him, for that others dared it not, thought with his own hands to slay him. And, with others thereto sworn, the king did ever seek occasion to destroy him, excusing his evil purpose in that the earl had received in Ireland, some while after his banishment, sir Thomas Mortimer, a bold knight, his uncle, who had been banished by them and whom they sorely feared, and had also before his departure furnished him with money. And so in secret among themselves they doomed the earl, striving to find a time to destroy him, and boasting that they would share his lands amongst them. And to that end they sent into Ireland, as their lieutenant, to take him, my lord of Surrey before mentioned, his wife's brother[1], who hated him bitterly. But alas!, on Saint Margaret's day (20th July), near to Kells[2] in Ireland, while, too bold in his warlike valour, he had rashly outstripped his own troops, he fell by the accident of war into the hands of his enemies and was slain, to the great sorrow of the realm of England, and to the no small joy and delight of his rivals and adversaries[3]. A.D. 1398.

[1] Roger Mortimer, earl of March, married Eleanor, sister of Thomas Holland, duke of Surrey.

[2] Kenlasoe. MS. The place meant is Kells, co. Kilkenny.

[3] The following is an extract from a chronicle of the founders of Wigmore abbey, which is printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vj. 354. The adoption by the earl of the Irish dress is rather a curious fact:— "Iste Rogerus, juvenis probitate illius temporis præclarus, hastiludiis strenuus, in facescia gloriosus, in epulis dapsilis, in muneribus largus, in communione affabilis et jocosus, pulcritudine et forma coetaneos excellens, in ætatis suæ vicessimo anno locumtenens Hiberniæ præficitur: unde de et super castro et villa de Dynnebygh, cum Rosse et Ruwynnok pago adjacenti, per comitem Sarum, consilio, auxilio, et favore ducis Lancastriæ in eventum victoriæ idem sibi dominium captantis, in ultimo parliamento dicti regis Ricardi, apud Salopiam tento, contra eum causa mota, ad defensionem, milibus colore suo indutis stipatus, et ab omnibus aliis pagensibus, etiam expensis propriis, pro majore parte, in coloribus suis, scilicet rubeo et albo,

A.D. 1398. This is the genealogy of the same earl: Roger, son of Edmund, son of Roger, son of Edmund, son of Roger, first earl of March, [son of Edmund, son of Roger], son of Gwladus the Dark, daughter of Llewellyn, son of Jorwerth the Broken-nosed, prince of North Wales. (And so, through the British kings, the heathen gods, and the patriarchs to
p. 20. Adam.) Now let us return to Gwladus the Dark, whose mother was Joan, [natural] daughter of king John, son of Henry, son of the empress, daughter of Henry the first, son of William the Conqueror, son [of Robert, son] of Richard, son of Richard the Hardy, son of William Long-sword, son of Rollo, the first conqueror of Normandy.

Besides this noble descent from the kings of Britain, Italy, Troy, England, France, and Spain, see how flourished the royal race of the earls of March! The same Roger above mentioned was son of Philippa, countess of March, daughter of Lionel, duke of Clarence, second son of Edward the third[1], glorious king of England and France, son of Isabella, daughter and sole heir of Philip, king of France: and this, too, in both direct lines. Also, by another line,
p. 21. he was son of the said Philippa, daughter of Elizabeth, duchess of Clarence, daughter of William de Burgh, earl of Ulster, [son of John de Burgh] by Elizabeth, daughter of Joan of Acre, daughter of Edward the first, king of England and conqueror of Wales, by Eleanor, daughter of the

vestitis, magnis cum gloria et gaudio receptus, in emulorum et adversariorum confusionem non modicum advenit, et dictum dominum summaliter [sententialiter?] et diffinitive evicit.

"Iste Rogerus, vir licet bellicosus et inclitus, ac negotiis fortunatus, pulcherque et formosus, ut præmittitur, fuerit, nimis tamen lascivus et in divinis heu! remissus; consilioque juvenum, antiquorum rejecto, abductus, nimia animositate, immo verius ferocitate leonina, Leonelli nepoti satis innata, sed (proh dolor!) non regulata, irruendo excercitum præcedens, Hibernicali vestitus et equitatus apparatu, nec suos in succursum expectans, ac hostes invadens, apud Kenles in Hibernia per homines Obrinque invasus, belli eventu in anno Domini mcccxcviij. cecidit inde, quia hostibus ignotus, quam dolenter trucidatus."

[1] Third son. William of Hatfield was the second-born.

king of Spain, his first wife. Also, by another line, he was A.D. 1398.
son of the countess Philippa, daughter of the said duchess of Clarence, daughter of the said earl of Ulster by Matilda, daughter of Henry, earl of Lancaster, son of Edmund, son of the third Henry, king of England, by Eleanor, daughter of the count of Provence, who is buried in honour among the kings at Westminster. Furthermore, take note concerning Edmund, now earl of March, son of the said Roger, being under age and in the ward of the king[1], born of Eleanor, niece of king Richard the second, daughter of [Thomas] earl of Kent, son of Joan, countess of Kent, daughter of Edmund, son of the said Edward the first by Margaret, daughter of the king of France, his second wife, who lies buried before the high altar in the church of the grey friars of London.

Now let us go back to the said empress (Matilda), who was daughter of [Matilda, daughter of] Margaret, queen of Scotland, daughter of Edward the exile, son of Edmund Ironside, son of Athelred, son of Edgar, son of Edmund, son of Edward, son of Alfred, son of Athelwulf, son of Athelbryȝt[2], son of Aelmund, who was one of the five chieftains of England. The which Athelbryȝt fled before the face of Bryȝthryȝt[3] his foe into France, in the time of Charlemagne; but, Bryȝthryȝt dying, he came again into England, and bravely subduing all the other chieftains of the land he brought England into one kingdom, and peacefully dwelt therein; and now he lies at Winchester.

Now let us go back to Ralph Mortimer, the husband of Gwladus the Dark and son of Roger, son of Hugh, the p. 22.
founder of the abbey of Wigmore, son of Ralph Mortimer who first came with William the Conqueror into England.

[1] He was kept prisoner of state by Henry IV. till 1413. As he came of age in 1412, the above note about him must have been written before that date.

[2] i. e. Ecgberht.

[3] Beorhtric, king of Wessex.

A.D. 1398. This Ralph, leaving his son Hugh in his lordship of Wigmore, went back into Normandy and there died.

Now I must not omit to say something concerning Edmund, the father of the said Roger. This Edmund, who, within the space of two years, by his abounding virtues as well as by his warlike energy and vigour, wherein he surpassed all other mortals of his day, did wonderfully bring all Ireland, being then in rebellion when he came to his lieutenancy, into unity and peace and under the dominion of England,—he, I say, presented me, who am now writing, to a studentship in laws at Oxford, with fitting endowment. But alas! at his house in Cork, in Ireland, on the day of Saint John the Evangelist (27th December), through that fate whereby all are laid low, he left the world bereft of his great nobility, long time before I would have had it so. And his bones lie in Wigmore abbey along with those of his wife Philippa, buried in front of the high altar[1]. Concerning them are these verses:—

"One wise and good and well-beloved beneath
This marble turns again to earth in death.
Edmund's pure body lies within this grave;
But Christ from prisoning tomb his soul shall save."

And for Philippa,

"A noble countess here entomb'd doth lie,
In deeds of ample charity she strove;
Though sprung from kings, the friend of poverty;
For ever may she live in heaven above!"[2]

Through this Philippa, daughter of Lionel, second-born
p. 23. prince of England, as is above said, the earldom of March, besides its royal lineage, which might, belike, reach to the

[1] The Mortimers were short-lived. Of the last four earls, Roger was born about 1327 and died in 1360, Edmund lived from 1351 to 1381, Roger from 1374 to 1398, and Edmund from 1391 to 1425.

[2] The Latin original of these lines is also given in the chronicle printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon*, vj. 353.

highest places of dignity, rejoices in the honours wherewith it is endowed in the lordships of Clare [co. Suffolk], Walsingham [co. Norfolk], Sudbury [co. Suffolk], Whaddon [co. Bucks.], Crambourn [co. Dorset], and Bardfield [co. Essex], in England; of Usk, Caerleon, and Trelleck [co. Monmouth], in Wales; and in the earldom of Ulster and lordship of Connaught, in Ireland; together with the several and numerous appurtenances belonging thereto. A.D. 1398.

Now return we to the parliament of Shrewsbury. During its session, the duke of Norfolk, who afterwards died in exile at Venice, laid snares of death against the duke of Lancaster as he came thither; which thing raised heavy storms of trouble. But the duke, forewarned by others, escaped the snare [1].

The king meanwhile, ever hastening to his fall, among other burdens that he heaped upon his kingdom, kept in his following four hundred unruly men of the county of Chester, very evil; and in all places they oppressed his subjects unpunished, and beat and robbed them. These men, whithersoever the king went, night and day, as if at war, kept watch in arms around him; everywhere committing adulteries, murders, and other evils without end.

[1] "For you, my noble lord of Lancaster,
The honourable father to my foe,
Once did I lay an ambush for your life,
A trespass that doth vex my grieved soul;
But, ere I last received the Sacrament,
I did confess it, and exactly begg'd
Your grace's pardon, and I hope I had it."

Rich. II., act I. sc. i.

Such are the words which Shakespeare puts into Mowbray's mouth, closely following the account given by Holinshed. From what source the latter took the story of the ambush does not appear. That such a plot against the life of Lancaster had a real existence is not unlikely, considering the jealousy with which he had been regarded in his days of power; but that Norfolk had designs upon him so late as the parliament of Shrewsbury can hardly be true. He is said to have refused to attend the parliament in 1384, fearing a plot against him (Mon. Evesh. 57).

A.D. 1398. And to such a pass did the king cherish them that he would not deign to listen to any one who had complaint against them; nay, rather he would disdain him as an enemy. And this was a chief cause of his ruin[1].

In the same parliament, the duke of Hereford, son of the said duke of Lancaster, appealed the duke of Norfolk of treason. Wherefore the king appointed to them the morrow of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross[2] next following to fight in that quarrel. The duke of Hereford meanwhile, finding pledges, went whither he would. But the duke of Norfolk

[1] The excesses of Richard's Cheshire guards are a common topic with the chroniclers. The archers who surrounded the parliament-house in 1397, as above noticed, were men of Chester, who had been specially summoned by Richard to form his body-guard (Walsingham, ij. 224). In the *Annales Ricardi II.*, they appear as "natura bestiales, qui parati erant ad omnem nequitiam perpetrandam; ita ut expost tanta surrexit eis insolentia, ut regem reputabant in socium, et alios, quanquam valentes et dominos, haberent in despectum. Et hii non erant de generosis patriæ, sed tracti vel de rure, vel sutoria vel alia quavis arte; ut qui domi vix digni reputati fuerant detrahere calceos magistrorum, hic se reputabant pares et socios dominorum." Interference of these favoured subjects of Richard in other matters besides soldiering is noticed in *Richard the Redeles*, iij. 317, wherein the remarks in the text above on the king's protection of them are repeated in very similar words:—

"For chyders of Chester were chose many daies
To ben of conceill ffor causis þat in þe court hangid,
And pledid pipoudris alle manere pleyntis.
. . . . . .
They constrewed quarellis to quenche þe peple,
And pletid with pollaxis and poyntis of swerdis,
And at the dome-ȝevynge drowe out þe bladis,
And lente men levere of her longe battis.
They lacked alle vertues þat a juge shulde have;
For, er a tale were ytolde, þey wolde trie þe harmes,
Without ony answere but ho his lyf hatid.
And ho so pleyned to þe prince, þat pees shulde kepe,
Of these mystirmen, medlers of wrongis,
He was lyghtliche ylauȝte and yluggyd of many,
And ymummyd on þe mouthe and manaced to þe deth."

[2] This day would fall on the 15th September; the 16th was the actual day appointed.

being delivered into custody at Windsor, his offices were A.D. 1398.
given over to his other co-appellors, that is, the office of
marshal of England to the duke of Surrey, and that of
captain of Calais to the duke of Exeter; on account
of which grants, by His righteous judgement, God did send p. 24.
between him and them great confusion of strife, according
to what the prophecy says in the verse :—

"By the Judge of Heaven's decree
The wicked throng shall bursten be."[1]

And on the day of battle they both came in great state to the appointed place, which was fenced with a wet ditch. But the duke of Hereford appeared far more gloriously distinguished with diverse equipments of seven horses[2]. And, because the king had it by divination that the duke of Norfolk should then prevail, he rejoiced much, eagerly striving after the destruction of the duke of Hereford. But when they joined battle, it seemed to him that the duke of Hereford would prevail. And so the king ordered the combat to be stayed, laying perpetual exile on the duke of Norfolk, yet being minded, when he should find occasion, to restore him. But the duke of Hereford he banished the realm for ten years. The one died at Venice in exile; the other within a year came back in triumph to the kingdom, and, deposing him who had banished him, reigned therein with might.

In this year, the morrow of Saint Blaise (4th February), A.D. 1399.
died the duke of Lancaster, and in the church of Saint Paul
in London, nigh to the high altar, was with great honours
buried.

In the parliament of Shrewsbury, the king got the whole A.D. 1398.
power of the government to be given over to him and to

[1] Bridlington, dist. ij. cap. vj.

[2] The combatants made a great display of arms and trappings. Henry was assisted by armourers sent by the duke of Milan; Mowbray received his arms from Germany.—Froissart, iv. 63; *Archæologia*, xx. 102.

A.D. 1398. six others to be named by him for the term of his life, where and when he should please[1]. By means of which
A.D. 1399. commission he afterwards condemned the said duke of Hereford to perpetual exile, seizing all his goods. And he passed sentence against the memory of many who were dead. And at length, in an evil hour, he set out for Ireland (29th May) to subdue it, for, as will hereinafter be seen, his return to his own land was to his injury.

The coming out of exile of the said duke of Hereford, now by his father's death become duke of Lancaster, and so twice a duke, was according to the word of the prophecy of Bridlington where are the verses :—

"With scarce three hundred men the duke shall come again ;
And Philip, false, shall flee, all reckless of the slain."[2]

p. 25. This duke Henry, according to the prophecy of Merlin, was the eaglet, as being the son of John[3]. But, following

[1] The commission to which were deputed the powers of parliament, at the close of the session of Shrewsbury, consisted of twelve peers and six commoners. Half of their number was empowered to act.—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 368.

[2] Dist. ij. cap. ij.

[3] An allusion to the emblem of St. John, the eagle. The "pullus aquilæ" is however not to be found in the prophecy of Merlin, as given in Geoffrey of Monmouth, but in the "Prophetia Aquilæ," which often accompanies it in the MSS. The following is found in MS. Reg. 15 C. xvj. f. 184:—"Post hæc dicetur per Britanniam rex est rex non est. Post hæc eriget caput suum et regem se esse significabit multis fracturis sed nulla reparacione. Post hæc erit tempus milvorum et quod quisque rapuerit pro suo habebit, et hoc septennis vigebit. Ecce rapacitas et sanguinis effusio et furni multis comparabuntur ecclesiis et quod alius serit alius metet et vitæ miseri mors prevalebit et paucorum hominum integra manebit caritas et quod quisque pepigerit vespere mane violabitur. Deinde ab austro veniet cum sole super ligneos equos et super spumantem inundacionem maris *pullus aquilæ* navigans in Britanniam et applicans tunc statim et aliam domum aquilæ siciens et cito aliam siciet." Those who have read Mr. Webb's translation of Creton's metrical history of the deposition of Richard will recall the scene of the aged knight who, as he rides along by Creton's side, tells him how the king's ruin had been fore-

Bridlington, he was rightfully the dog[1], by reason of his badge of a collar of linked greyhounds[2], and because he came in the dog-days; and because he utterly drove out from the kingdom the faithless harts, that is, the livery of king Richard which was the hart. A.D. 1399.

told by Merlin, as he was prepared to prove out of book (*Archæologia*, xx. 168, 374, and appx. IV.).

[1] Adam no doubt refers to the line in Bridlington (dist. ij. cap. vij.)—

"Cum canis intrabit, leo cum tauro volitabit,"

which is thus commented upon: "*Cum canis intrabit*, id est, cum illa stella nociva in cœlo, quæ canis primus dicitur, oriatur cum sole, quod est quando sol est in fine cancri in mense Julii in diebus caniculariibus," *etc.* The adaptation of prophecy could scarcely be carried further than to dub a man "dog" because he works out his mission in the dog-days.

[2] The greyhound has not been commonly recognized as among Henry's badges. The better known ones were the antelope, the white swan, and the fox's brush. Here, however, is the badge of the greyhound, so specifically named that there can be no doubt that Henry made use of it. Richard's cognizance of the white hart may perhaps have suggested his rival's use of the greyhound at this time, with the significance pointed to in the text. In the Harleian MS. 1989, f. 381, containing a chronicle (unfortunately very corrupt) compiled at Chester, is also to be found a reference to this badge:—"Unde creditur quod armigeri ducis Lancastriæ deferentes collistrigia quasi leporarii ad destruendum insolenciam missæ bestiæ," *etc.* (*Traïson et Mort de Richart II.*, 283.)

The identification of the greyhound as a badge of Henry Bolingbroke may explain a passage in *Richard the Redeles* (ij. 113), which has caused some trouble to editors:—

"But had þe good greehonde be not agreved,
But cherischid as a cheffeteyne and cheff of ȝoure lese,
ȝe hadde had hertis ynowe at ȝoure wille to go and to ride."

Mr. Wright supposes John Beaufort, earl of Dorset, to be here meant, the greyhound being the cognizance of his family (*Political Poems*, Rolls series, i. 386). Professor Skeat proposes Ralph Nevill, earl of Westmoreland. There can, however, be no question that Henry is more likely to be pointed to as "chief of your leash," than the other two comparatively unimportant nobles.

With reference to these types and badges, it is a curious coincidence that in the will of Edmund Mortimer, third earl of March, quoted by Dugdale (*Baronage*, i. 149), a saltcellar in the form of a dog is bequeathed to his daughter; and to Henry, lord Percy, a little cup, made like the body of a hart, with the head of an eagle.

A.D. 1399. This duke Henry returned from exile in company with Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury, and Thomas, earl of Arundel, the son, who for fear of his life had fled to him in France from the keeping of the duke of Exeter, king Richard's brother; and he landed on the twenty-eighth day of June [1] with scarce three hundred followers, as above said, at a deserted spot in the northern parts of the land. And there first came to his help the chief forester of his forest of Knaresborough, Robert Waterton [2], with two hundred foresters; and afterwards the earls of Westmoreland and Northumberland, and the lords Willoughby and Greystock; and, in short, within a few days he stood in triumph, with one hundred thousand fighting men at his back. And two days before the end of July he arrived at Bristol, and there he struck off the heads of sir William Scrope [3], the king's treasurer, and sir John Bushy and sir Henry Grene, knights, the king's most evil councillors and the chief fosterers of his malice. There was I, the writer of this chronicle, present with my lord of Canterbury late returned; and I, through favour, made peace between the duke and the lordship of Usk, the place of my birth, which he had determined to harry, on account of the resistance of the lady of that place, the king's niece, there ordered; and I also got sir Edward de Cherleton [4], then

[1] The date of Henry's landing is variously given in the chronicles.

[2] Robert Waterton, afterwards a knight and Henry's master of the horse, is in some of the chronicles placed among those who accompanied Henry from France. In the Sloane MS. 1776—containing a chronicle which partly follows the Monk of Evesham and partly the *Annales* (ed. Riley), and which is partly independent,—and also in the Harleian MS. 53, a version of the Brut chronicle, as well as in Wyntown (ix. 20, 2001), Waterton figures as Richard's gaoler at Pontefract.

[3] The earl of Wiltshire, who is seldom named in the chronicles by his chief title.

[4] Sir Edward de Cherleton married, as his first wife, Alianore, daughter of Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, Richard's half-brother, and widow of Roger Mortimer, fourth earl of March. He succeeded his

husband of that lady, to be taken into the duke's following; and I caused all the people of Usk, who for the said resistance had gathered at Monstarri [1], to their great joy to return to their own homes. A.D. 1399.

At length the duke came to Hereford with his host, on the second day of August, and lodged in the bishop's palace; and on the morrow he moved towards Chester, and passed the night in the priory of Leominster. The next night he spent at Ludlow, in the king's castle, not sparing the wine which was therein stored. At this place, I, who am now writing, obtained from the duke and from p. 26. my lord of Canterbury the release of brother Thomas Prestbury, master in theology, a man of my day at Oxford and a monk of Shrewsbury, who was kept in prison by king Richard, for that he had righteously preached certain things against his follies; and I also got him promotion to the abbacy of his house [2]. Then, passing through Shrewsbury, the duke tarried there two days; where he made proclamation that the host should march on Chester, but should spare the people and the country, because by mediation they had submitted themselves to him. Wherefore many who coveted that land for plunder departed to their homes. But little good did the proclamation do for the country, as will be seen. The reasons why the duke decided to invade that country were: because, abetting the king, as has been said, it ceased not to molest the realm for the space of two whole years with murders, adulteries, thefts, pillage, and other unbearable wrongs; and because it had risen up

brother as baron Cherleton and feudal lord of Powis, in 1401. He was also a knight of the Garter.

[1] I cannot identify this place. The scribe has probably blundered. Perhaps Trostrey, two miles north of Usk, is meant.

[2] Thomas de Prestbury received the royal assent to his election as abbot of Shrewsbury on the 17th August, and had the temporalities on the 7th September, 1399. He afterwards got into trouble again, for he received a pardon from the king in 14 Hen. IV., and again, when indicted for felony, in 3 Hen. V.—Dugdale, *Monasticon*, iij. 514.

A.D. 1399. against the said duke and against his coming, threatening to destroy him. Another cause was on account of the right of exemption of that country, wherein the inhabitants, however criminal elsewhere, and others entangled in debt or crime, were wont to be harboured, as in a nest of wickedness; so that the whole realm cried vengeance on them.

On the eighth[1] day of August, the duke with his host entered the county of Chester, and there, in the parish of Coddington and other neighbouring parishes, taking up his camping ground and pitching his tents, nor sparing meadow nor cornfield, pillaging all the country round, and keeping strict watch against the wiles of the men of Chester, he passed the night. And I, the writer of this chronicle, spent a not uncheerful night in the tent of the lord of Powis. Many in neighbouring places, drinking of the poisoned cups given to them by the people of Chester, perished. There also, from divers water-cisterns, which the men probed with spears, and from other hiding-places, vessels and much other goods were drawn forth and taken for plunder, I being present with the finders.

p. 27. On the morrow, which was the eve of Saint Lawrence (9th August), I went in the morning to the church of Coddington, to celebrate mass; but I found nothing, for everything was carried off and doors and chests broken open.

On the same day the duke of Lancaster with his host reached Chester. But first he mustered his troops in a large and fair field, wherein was a crop of standing corn, some three miles from the city, on its eastern side, marshalling their ranks to the number of one hundred thousand fighting men. And it may be truly said that the hills shone again with their shields. And thus he entered the castle of Chester; and there he remained for twelve days, he and

[1] The MS. reads "nono"; but the date is rectified by the next paragraph.

his men, using king Richard's wine which was found there in good store, laying waste fields, pillaging houses, and, in short, taking as their own everything they wanted for use or food, or which in any way could be turned to account[1]. A.D. 1399.

On the third day of his arrival there he caused the head of Perkin de Lye[2], who was reckoned a great evil-doer, to be struck off and fixed on a stake beyond the eastern gate. This Perkin, who as chief warden of the royal forest of Delamere[3], and by authority of that office, had oppressed and ground down the country people, was taken in a monk's garb; and because, as it was said, he had done many wrongs in such disguise, he deservedly passed away out of the world in that dress. One thing I know, that I thought no man grieved for his death.

King Richard, hearing in Ireland of the landing of the duke, set out in the full glory of war and wealth, and made for the shores of Wales at Pembroke with a great host, and landed on the day of Saint Mary Magdalene (22nd July), sending forward the lord Despencer[4] to stir up his men of Glamorgan to his help; but they obeyed him not. Dismayed by this news coming in from all sides, and acting on the advice of those who I think were traitors, and hoping to be relieved by the succour of the men of North Wales and Chester, he fled in panic at midnight with only a few followers to Caermarthen[5], on the road to Conway castle in North Wales. Whereupon the dukes, earls, barons, and all who were with him in his great host,

[1] See the *Traïson et Mort*, appendix C, 281.

[2] Sir Piers de Legh, of Lyme Hanley.

[3] The jurisdiction of the forest of Delamere was vested in four families: Kingsley, Grosvenor, Wever, and Merton.—Ormerod, *History of Cheshire* (1819), ij. 50.

[4] Thomas Despencer, created earl of Gloucester in 1397; beheaded in 1400.

[5] The Harl. MS. 1989, printed in the *Traïson et Mort*, appendix C, 282, also mentions Caermarthen as the place whither Richard first went on landing in Wales.

A.D. 1399. p. 28. according to the text: "Smite the shepherd and the sheep shall be scattered," [1] disbanded, and making their way through by-ways into England were robbed of everything by the country people [2]. And I saw many of the chief men come in to the duke thus stripped; and many of them, whom he trusted not, he delivered into divers keepings.

On the eve of the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin (14th August) [3], my lord of Canterbury and the earl of Northumberland went away to the king at the castle of Conway, to treat with him on the duke's behalf; and the king, on condition of saving his dignity, promised to surrender to the duke at the castle of Flint. And so, delivering up to them his two crowns, valued at one hundred thousand marks, with other countless treasure [4], he straightway set forth to Flint. There the duke coming to him with twenty thousand chosen men—the rest of his host being left behind to guard his quarters and the country and castle and city of Chester [5]—sought the king within the castle (for he

[1] Zech. xiij. 7.

[2] See *Archæologia*, xx. 104, 328, where Creton tells us how the English soldiers were pillaged by the Welsh as they made their way through the country.

[3] In the *Traïson et Mort*, 195, the earl of Northumberland receives his instructions on the 17th August. As, however, he was at Conway on the 18th of the month, and had to make his arrangements and post his troops, the date in our chronicle is probably the more correct one. Both Creton (*Arch.* xx.) and the author of the *Traïson et Mort* state that Northumberland alone was present at Conway, and that the archbishop met the king at Flint. Consequently, the truth of Richard's promise to abdicate, which, according to the Rolls of Parliament (iij. 416), was made at Conway to the archbishop and earl, is open to doubt. See *Traïson et Mort*, 202; Lingard, *Hist. Engl.*; Wallon, *Richard II.* ij. 292.

[4] This story of the surrender of treasure is not supported by other chronicles. Perhaps the capture of treasure at Holt castle, which surrendered to Henry, is meant.—*Arch.* xx. 122.

[5] Creton has drawn a fine scene in which Richard stands on the battlements of Flint castle and watches Henry's army advance and encircle the fortress (*Arch.* xx. 155, 370). The number of troops is put down at 100,000 men, and the whole body is represented as

would not come forth), girding it round with his armed men on the one side and with his archers on the other; whereby was fulfilled the prophecy: "The white king shall array his host in form of a shield."[1] And he led him away prisoner to Chester castle, where he delivered him into safe keeping. Thus, too, he placed in custody certain lords, taken along with the king, to be kept till the parliament which was to begin on the morrow of Michaelmas-day. A.D. 1399.

While the duke was then at Chester, three of the twenty-four aldermen of the city of London, on behalf of the same city, together with other fifty citizens, came to the duke, and recommended their city to him, under their common seal, renouncing their fealty to king Richard[2]. They told, too, how the citizens had gathered in arms to Westminster abbey to search for the king, hearing that he had in secret fled thither; and that, not finding him there, they had ordered to be kept in custody, till parliament, Roger Walden, Nicholas Slake, and Ralph Selby, the king's special councillors, whom they did find[3]. And so the duke, having gloriously, within fifty days, conquered both king and kingdom, marched to London; and there he placed the captive king in the Tower, under fitting guard. p. 29.

marching to Flint. Dr. Lingard has made some allowance, and reduced the number to 80,000. Twenty thousand men would, however, be quite enough for Henry's purpose; and I have no doubt that Adam's account of the disposition of the troops is right.

[1] This comes from the "Prophetia Aquilæ":—"Exercitus ejus ad modum clipei formabuntur."—MS. Reg. 15 C. xvj.

[2] The deputation from London is also said to have met Henry at Lichfield (*Arch.* xx. 176), or at Coventry (*Traïson et Mort*, 212).

[3] Holinshed (ed. 1807, ij. 859) tells a somewhat similar story: that some of the Londoners designed to slay Richard on his arrival in the city, but, being prevented, "They, comminge to Westminster, tooke maister John Sclake, deane of the king's chappell, and from thence brought him to Newgate, and there laid him fast in irons." Roger Walden was shortly afterwards deposed from the archbishopric of Canterbury. Nicholas Slake was prebendary of York, and dean of the king's chapel, Westminster. Ralph de Selby had been subdean of York, and was warden of King's Hall, Cambridge.

A.D. 1399. Meanwhile the duke sent to Ireland for his eldest son Henry, and for Humphrey, son of the duke of Gloucester, who had been imprisoned in the castle of Trim by king Richard. And when they had been sent over to him, along with great treasure belonging to the king, the said Humphrey, having been poisoned in Ireland, as was said, by the lord Despencer, died, to the great grief of the land, on his coming to the isle of Anglesey in Wales[1]. But the duke's son came safe to his father, and brought with him in chains sir William Bagot[2], a knight of low degree, who had been raised by the king to high places.

It was of king Richard's nature to abase the noble and exalt the base, as of this same sir William and other low-born fellows he made great men, and of very many unlettered men he made bishops, who afterwards fell ruined by their irregular leap into power[3]. Wherefore of this king Richard, as of Arthgallo, once king of Britain, it may well be said in this wise: Arthgallo debased the noble and raised up the low, he took from every man his wealth, and gathered countless treasure; wherefore the chiefs of the land, unable longer to bear such great wrongs, revolting against him, put him aside and set up his brother to be king[4]. So in all things was it with king Richard; concerning whose birth much evil report was noised abroad,

[1] Creton represents him as arriving in England, and as having, along with the young earl of Arundel, the custody of Richard confided to him at Chester.—*Arch.* xx. 173, 375. He is also said to have died of plague, either at Chester or at Coventry.

[2] Bagot had escaped from Bristol. He was afterwards set at liberty, and died a few years later in retirement.—*Arch.* xx. 278.

[3] The appointments of Walden, archbishop of Canterbury, Merke, bishop of Carlisle, and Winchecumb, bishop of Worcester, are here pointed at.

[4] Adam is quoting, from memory, from Geoffrey of Monmouth: "Nobiles namque ubique laborabat deponere et ignobiles exaltare, divitibus quibusque sua auferre, infinitos thesauros accumulans. Quod heroes regni diutius ferre recusantes insurrexerunt in illum et a solio regio deposuerunt" (iij. 17).

as of one sprung not from a father of royal race, but from a mother given to slippery ways of life; to say nothing of much that I have heard [1]. A.D. 1399.

Next, the matter of setting aside king Richard, and of choosing Henry, duke of Lancaster, in his stead, and how it was to be done and for what reasons, was judicially committed to be debated on by certain doctors, bishops, and others, of whom I, who am now noting down these things, was one. And it was found by us that perjuries, sacrileges, unnatural crimes, exactions from his subjects, reduction of his people to slavery, cowardice and weakness of rule—with all of which crimes king Richard was known to be tainted—were reasons enough for setting him aside, in accordance with the chapter: "Ad apostolicæ dignitatis," under the title: "De re judicata," in the Sextus [2]; and, p. 30.

[1] See the account in the *Traïson et Mort*, 215, of Richard's reception by the Londoners with the cry: "Now are we well revenged of this wicked bastard, who has governed us so ill!" Froissart (iv. c. 77) gives shape to these rumours in an apocryphal dialogue between Richard and Henry in the Tower, when the former was said to have resigned the crown. Henry, upbraiding Richard, says: "Et tant que commune renommée court, par toute Angleterre et ailleurs, que vous ne fûtes oncques fils au prince de Galles, mais d'un clerc ou d'un chanoine; car j'ai oui dire à aucuns chevaliers qui furent de l'hôtel du prince mon oncle, que pourtant que le prince se sentoit méfait de mariage, car votre mère étoit cousine germaine au roi Edouard, et le commencoit à accueiller en grand' haine pourtant qu'il n'avoit point de génération, et si étoit sa commère deux fois des enfants qu'il avoit tenus sur le fonds qui furent à messire Thomas de Hollande, elle, qui bien savoit tenir le prince et qui conquis l'avoit en mariage par subtilité et cautelle, se douta que mon oncle le prince, par une diverse voie, ne se voulsist démarier; et fit tant qu'elle fut grosse et vous eut, et encore un autre devant vous. Du premier on ne scut que dire ni juger; mais de vous, pourtant que on a vu vos mœurs et conditions trop contraires et différentes aux vaillances et prouesses du prince, on dit et parole, en ce pays ci et ailleurs, que vous fûtes fils d'un clerc ou d'un chanoine. Car pour le temps que vous fûtes engendré et né à Bordeaux sur Gironde il y en avoit moult de jeunes et beaux en l'hôtel du prince."

[2] Liber sextus Decretalium, ii. tit. xiv. § ij. This was the decree of deposition passed at the council of Lyons, in 1245, by pope Innocent IV. against the emperor, Frederick II.

A.D. 1399. although he was ready himself to yield up the crown, yet for better security was it determined, for the aforesaid reasons, that he should be deposed by the authority of the clergy and people; for which purpose they were summoned.

On Saint Matthew's day (21st September), just two years after the beheading of the earl of Arundel, I, the writer of this history, was in the Tower, wherein king Richard was a prisoner, and I was present while he dined, and I marked his mood and bearing, having been taken thither for that very purpose by sir William Beauchamp[1]. And there and then the king discoursed sorrowfully in these words: "My God!, a wonderful land is this, and a fickle; which hath exiled, slain, destroyed, or ruined so many kings, rulers, and great men, and is ever tainted and toileth with strife and variance and envy"[2]; and then he recounted the histories and names of sufferers from the earliest habitation of the kingdom. Perceiving then the trouble of his mind, and how that none of his own men, nor such as were wont to serve him, but strangers who were but spies upon him, were appointed to his service, and musing on his ancient and wonted glory and on the fickle fortune of the world, I departed thence much moved at heart.

One day, in a council held by the said doctors, the point was raised by some, that by the right of descent from the person of Edmund, earl of Lancaster—they declaring that the same Edmund was the eldest son of king Henry the third, but that, on account of his mental weakness, his birthright had been set aside and his younger brother

[1] Sir William Beauchamp, distinguished as a soldier and sea-captain, became lord Bergavenny in 1392. He died in 1410.

[2] "For God's sake, let us sit upon the ground
And tell sad stories of the death of kings:
How some have been deposed; some slain in war;
Some haunted by the ghosts they have deposed;
Some poison'd by their wives; some sleeping kill'd;
All murder'd." Shakespeare, *Richard II*, act III. sc. ij.

Edward preferred in his place—Richard's succession in the direct line was barred. As to this, see the history in the pedigree[1], known throughout England, that Edward was first-born son of king Henry, and that after him, and before Edmund, Margaret, who was afterwards queen of Scotland, was born to the same king. I have read the following in the chronicles of the friars preachers of London: "There was born Edward, eldest son of king Henry, at Westminster; whom the legate Otho baptized" (book vii. ch. xxv., A.D. 1239). Again: "King Henry gave to his eldest son Edward Gascony, Ireland, Wales, Chester, and Surrey" (book vii. ch. xxxvij., A.D. 1253). Again: "On the fifteenth day of May, in the battle of Lewes, the barons took prisoners king Henry and his eldest son Edward" (book vij. ch. xxxvij., A.D. 1253). Again: "Edward, eldest son of king Henry, went with his wife to the Holy Land" (book vij. ch. xxxvij., A.D. 1271).—*Polychronicon.* Again: "King Henry kept Christmas at Winchester. The same year of our Lord, 1239, was born to king Henry and queen Eleanor their eldest son Edward, on the seventeenth day of June." Again: "The king summoned the queen and his eldest son Edward into France, to treat of a marriage between him and the daughter of the king of Spain, in the year of our Lord 1254, and the thirty-eighth of king Henry." Again: "The same year was sent into Spain, in great state, the king's eldest son Edward, to king Alfonso, for the said marriage." —*Trivet.* Again: "Queen Eleanor brought forth her son Edward at Westminster, in the year of our Lord 1239."

A.D. 1399.

p. 31.

[1] In the MS. the word is written "P. de Grw," as though it were a chronicler's name. The word "pedigree" is meant; and the common genealogical history of the kings of England, of which so many copies written on long vellum rolls are still extant, is referred to. Hearne prints from one of his MSS., at the end of his edition of *Robert of Gloucester*, a "petegreu" of the kings of England from William the Conqueror to Henry VI. The Harleian MS. 326 has the title: "Here begynnyt the petegreu of þe kyng þat now ys." See Skeat, *Notes on English Etymology*, 209.

A.D. 1399. "Queen Eleanor brought forth her daughter Margaret, in the year of our Lord 1241." "Queen Eleanor brought forth her son Edmund, in the year of our Lord 1245."—*Chronicle of Gloucester*[1].

On Saint Michael's day (29th September) there were sent unto the king in the Tower, on behalf of the clergy, the archbishop of York and the bishop of Hereford; on behalf of the superior lords temporal, the earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland; for the lower prelates, the abbot of Westminster and the prior of Canterbury; for the barons, the lords Berkeley and Burnell; for the lower clergy,
p. 32. master Thomas Stow and John Borbach; and for the

[1] This passage is interesting, as it throws some light on the story of the fabrication of a chronicle by John of Gaunt, with a view to make out a claim to the crown by direct descent, and of the investigation of the matter by the Privy Council. Hardyng is the author of the story, and tells it in these words: "For as muche as many men have been merred and yit stonde in grete erroure and controversy, holdyng oppynyon frowarde howe that Edmonde, erle of Lancastre Leicestre and Derby, wase the elder sonne of kynge Henry the thride, croukebacked, unable to have been kynge, for the whiche Edward his yonger brother was made kynge be his assente, as somme men have alleged, be an untrewe cronycle feyned in the tyme of kynge Richarde the seconde be John of Gaunte, duke of Lancaster, to make Henry his sonne kynge, when he sawe he myght not be chose for heyre apparaunt to kynge Richarde. For I, John Hardynge, the maker of this booke, herde the erle of Northumberlande that was slayne at Bramham More in the time of king Henry the Fourth saie, howe the same king Henry, upon Saynt Mathee daye, afore he wase made kinge, put forth that ilke cronycle, claymynge his title to the crown be the seid Edmonde, upon whiche all the cronycles of Westminstre and of all our notable monasteries were hade in the counsell at Westmynstre, and examyned amonge the lordes, and proved well be all theire chronycles that the kinge Edwarde wase the older brother, and the seide Edmonde the younger brother, and not croukebacked nother maymed, but the semeliest person of Engelonde, except his brother Edwarde. Wherfore that chronycle which kynge Henry so put furth was adnulled and reproved" (ed. Ellis, 1812, p. 353). He goes on to say that John of Gaunt forged the chronicle in consequence of the parliament refusing to recognize him as heir to the throne after Richard, and that he published it by placing copies in different monasteries. See *Arch.* xx. 186.

commons of the realm, sir Thomas Grey and sir Thomas Erpingham, knights, to receive the surrender of the crown from king Richard [1]. And when this was done, on the morrow, the said lords, on behalf of the whole parliament and the clergy and the people of the realm, altogether renounced their oath of allegiance, loyalty, submission, service, and what obedience soever, and their fealty to him, setting him aside, and holding him henceforth not for king, but for a private person, sir Richard of Bordeaux, a simple knight; having taken away his ring in token of deposition and deprival, and bringing the same to the duke of Lancaster, and delivering it to him in full parliament on that day assembled. On the same day the archbishop of York delivered first a discourse on the text: "I have put my words in thy mouth" [2]; and then, having been made by king Richard his mouthpiece, he, using the first person, as though the king himself were speaking, read in full parliament the surrender of his royal rank and the release of all his lieges and subjects whomsoever from all submission, fealty, and homage, openly and publicly, as drawn up in writings. And this surrender, the consent of all and every in parliament being first called for, was openly and distinctly accepted. Which being done, my lord archbishop of Canterbury preached on the text: "A man shall reign over my people," [3] wherein he highly lauded the duke of Lancaster and his strength and his understanding and his virtues, exalting him, and deservedly, to be their king; and, among other things, he spake of the shortcomings of king Richard, and specially how he had most unjustly stifled in prison his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, treacherously, and without a hearing or leave to answer; and how he strove to overthrow the law of the land, to which he A.D. 1399.

[1] The Rolls of Parliament (iij. 416) also name sir William Thyrnynge and sir John Markham, justices, and William de Feriby and Denis Lopham, notaries.

[2] Is. lj. 16.

[3] 1 Sam. ix. 17.

A.D. 1399. had sworn [1]. And so, in short, although he had sufficiently made resignation, the sentence of his deposition, drawn up in writing, by consent and authority of the whole parlia-
p. 33. ment, was there openly, publicly, and solemnly read by master John Trevaur of Powis, bishop of St. Asaph. And so, the throne being vacant, by consent of the whole parliament, the said duke of Lancaster, being raised up to be king, forthwith had enthronement at the hands of the said archbishops, and, thus seated on the king's throne, he there straightway openly and publicly read a certain declaration in writing, wherein was set forth that he, seeing the kingdom of England to be vacant, by lawful right of succession by descent from the body of king Henry the third, did claim and take upon himself the crown as his by right [2]; and that, in virtue of such succession or conquest, he would in no wise allow the state of the realm nor of any man to suffer change in liberties, franchises, inheritances, or in any other right or custom. And he fixed the day of his coronation for Saint Edward's day (13th October) [3] next coming. And for that, through the deposing of Richard late king, the parliament which was in his name assembled had become extinct, therefore he ordained a new parliament in his own name as new king, to begin, by consent of all, on the morrow of the coronation [4]. He also thereupon made public proclamation that, if any thought that he had claim to do service or office in the coronation, by right of inheritance or custom, he should send in his petition, setting forth the why and the wherefore, in writing, to the seneschal of England, at Westminster, on the Saturday

[1] This sermon was not delivered by the archbishop till after he had enthroned Henry.—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 423.

[2] Henry's challenge of the crown was made before his enthronement.—*Rot. Parl.* iij. 422.

[3] The Translation of St. Edward the Confessor.

[4] Henry's first parliament met before the coronation, on the 6th October, and was then adjourned to the 14th October, the day after the ceremony. It was dissolved on the 19th November.

next following, and that he should have right in all things. A.D. 1399.

On the eve of his coronation, in the Tower of London and in the presence of Richard late king, king Henry made forty-six new knights, amongst whom were his three sons [1], and also the earls of Arundel and Stafford, and the son and heir of the earl of Warwick; and with them and other nobles of the land he passed in great state to Westminster. And when the day of coronation was come (13th October), all the peers of the realm, robed finely in red and scarlet and ermine, came with great joy to the ceremony, my lord of Canterbury ordering all the service and duties thereof. In the presence were borne four swords, whereof one was p. 34. sheathed as a token of the augmentation of military honour, two were wrapped in red and bound round with golden bands to represent twofold mercy, and the fourth was naked and without a point, the emblem of the execution of justice without rancour [2]. The first sword the earl of Northumberland carried, the two covered ones the earls of Somerset and Warwick, and the sword of justice the king's eldest son, the prince of Wales; and the lord Latimer bore the sceptre, and the earl of Westmoreland the rod. And this they did as well in the coronation as at the banquet, always standing around the king. Before the king received the crown from my lord of Canterbury, I heard him swear to take heed to rule his people altogether in mercy and in truth. These were the officers in the coronation feast: The earl of Arundel was butler, the earl

[1] The MS. reads forty-two, instead of forty-six knights, and makes Henry knight four of his sons, in place of three. Holinshed gives the names of all the forty-six, who were created knights of the Bath. It is nowhere else said that Richard was present at the ceremony.

[2] This was the Curtana. The sword borne by the earl of Northumberland was the one which Henry wore on landing at Ravenspur, and was called the Lancaster sword. The earl did this service for the Isle of Man, which had been granted to him immediately on Henry's accession.

A.D. 1399. of Oxford held the ewer[1], and the lord Grey of Ruthin spread the cloths.

While the king was in the midst of the banquet, sir Thomas Dymock, knight, mounted in full armour on his destrier, and having his sword sheathed in black with a golden hilt, entered the hall, two others, likewise mounted on chargers, bearing before him a naked sword and a lance. And he caused proclamation to be made by a herald at the four sides of the hall that, if any man should say that his liege lord here present and king of England was not of right crowned king of England, he was ready to prove the contrary with his body, then and there, or when and wheresoever it might please the king. And the king said: "If need be, sir Thomas, I will in mine own person ease thee of this office."

This same sir Thomas had this service by reason of his manor of Scrivelsby, in the county of Lincoln, and so he held it by sentence and judgement, in the name of his mother, who was still living, the lady of that manor, as against sir Baldwin Frevyle, who claimed this office in right of his castle of Tamworth[2]. In this case I was counsel to sir Thomas, and I drew for him the following
p. 35. petition to serve as his libel: "Most gracious my lord seneschal of England, prayeth humbly Margaret Dymock, lady of the manor of Scrivelsby, that it please your noble lordship to grant to your said bedeswoman that she may, at the coronation of our most potent lord the king, do the service which belongeth to the said manor, by Thomas Dymock, her eldest son and heir, as proctor of the said Margaret in this matter, in form following: Prayeth Thomas Dymock, first-born son and heir of Margaret

[1] Holinshed says that sir Thomas Erpingham served the office of chamberlain, though it was claimed by the earl of Oxford.

[2] This was a son of the Baldwin who claimed the office at the coronation of Richard II. Both families claimed by descent from the house of Marmion.—Dugdale, *Baronage*, ij. 103.

Dymock, lady of the manor of Scrivelsby, before you, most A.D. 1399.
gracious lord seneschal of England, that you suffer him to have the service belonging and due to the manor of Scrivelsby in the coronation of every king of England; which service sir John Dymock, father of the same Thomas and husband of the said Margaret, and in right of the same Margaret, did in the coronation of Richard, last king of England; and in possession of which service the ancestors of the same Margaret, lords of the said manor, have been from the time of the Conquest till now: to wit, that the king do make deliver to him one of the best chargers and one of the best saddles of our lord the king, with armour and ornaments and appurtenances of the same of full equipment for horse and rider, just as the king himself would be armed when going into mortal battle, to the end that the same Thomas, mounted thus in arms on the same charger, cause proclamation to be made four times within the hall at the time of the banquet that, if any man shall say that Henry, king of England that now is and his liege lord, is not of right king, nor ought of right to be crowned king of England, he, the same Thomas, is ready to prove with his body, where and when and howsoever the king shall think right, that that man lies. Prayeth also the same Thomas the fees and rewards belonging to and wont to be paid for this service when fully discharged, to be to him rendered and delivered."[1] This rough translation out of French into Latin does not pretend to be exact; and so, reader, be lenient.

On this feast, a year past, had Richard late king forced to depart the realm him who was on this same day crowned king. Also, he had caused his parliament to be confirmed at Westminster under pain of full censures by the mouth of Peter du Bois, the pope's legate, and by his own p. 36.
authority. And he had also threatened to destroy with

[1] A copy of the petition in French is to be found in Cotton MS. Vespas. C. xiv. f. 137 b.

A.D. 1399. the last penalties the countess of Warwick, as she sued for her husband who had been condemned, as told above; and this he swore he would straightway do, were it not out of consideration for her sex. On this same coronation-day he had thought to crown his nephew, the earl of Kent, at Dublin, with great worldly pomp, king of Ireland, and had thought to sweep away in destruction many nobles of the realm of England, who were to be craftily summoned to that great ceremony, seeking to enrich with their possessions the same earl and other young men whom, as has been said, he had raised up. But this Richard, with his youthful councillors, may well be likened to Rehoboam, son of Solomon, who lost the kingdom of Israel because he followed the advice of young men[1]. (i Kings xij.)

On the morrow of the coronation, which was the first day of the new king's parliament[2], the commons presented to the king their speaker, sir John Cheyne, knight[3]. The king received liege homage from all the lords spiritual and temporal. Also, the last parliament of the lord Richard, then king, was declared altogether void. And this took place on the Tuesday (14th October). On the Wednesday the king promoted his eldest son Henry, by five symbols, to wit, by delivery of a golden rod, by a kiss, by a belt, by

[1] "Thanne wolde right dome reule, if reson were amongis us,
That ich leode lokide what longid to his age,
And never for to passe more oo poynt fforþer,
To usurpe þe service þat to sages bilongith,
To become conselleris er þey kunne rede,
In schenshepe (ruin) of sovereynes and shame at þe last.
For it ffallith as wel to ffodis of xxiiij ȝeris,
Or yonge men of yistirday to ȝeve good redis,
As becometh a kow to hoppe in a cage!"

Rich. Redeles, iij. 254.

[2] See above, p. 186, note 4.

[3] Sir John Cheyne had been ordained deacon when young, but renounced his orders and became a Lollard and a companion of sir John Oldcastle. For this reason the clergy were hostile to him. He was accepted as speaker; but immediately resigned. John Doreward was chosen in his place.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 51.

a ring, and by letters of creation, to be prince of Wales. A.D. 1399.
Also, the causes of the repeal of that parliament were declared to be because of the fears of, and threats used towards, the peers of the realm if they obeyed not the king's will; secondly, because of the armed violence of the king's supporters, which blazed forth in the parliament; and thirdly, because the counties, cities, and boroughs had not had free election in the choice of the members of the commons. It was also declared that the parliament of the eleventh year of king Richard, which was all the work of the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel, should remain in full force. Also, that any one who had in any way been deprived of his right by Richard's last parliament should then and there be restored to his own. And the king also granted and gave over to his eldest son the p. 37.
principality of Wales, as well as the duchy of Cornwall, along with the county of Chester.

John Halle, servant of the duke of Norfolk, because he was present at, and consenting to, the death of the duke of Gloucester, being condemned by parliament, is drawn, hanged, his bowels taken out and burned before him, and while still living is beheaded and quartered; and the quarter belonging to the right arm is set up on a stake beyond London-bridge.

At the time of this parliament, two of the king's servants dining in London found in five eggs with which they were served the distinct face of a man, exact in every respect, and having the white in place of hair standing clear of the face above the forehead and coming down the cheeks to the chin; and I saw one of them.

The lord Richard, late king, after his deposition, was carried away on the Thames[1], in the silence of dark midnight, weeping and loudly lamenting that he had ever been

[1] He was taken from the Tower, on the 28th October, to Gravesend and removed thence in the disguise of a forester, to Leeds castle, in Kent, and eventually to Pontefract.

A.D. 1399. born. And a certain knight there present said to him: "Remember that thou, in like manner, didst entreat the earl of Arundel in all things most spitefully."

My lord of Canterbury having come back from banishment, and having been restored to his church as against Roger Walden, prayed of the parliament leave to distrain the goods of the same Roger, wherever found, on account of the profits and other his goods received by Roger during the time of my lord's banishment, and so to exact and abate what was due to him; and it was granted. And it is true that the lord Richard had given to the same Roger all the furniture and other the household goods of the same Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury, as being confiscated, as he declared, even to the value of six thousand marks, besides the stock of the manors of the church of Canterbury; which goods the said Roger Walden, being raised to the archbishopric, did hold and enjoy. And of them the earl
p. 38. of Somerset, when the news came of the landing of the said Thomas in the kingdom, seized six cart-loads from the hands of Walden's servants, which he had sent off to Saltwood castle for safety, and afterwards delivered all to the said Thomas. And with regard to this, among other things, on the feast of the Nativity of the Blessed Virgin (8th September), short time before this parliament, while I was dining with my said lord after his return at Lambeth, I saw how the said Roger had taken away and stripped off from the ornaments of halls and chambers, which belonged to my said lord Thomas, but which had been turned into his booty, the arms of my said lord, to wit, those of the earldom of Arundel with a bordure, which he bore as son of the noble earl, and had set up and had sewed over them, in their stead, his own arms: gules, a bend azure and a martlet or [1]. However, they lasted not long; for, taking them down, my lord Thomas again restored his own arms

[1] An impression of Walden's seal with this bearing is preserved in Westminster abbey.

and badges by the skill of the weaver's handiwork. And A.D. 1399.
the arms of the said Roger, thus taken down, as I have said, I saw lying under the benches, a laughing-stock, and cast and flung out of window by the servants. I was likewise a witness when the same Roger came to the palace of my lord bishop of London to seek grace from the duke, now king, and from my said lord Thomas; which, as far as his life went, he found. And so Thomas and Roger, if I may say so, were two archbishops in one church, like to two heads on one body; that is to say, Roger, then in possession by right, by the pope's authority, and my lord Thomas, because he was not yet restored by the pope, in possession in fact, by means of the secular arm, which was all-powerful, because before him alone was borne everywhere the cross of Canterbury, which had been given up to him by the said Roger. This Roger was a modest man, pious and courteous, in speech of profitable and well-chosen words, better versed in things of the camp and the world than of the church or the study. First, he was king Richard's French treasurer (at Calais), then his secretary, and at length treasurer of England and the king's chief councillor[1]. Him the town of Walden in Essex saw exalted from a butcher's son to the said honours, although by a too hasty leap. Whence is fulfilled the proverb: p. 39.
"Quick gains are soon lost"; and, again: "No man was ever great all at once." And hence the verses:—

"When the grave shall be uncovered, bishop Thomas shall be gone,
And upon the earth, uprooted, falls the once exalted stone."

"When the grave shall be uncovered": that is, because king Richard had it without ceasing in his sleep that the head of the earl of Arundel was restored to his body;

[1] Walden was afterwards restored to favour, and became bishop of London in 1404. He died in 1406.

A.D. 1399. wherefore he caused the tomb to be opened[1]. "Bishop Thomas shall be gone": that is, the banishment of the same Thomas. "And upon the earth," etc.: that is, Walden; which signifies the setting up of stones. And this is an ancient prophecy.

The commons prayed of the king, in full parliament, that he would make grants undeservedly to no man, and specially of such things as belonged to the crown. And thereupon the bishop of St. Asaph[2] burst out in these words: "This petition is unmannerly and unjust, in that it argueth for niggardliness in the king, a thing which is contrary to all royalty, whereunto the bounty of an open hand is the rather thought to be seemly. It argueth too that subjects may fetter their king in his own inborn goodness. Which things seem to me unworthy. Therefore let not the king, who giveth, but let him who seeketh unjustly or unworthily rather be punished." And this answer pleased me, according to the passage in the codex of Justinian: "De petitionibus bonorum sublatis."[3]

It was also ordained that the lords of the realm henceforth give not their suit or livery of clothes or badges, or more especially of hoods, to any man, except their own servants who are always with them, by reason of the many strifes which had been thereby caused in the realm.

Also, although all those who had been condemned in the last parliament of king Richard had of pure right been restored to their own, yet it was not so with the earl of Warwick, except by special grace, for that he had confessed that he had traitorously risen up against the king with the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel.

Also, the king removed the body of the duke of Gloucester from the distant place on the south side of the church,
p. 40. where, in dishonour, Richard had caused it to be buried apart from the kings, and laid it with great pomp in the

[1] See Wals. ij. 226; *Annales Ricardi II.* 219.

[2] John Trevaur. [3] Codex, x. tit. xij. l. ij.

place which the duke had got ready in his life-time, A.D. 1399.
between the shrine of Saint Edward and the tombs of his parents, by the side of his wife who had died a short time before[1]. And there and then I heard a good sermon on the text: "Remember the end,"[2] which the preacher divided into three parts: firstly, remember thy life; secondly, thy stewardship; thirdly, thine end. Again, the first he divided into three: remember thy life, in its beginning, in its course, in its departure. So likewise the second: how thou hast entered upon the stewardship, how thou hast got, and how thou hast spent. So too the third: remember thine end, how thou shalt be summoned to judgement, how thou shalt be tried, and how thou shalt be judged. And then ended the parliament.

In these days my said lord of Canterbury bestowed upon me the goodly church of Kemsing along with its chapel of Seal, in Kent, and the goodly prebend of Llandogo, in the collegiate church of Abergwili. And the church of Shire-Newton, in Nether Gwent, which by indulgence of the see apostolic I had held with other cures, I got to be given to my cousin-german sir Thomas ap Adam ap William of Weloc, and his church of Panteg to another cousin, sir Matthew ap Hoel: to be held by them severally.

I also got, by great good fortune, for sir James de Berkeley, lord of Raglan[3], and for his wife Elizabeth and his heirs, under the king's great seal, the confirmation of that and other their lordships.

[1] "Thomas of Woodstock was interred on the south side of the Confessor's chapel, beneath the pavement, under a splendid brass (see Sandford, p. 230), of which nothing but the indentations can now be traced. His widow lies in the chapel of St. Edmund, under a brass representing her in her conventual dress as a nun of Barking." —Stanley, *Memorials of Westm. Abbey* (1868), p. 145, note.

[2] Ecclus. vij. 36.

[3] Sir James Berkeley, younger brother of Thomas, baron Berkeley, married Elizabeth, daughter of sir John Bloet, with whom he had the town and castle of Raglan. Dugdale notices the confirmation.—*Baronage*, i. 361.

A D. 1399. p. 41. Then, too, I saw with king Henry a greyhound of wonderful nature, which, on the death of his master the earl of Kent, found its way by its own instinct to king Richard, whom it had never before seen and who was then in distant parts; and whithersoever the king went, and wheresoever he stood or lay down, it was ever by his side, with grim and lion-like face, until the same king, as is before told, fled at midnight by stealth and in craven fear from his army; and then, deserting him, and again led by instinct and by itself and with no guide, it came straight from Caermarthen to Shrewsbury to the duke of Lancaster, now king, who lay at that time in the monastery with his army, and, as I looked on, it crouched before him, whom it had never before seen, with a submissive but bright and pleased aspect. And when the duke had heard of its qualities, believing that thereby his good fortune was foretold, he welcomed the hound right willingly and with joy, and he let it sleep upon his bed. And after the setting aside of king Richard, when it was brought to him, it cared not to regard him at all other than as a private man whom it knew not; which the deposed king took sorely to heart[1].

[1] By a remarkable coincidence Froissart tells the story of the greyhound, though in a different form. He lays the scene at Flint, at the moment when Henry and Richard are preparing to leave: "Entretenant que on selloit et appareilloit les chevaux, le roi Richard et le comte (Henri de Lancastre) devisoient l'un à l'autre de paroles, et étoient moult fort regardés d'aucuns Londriens qui là étoient; et avint une chose dont je fus informé que je vous dirai. Le roi Richard avoit un lévrier, lequel on nommoit Math, très-beau lévrier outre mesure; et ne vouloit ce chien connoitre nul homme fors le roi; et quand le roi devoit chevaucher, cil qui l'avoit en garde le laissoit aller, et ce lévrier venoit tantôt devers le roi festoyer et lui mettoit ses deux pieds sur les épaules. Et adonc advint que le roi et le comte Derby parlant ensemble en-mi la place de la cour du dit chastel et leurs chevaux tous sellés, car tantôt ils devoient monter, ce lévrier nommé Math, qui coutumier étoit de faire au roi ce que dit est, laissa le roi et s'en vint au duc de Lancastre, et lui fit toutes les contenances telles que endevant il faisoit au roi, et lui assist les

In these days was born at Usk a calf which had two tails, two heads, four eyes and four ears. Such another monster saw I also in my youth in the parish of Llancayo, in the house of a certain woman, Llugu daughter of Watkyn by name. There was born too, in the parish of Llanbatock, a boy with one eye only, placed in his forehead. A.D. 1399.

On the eve of the Epiphany (5th January), the earls of Kent and Huntingdon and Salisbury thought to slay the new king by craft and fraud, and to bring back the deposed king out of prison, for that they had lost their rank as dukes and the possessions of condemned persons which had been given to them [1]. And their chief design was against the castle of Windsor, privily, with a great power of armed men, feigning to hold a tourney there, and so seizing the entrance they would have slaughtered the king and his sons, and others, his body-servants. But the king, forewarned, suddenly hastened to London for safety. Wherefore the earls of Kent and Salisbury, on their way to the county of Chester, to get the favour and help of those who rose in their cause, passed through Cirencester; and there, on the morrow of the Epiphany, they were beheaded in A.D. 1400. p. 42.

deux pieds sur le col, et le commença grandement à conjouir. Le duc de Lancastre, qui point ne connoissoit le lévrier, demanda au roi: 'Et que veut ce lévrier faire?'—'Cousin,' ce dit le roi, 'ce vous est grand' signifiance et à moi petite.'—'Comment,' dit le duc, 'l'entendez-vous?'—'Je l'entends,' dit le roi, 'le lévrier vous festoie et recueille aujourd'hui comme roi d'Angleterre que vous serez, et j'en serai déposé; et le lévrier en a connoissance naturelle; si le tenez de-lez vous, car il vous suivra et il m'éloignera.' Le duc de Lancastre entendit bien celle parole et conjouit le lévrier, lequel oncques depuis ne voulut suivre Richard de Bordeaux, mais le duc de Lancastre; et ce virent et sçurent plus de trente mille."—Froissart, iv. 75. See Wallon, *Richard II.* ij. 488.

[1] Thomas Holland, earl of Kent, was degraded from his dukedom of Surrey, and John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, from his dukedom of Exeter, by Henry's first parliament. John de Montacute, earl of Salisbury, did not hold a dukedom. The third peer who was thus degraded was Edward Plantagenet, earl of Rutland, who had been made duke of Albemarle.

A.D. 1400. a rising of the country people[1]. And many who were found with them were led away to Oxford and were there beheaded; whose bodies, quartered after the manner of the flesh of beasts taken in the chase, partly in sacks and partly slung on poles between men's shoulders, I saw carried to London and afterwards salted[2]. The earl of Huntingdon also, trying to escape through Essex into France, was taken by the country people, and, in the very place where the duke of Gloucester had yielded himself to Richard late king, he was beheaded by clowns and workmen[3]. Regarding which things the king wrote to my lord of Canterbury; who thereupon, taking for his text the words: "Behold, I bring you good tidings of great joy,"[4] made known the news to the clergy and the people of London, in the form of a sermon; and then, a "Te Deum" being sung, giving thanks to God he passed in solemn procession through the city.

Afterwards, many others, amongst whom were master Richard Maudeleyn and William Feriby, clerks, and sir Thomas Shelley and sir Bernard Brocas[5], knights, were drawn and hanged, and, as having knowledge of and as furtherers of this crime, were lastly beheaded.

And now those in whom Richard, late king, did put his trust for help were fallen. And when he heard thereof, he

[1] They were attacked by the townspeople in the house in which they had taken refuge, and were forced to surrender. This was on the 7th January. They were actually beheaded on the next day.—See Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 99.

[2] See the *Traïson et Mort*, 246.

[3] See Wallon, *Richard II.* ij. 517. Huntingdon was caught by the country people and taken to Chelmsford, whence he was sent to Pleshy by Joan de Bohun, countess of Hereford, one of whose daughters had married the duke of Gloucester, while the other was the first wife of Henry IV. She gave up her prisoner to the people, who struck off his head on the 15th January.—Wylie, i. 101.

[4] Luke ij. 10.

[5] Sir Thomas Shelley, of Aylesbury, was a follower of the earl of Huntingdon. Sir Bernard Brocas is wrongly named Barnabas in the MS.

grieved more sorely and mourned even to death, which A.D. 1400.
came to him most miserably on the last day of February, as he lay in chains in the castle of Pontefract, tormented by sir [Thomas] Swinford with starving fare [1].

[1] This is the only chronicle in which any of Richard's keepers is accused by name of having taken a personal part in starving his prisoner. The MS. reads "N. Swinford," Adam not knowing Swinford's Christian name, and therefore writing "N." according to common practice. Sir Thomas Swinford, afterwards captain of Calais, is meant, for he is known to have had the custody of Richard (*Traïson et Mort*, lviij.; Wyntown, ed. Laing, ix. 20, ll. 2001–10). Of the different theories of Richard's death, that, which is supported by our chronicle, of gradual starvation by his keepers seems to be the most probable. The question has been so fully discussed elsewhere, that it would be superfluous in this place to repeat what has been so often told before. As, however, Adam of Usk is a fresh authority, and an important authority as being a contemporary, for the theory of enforced starvation, it may be well to see what the other early chronicles say on this point. Walsingham tells us that on hearing of the death of his friends Richard voluntarily abstained from food. The continuator of the Croyland chronicle has the same story, which is also found in various MSS., such as Cotton MSS. Nero A. vj. and Galba E. vij. The *Annales Ricardi II.* (Rolls series) and Otterbourne follow this account, but add that after abstaining some time Richard was prevailed on to try to take food, but that it was too late as he could not swallow. The Monk of Evesham gives the account of voluntary abstention, but adds an important passage: "Aliter tamen dicitur et verius, quod ibidem fame miserabiliter interiit." Similarly, the Sloane MS. 1776 has an alternative: "Rex Ricardus primo de Turre ad Leedes infra Canciam, sub custodia Johannis Pelham ibidem; deinde ad castrum de Pomfrete, ubi Robertus Watyrton fuerat custos, occulte deductus est, ubi non habuit spem alicujus relevaminis. Et eciam, pre nimia amicorum suorum interempcione, dolore, tristicia areptus, non valuit consolari; nec consolatorem habens, diem clausit extremum, videlicet in festo sancti Valentini. Et qualiter, penitus a nobis nescitur. Quidam tamen opinantur quod fame miserabiliter ibidem interiit; hoc est, quod privabatur penitus ab omni sustentacione naturali, usque ad diem sue resolucionis." The Kirkstall chronicle, Cotton MS. Domitian xij., has: "Postmodo Ricardus quondam rex translatus est de turri Londonie usque ad castrum de Pomfret, ubi, diu ante mortem pane et aqua ut dicebatur sustentatus, tandem fame necatus est, secundum communem famam," in which account it agrees with Harl. MS. 3600, a copy of Higden's *Polychronicon* with continuation. In other MSS. we find more particulars of the duration

A.D. 1400. At the coronation of this lord three ensigns of royalty foreshadowed for him three misfortunes. First, in the procession he lost one of the coronation shoes; whence, in the first place, the commons who rose up against him hated

of Richard's sufferings. The chronicle of Peter de Ickham, in Harl. MS. 4323, states that, on his removal to Pontefract, "per tempus certum custodiebatur," and then, "tandem a cibo et potu per quatuor aut quinque dies restrictus, famis inedia, cum xxij. annis regnasset, expiravit." The same version appears in the chronicles in Cotton MS. Domitian iv., and Harl. MS. 3906, and again in many copies of the English chronicle of the Brut. All these authorities are of value, for, although it cannot be said that they are all contemporary, they are at least early and sufficiently near the time to show that, from the first, rumours of Richard's starvation were very generally believed. Of a later period is the chronicle in Cotton MS. Titus D. x., of the early sixteenth century, which has a more embellished account: that Richard, "ductus de loco in locum, tandem, ut opinio est vulgi, apud Pontifractum cibi inedia interiit. Nam dicitur cibaria in singulos dies, more regio, sibi apposita fuisse, sed esurienti non licuisse degustare." This appears in an English dress in Harl. MS. 53, a version of the Brut chronicle: "In the first yere of the regne of kyng Henry the iiijte, kyng Richard, which that was put doune of his rialte, was in the castell of Pountfret under the ward of sir Robert of Watirton, knyght, and there he was ich day servet as a kynge aught to be that he myght se it, but he myght come to non therof. Wherfore sone aftir he deyd for honger in prison in the same castell, and so he made his ende." Holinshed has printed this account, along with others, of the death of Richard. (For the various discussions on this subject, see *Arch.* vol. xx.; Tytler, *History of Scotland*, vol. iij.; *Traïson et Mort de Richart II.*, Introduction; and Wallon, *Richard II.*, vol. ij.)

The date of Richard's death is put by Adam of Usk rather later than in most of the chronicles. The 14th February is the usually received date. Richard was apparently supposed in France to have been dead as early as the end of January, a deed of Charles VI., dated on the 29th of that month, referring to him as "feu nostre tres chier et tres amé fils Richard" (Rymer, *Fœdera*). That such rumours were current in England is proved by the well-known minute of the Privy Council to which attention was first drawn by sir Harris Nicolas. The date of the council at which this minute was passed has been fixed between the 2nd and the 8th February, and the wording of the original memorandum to which the minute serves as an answer implies, although it does not express, an uncertainty as to whether Richard was actually then living. He was certainly dead by the 17th February, on which date payment was ordered (Pell Issue Rolls)

him ever after all his life long: secondly, one of the golden spurs fell off; whence, in the second place, the soldiery opposed him in rebellion: thirdly, at the banquet a sudden gust of wind carried away the crown from his head; A.D. 1400.

for conveying his body to London. Mr. Wylie (*Henry the Fourth*, i. 114) is inclined to fix the date of Richard's death as early as the middle of January.

An interesting fact in connection with the above-mentioned minute of the Privy Council has hitherto escaped observation. When examining the original rough minutes of the council preserved in the Cottonian library (Cleopatra F. iij. f. 9), I was struck with the care with which an alteration in this particular minute had been made, and then discovered that the minute as we now have it is not the one which was first written. This has been destroyed. The first leaf of the proceedings of this session of the council contains on its face nine memoranda or heads of business to be discussed, with this title: "Fait a remembrer de certains matires necessairs a monsterer au grant conseil du Roy." The first memorandum is: "En primes si R. nadgairs Roy soit uncore vivant a ce que len suppose quil est, ordenez soit quil soit bien et seurement gardez pur sauvacion de lestat du Roi et de son Roiaume." On the back of the leaf are written four rough minutes in answer to the first four memoranda. The minute (the one with which we are concerned) which answers to the first memorandum runs thus: "A le primer article soit parle au Roi qen cas qe R. soit vivant, quil soit mys en seuretee g. [aggreable a] les seignurs et qe sil soit mort qadonqes il soit monstrez overtement au poeple quils en puissent avoir conissance." Now the leaf is composed of three pieces of vellum which are connected together so as to form one sheet. The first piece of vellum, which is a very narrow strip, contains the first memorandum only; the second piece, the second, third, and fourth memoranda; and the third piece, the rest. The minutes in answer to the second, third, and fourth memoranda are written immediately at their back; but the first minute, instead of being written directly behind its memorandum, and on the first piece of vellum, as one would expect, is entered below the fourth minute and on the third piece of vellum. The reason of this is apparent after examining the different pieces of vellum, for it is clear that the second piece has been cut away at the top, part of the words of the second minute having been docked in the process, and that the first narrow piece is an addition to take the place of what has been cut away. There can be no doubt that what took place was as follows:—The first four memoranda were all written on one piece (now represented, in a curtailed form, by the second piece) of vellum, and the four minutes were written on the back in proper order. The

A.D. 1400. whence, in the third and last place, he was set aside from his kingdom and supplanted by king Henry[1].

p. 43. And now, Richard, fare thee well!, king indeed (if I may call thee so) most mighty; for after death all might praise thee, hadst thou, with the help of God and thy people, so ordered thy deeds as to deserve such praise. But, though well endowed as Solomon, though fair as Absalom, though glorious as Ahasuerus, though a builder excellent as the great Belus, yet, like Chosroes, king of Persia, who was

first minute was, however, reconsidered, and was re-written below. But, as the matter to which it related was one of so serious a nature, it was thought proper to destroy the original draft. The clerk therefore cut it away, and necessarily, along with it, the first memorandum on the other side. He then re-wrote the latter on the narrow strip which he fastened to the head of the sheet, as we now have it. On the back of this narrow strip is the heading: "L'informacion de certains matires a monstrer a grant conseil nostre seignur le Roy," which, however, has no connection with the minutes, but which happened to be on the sheet which the clerk used for the fresh transcript. As a further proof how anxiously must have been considered the form in which the minute was to appear, the words: "seuretee g. les seignurs," which are an alteration, are written over an erasure very carefully made; whereas, in the second minute, which contains no state secret, but which has been much altered, most of the corrected words are only crossed out with the pen. Sir Harris Nicolas has made use of the contemporary fair copy of the minutes in the text of his work (*Proceedings of the Privy Council*, 1834, i. 111), and has inserted the rough minutes in a foot-note; but, by a strange oversight, not noticing that the first rough minute was written below the others, he has omitted it altogether.

[1] A parallel is to be found in a chronicle which exists in two MSS. in the British Museum: Cotton, Titus D. xv., and Royal 13 A. xix.:— "Hoc eciam anno Ricardus rex in castello de Pounfreit existens, postquam audivit certum nuncium de morte comitum Huntyngdonie, Sarum, et Kancie, et maxime comitis Huntyngdonie, fratris sui, scilicet Johannis Holland, juravit se cibum nunquam pre dolore commesturum; et sic per quinque dies totidemque noctes a cibariis custoditus circa festum Purificacionis Beate Marie obiit, ut adimpleretur prophecia cujusdam militis Francie ad ejus coronacionem existentis, ubi vidit regis sotularem ad terram cadentem et regem ad prandium cibum suum evomentem. Quod sic exposuit: 'Iste rex gloriosus erit et in cibis valde habundans, sed regni dignitatem amittet, et in fine pre fame morietur.'"

delivered into the hands of Heraclius, didst thou in the midst of thy glory, as Fortune turned her wheel, fall most miserably into the hands of duke Henry, amid the smothered curses of thy people. A.D. 1400.

Meanwhile the lord Despencer, lord of Glamorgan, as knowing and abetting the treason, was most foully beheaded by workmen at Bristol [1]; and the heads of those who thus fell were fixed on stakes and were for some time shown to the people beyond London-bridge. But, seeing that all these things were done only by the savage fury of the people, I fear that they will make this a plea to wield still more in future against their lords the possession of the sword, which hath now been allowed to them against all system of order.

Also, all blank charters, in which throughout England his subjects had placed themselves under their seals at the will of king Richard, as though there had been a new conquest of the realm, were publicly carried to London on the points of spears, and there burned along with their countless seals.

The bishop of Norwich, uncle of the said lord Despencer, being accused of the same treason, was not delivered to a temporal prison, but to the keeping of my lord of Canterbury, from reverence for his priestly office, to await judgement. But afterwards the king frankly restored him to his church and dignity [2].

[1] Thomas Despencer, baron Despencer, was created earl of Gloucester in 1397, but was degraded from that dignity by parliament in 1399. His ancestor, Hugh Despencer, the younger, became possessed of nearly the whole of the county of Glamorgan by his marriage with Eleanor de Clare, the niece of Edward II. He took part in the conspiracy, but escaped from Cirencester when Kent and Salisbury were killed. He was, however, immediately captured and carried to Bristol, and was there beheaded by the mob, on the 15th January.

[2] Henry, bishop of Norwich, was a younger brother of Edward, baron Despencer, the father of Thomas, baron Despencer, who was killed at Bristol. His arrest for complicity in the plot does not appear to be noticed elsewhere.

A.D. 1400. The bishop of Carlisle, late a monk of Westminster, being accused of the said treason before the king's justices, was convicted and condemned by a jury of laymen, and after languishing for a season in chains in prison in the Tower of London, his bishopric being given to another, he was sent back to his old monastery to lead a monk's life, though named to the see of Miletus (?)[1].

p. 44. In this year my lord of Canterbury, calling together his clergy, mournfully laid before them how temporal powers fear not to violate the liberties of the church of England, and specially in seizing, imprisoning, and in judging bishops, without distinction, just as they would laymen. "True! my lord," I said, "in turning over the corpus of the law and the chronicles more cruelty is found to have been inflicted on prelates in England than in all Christendom." And I quoted the chapter: "Sicut dignum,"[2] touching homicide, and many others, and in short, as to the present case of imprisoning bishops, the Clementine chapter: "Si quis suadente,"[3] touching penalties, which was decreed on account of the imprisonment of the bishop of Lichfield[4], in the time of Edward the second, king of England. My lord of Canterbury then recounted how that but lately Simon

[1] Thomas Merke, or Merks, the favourite of Richard II., who remained true to his master to the last, and who is best known by the famous speech which Shakespeare puts into his mouth on slender authority. He was brought to trial at the end of January, and, after being found guilty, he was deprived of his bishopric. He was removed from the Tower to the custody of the abbot of Westminster on the 23rd June. On the 28th November he was pardoned, and was afterwards treated by Henry with lenience and generosity. The pope had translated him to a titular see, "ad ecclesiam de Samastone." This see has been variously identified with Samos, Samos in Cephalonia, and Samothrace. But it has been more recently suggested that it was Samosata; and that the "Millatencis pontificatus" of Adam of Usk is a see (be it that of Miletus or what it may) to which there is some reason to believe that Merke was translated in 1402 (*Dict. Nat. Biog.* xxxvij. 284). He died rector of Todenham in Gloucestershire, in 1409.

[2] Decret. Greg. IX., lib. v., tit. xij. §. vj.

[3] Decret. Clement. lib. v., tit. viij. §. i.

[4] Walter de Langton.

Islip, his predecessor, seeing his suffragan, Thomas Lylde, A.D. 1400.
then bishop of Ely, dragged as a criminal in Westminster hall and standing before the judgement-seat of the king's justices, did take him by the right hand saying: "Thou art my subject. Thou art standing in forbidden court before him who is not thy judge. Come with me." And so, in spite of the judge, he led him away. Yet the bishop, not daring to remain in England, gat him to the court of Rome; and there he caused that judge to be excommunicated, and, for that he had in the meantime died, to be bereft of church burial and cast out into a ditch[1].

Having heard that France and Scotland were making them ready to invade England, the king, taxing only the lords spiritual and temporal, did spare the commons[2].

The body of lord Richard, late king of England, was brought to the church of Saint Paul in London, the face not covered but shown openly to all; and the rites being there celebrated on that night and a mass on the morrow, he was buried at Langley among the Dominican friars. My God!, how many thousand marks he spent on burial-places of vain-glory, for himself and his wives, among the kings at Westminster! But Fortune ordered it otherwise. p. 45.

Brother William Botsam died, bishop of Rochester, sometime of Llandaff, and master John Botsam, chancellor of my lord of Canterbury, was raised to his place[3]. There died also that man of grace, John ap Griffith, abbot of

[1] Thomas Lylde (not William Lyle, as in the MS.), bishop of Ely, was put on his trial and condemned for the homicide, by one of his servants, of a follower of the lady Blanche de Wake. Godwin (*De præsulibus Angliæ*) seems to imply that Simon Drayton, one of the judges, was refused burial in accordance with the terms of excommunication.

[2] The lords agreed to furnish ships and men, and to maintain them for three months; the clergy were to contribute a tenth in lieu of personal service.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 125.

[3] William de Bottlesham, translated from Llandaff to Rochester in 1389, died in February, 1400. John de Bottlesham, his successor, died in 1404.

A.D. 1400. Llanthony, who, when his monastery was by accident burned to the ground, in a few years marvellously restored it from its foundations. To him succeeded a man of the highest prudence, John ap Hoel, prior of the same house.

In this Lent, the lads[1] of the city of London, often gathering together in thousands and choosing kings among themselves, made war upon each other, and fought to their utmost strength; whereby many died stricken with blows, or trampled under foot, or crushed in narrow ways—much to the wonder of the people what this might foreshow: which I believe was the plague that happened next year, wherein the greater number of them departed this life. Yet from such gatherings could they not be restrained, until the king wrote to their parents and masters with grievous threats to prevent them.

On the third day of the month of May, the prince bestowed upon me a prebend in the church of Bangor.

Also, on the fourth day of the same month of May, our lord the king being seated in judgement in his hall within the Tower of London in right royal state, my lord Morley, who had lately appealed the earl of Salisbury of treason[2], for that the said earl, on the day appointed for the combat, answered not to the third summons, prayed that he be adjudged traitor according to the form of the appeal, and that his pledges be condemned in costs. And I, although a chaplain, by sentence and judgement made suit in his name, because the earl, as is aforesaid, was dead. The other side made exception on his death, that it took place before the appointed day. Whereupon I rejoined that by treasonable rebellion he caused his own death, and so he fell by his own assault, quoting the law: "Si decesserit," in the title: "Qui satisdare cogantur"[3] in the Digest;

[1] *i. e.* apprentices.

[2] Thomas de Morley, fourth baron Morley. The trial by battle was to have taken place at Newcastle-on-Tyne.

[3] Digest, ii. tit. viij. l. 4.

and again: "Si homo sisti," law: "Si eum"[1]; title: "Si quis cautionibus"[2]; and title: "Judicatum solvi," law: "Judicatum"[3]; and the codex: "De custodia reorum," law: "Ad Commentariensem.[4]" And in short my side had colour against the pledges of the said earl, and paid me a fee of one hundred shillings and twelve yards of scarlet cloth. A.D. 1400. p. 46.

In this year, that is, in the year of our Lord 1400, a great plague prevailed through all England, and specially among the young, swift in its attack and carrying off many souls. Then died my lord John of Usk, abbot of Chertsey, together with thirteen monks. He, of happy memory, an inceptor in theology, a man surely of the greatest holiness, ever walking as a servant of the Blessed Virgin, gave up his soul to the Lord on the day of her Nativity (8th September) —just as he had ever wished it to happen on that feast, being born in her parish and baptized at her font in Usk. Would I might be worthy to go with him on his way! I was with him in his last moments, and I had his blessing, wherein I rejoice, in these words: "The blessing which the Blessed Virgin gave to her son, our Lord Jesus; the blessing which Isaac gave to his son Jacob, I give to thee." Being comforted in his sleep by the Blessed Virgin, as he was departing he spake thus to his brethren and to me: "The enemy laid snares for me, but the Blessed Virgin Mary, coming with other two ladies to my succour, did utterly drive him out, giving me comfort that henceforth he should not trouble me, and that she herself with those two would not leave me, until she had my soul safe with her." And then as it were a gentle sleep fell upon him. And a certain brother, William Burton, roused him, saying: "Be of good cheer, for you shall fare well!" The abbot replied: "Blessed be God! I shall fare well. Be silent and hearken!" The monk said: "Unto what shall I hearken?" "The host of p. 47.

[1] Digest, ii. tit. ix. l. 10.
[2] Ibid. tit. xj.
[3] Ibid. xlvi. tit. vij. l. 6.
[4] Codex, ix. tit. iv. l. 4.

A.D. 1400. angels singing with sweetest melody, 'Come, blessed son of thy heavenly Father, receive his kingdom for thine eternal inheritance.'" The other said: "I hear it not. Would I were worthy to hear!" And so he peacefully rendered his soul to God.

In the same year the king passed into Scotland with a great and glorious host to tame the fierceness of the Scots[1]. But they, fleeing to places of refuge, laid waste and stripped their fields and houses and farms, lest they should profit our king; and, lurking in thickets and in the hiding-places of secret caves and woods, they withdrew before the king's face. Yet did they often issue forth from these lairs, and in lonely deserts and by-paths they slew and took prisoners very many of our men, doing us more harm than we did to them.

On the day of the Decollation of Saint John the Baptist (29th August) the king returned into England; and hearing at Leicester how Owen, lord of Glendower, along with the Northern Welsh who had raised him up to be their prince, had broken out into rebellion and had seized many castles, and how he had burned on all sides the towns wherein the English dwelt amongst them, pillaging them and driving out the English, he gathered together the flower of his troops, and marched his array into North Wales. And the Welsh being subdued and driven away, their prince with seven others lay hid for a year among rocks and caves. With others who yielded peacefully the king dealt gently, slaying but very few of them, yet carrying away their chieftains captive to Shrewsbury. But afterwards he set them free, on condition of pursuing and taking those who still held out in rebellion in Snowdon and elsewhere.

About the feast of Saint Faith (6th October)[2], the earl

[1] Henry crossed the border on the 14th August.

[2] The only important success of the English after Henry's retirement was that won, on the 29th September, by sir Richard Umfraville, at Redeswere, over a large Scottish force (Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*,

of Northumberland and his son, the lord Henry Percy, had a great battle with the Scots who were invading England after the king's withdrawal; wherein they took one hundred knights and squires of the Scots and put the rest to flight. The victory was won thus: the English grooms in the rear, mounting their masters' horses during the battle, did very craftily and with success use a stratagem of war, shouting with one voice: "The Scots flee! The Scots flee!," whereat the Scots who fought in the forefront of the battle were too sorely scared; and, while they looked behind them to find out the truth thereof, they fell stricken down by a storm of blows from maces about their ears and shoulders. A.D. 1400. p. 48.

On the king's behalf this writ was issued to me, the writer of this history: "The king to his beloved master Adam of Usk, doctor of laws, greeting. We send unto you, in writing, under our seal, certain matters of doubt which concern the estate and honour of our realm, carefully requiring and strictly commanding you that, after examining into the same with good and mature deliberation and fully understanding the matter, you do send in writing your prudent advice and answer, wherein you shall by law maintain your points in each particular, to us or to our council, before the feast of Saint Michael next ensuing, laying aside all excuse and raising no difficulty. And furthermore, on account of the diverse opinions of others skilled in the law, which perchance might delay the advancement of that business, we will and command that you be in your own person before our said council, at Westminster, on the octave of the same feast, together with those who shall be joined with you as counsel in that deliberation, there, all of you, to set forth your advice in those matters, and to bring those opinions to one end and conclusion. And this by the troth whereby you are

i. 140). It seems as if Adam had confounded some such action with the Percys' victory at Homildon Hill in 1402.

A.D. 1400. bounden unto us, and as you love the honour and safety of the estate of our realm, you shall in no wise neglect. Witness myself at Westminster, on the twelfth day of September, in the first year of our reign."[1]

"Follow questions on articles touching the marriage entered into between the lord Richard, late king of England, and the lady Isabella, daughter of the king of France. And first, the motives and causes leading to the contract of such marriage do follow:—

"In the treaty late had by reason of the marriage between Richard, king of England, and the daughter of the king of
p. 49. France,—a hope being raised that the countless great and common offences, evils, inconveniences, wrongs, and shedding of human blood, which by reason of the strifes and wars between the two kingdoms, etc., have hitherto come to pass, might henceforth cease; and that, in better wise and more quickly, good conclusions, peace and concord might be had between the said kingdoms, long to last in times to come; and that the bond of relationship might exist between those kings and their successors; besides, that friendship and intercourse might be wonderfully fostered between their realms and subjects—among other things, it was agreed that the said queen be joined in marriage with the said Richard, and that the king of France, in regard of that marriage, do pay to the said king Richard eight hundred thousand francs; whereof five hundred thousand francs have been paid.

"It was also agreed that, if after solemnization of the said marriage the king of England should decease without children begotten of the said marriage, and if the said

[1] A letter, under date of 12th Nov. 1400, was sent to Oxford, submitting questions on this matter. It is printed in Rymer's *Fœdera*, but the questions do not appear. Isabella's dower amounted to 800,000 francs, of which 300,000 were payable on the marriage, and the remaining 500,000 in five yearly instalments. This last sum was repayable if Richard died without children by the marriage.

queen should survive the king, she being under age or not of the age of twelve years fully completed, then the sum of five hundred thousand francs, or whatever should have been paid of the said greater sum over and above the sum of three hundred thousand francs, be given back to the said queen: whereunto the said king of England did bind himself and his heirs and successors and those who should act for him, and all his goods, moveable and immoveable, then being and to come; yet did not the consent of the parliament, that then was, herein intervene. A.D. 1400.

"Is the king of England, that now is, herein bound by the lord king Richard and held to the restoration of the money so received over and above the three hundred thousand francs, seeing that, in the aforesaid obligation entered into, as above, by king Richard, the realm had not given consent? And, if not, will the causes and suggestions set forth in the treaty of marriage, and related above, which seem to have regard to the public weal of both kingdoms, be of force to compell and bind the king, that now is, to the restoration of such money?

"Also, by virtue of the treaty, our lord the king, that now is, at the time when he was earl of Derby, and other lords more near to the royal blood did one and all, for themselves, their direct heirs, successors, and executors, by their letters promise, of their certain knowledge and full will, that, if the said king Richard should decease before the consummation of the said marriage, the said queen should be restored, free and released from all bonds and hindrances of the marriage and from all other obligations whatsoever, along with all her jewels and goods, to the king of France, her father, or to his heir and successor; the said earl and others, the aforesaid lords, binding and straitly pledging themselves, their heirs, successors, and executors aforesaid, and all their goods whatsoever, moveable and immoveable, then being or to come, on behalf of all and every the aforesaid things to be held, observed, done, and wholly fulfilled, p. 50.

A.D. 1400. according to the form and tenour of the said letters obligatory and of the treaty of and upon the marriage aforesaid.

"It is asked, how far it is to be understood of such goods: whether only of those which had been delivered with the queen, or as well those as others which had from that time until now been gotten by her; and whether the two hundred thousand francs, whereof mention is above made in the aforesaid treaty of marriage, are to be included under and in such goods?"

"Follow questions on other articles touching three millions of crowns to be paid by the king of France to the king of England:—

"Formerly, in the treaty of final peace between John, king of France, and Edward, king of England, among other things, it was agreed that the king of France should pay to the king of England, or to his deputy, three millions of crowns of gold, at certain stated terms; to which payment the king of France, at Calais, whilst he was in the power of the king of England, did bind himself and his heirs, and their goods moveable and immoveable. Whereof the moiety remains to be paid.

"Can the king of England, that now is, justly claim of
p. 51. the king of France, that now is, such money not yet paid? And, if not, doth action belong to the executors of king Edward? And, if so, can the king of England, that now is, the direct and equitable right being yielded to him by the executors of king Edward, claim the money as assignee?"

"Follows the gist of the letters of the said king of France upon the aforesaid article, wherein are contained the causes of such treaty: 'John, by the grace of God king of France, to one and all now being and to come. We make known unto you by these presents that upon all disagreements and variances whatsoever moved between us, for ourselves and all those whom it may concern of the one part, and the

king of England and all those whom it may concern of A.D. 1400.
the other part, for the good of peace, it doth stand agreed, on such a day and in such a place, in manner following: Firstly, that the king of England shall have such castles and such places, etc. Also it is agreed that the king of France shall pay unto the king of England, or to his deputy, three millions of crowns of gold at certain terms,' etc.

"Also, seeing that the king of France, being taken captive in the wars by the king of England, in the agreement of final peace did bind himself and his heirs to pay to the king of England three millions of crowns, whilst the same king of France was at Calais in the power of the king of England, no mention being made in the letters of the said agreement that such payment should be made by reason of discharge of the ransom of the said king of France, is that obligation made void in that it is pretended that fear had influence, notwithstanding that it is well known to all the world that the sum of money was owing for such ransom or discharge?

"After the said obligation, the aforesaid king of France being at Boulogne and at liberty, as he declared, did in his letters recite that article, wherein it is provided that the king of France should pay to the king of England, or to his deputy, the said sum at the terms agreed on, as aforesaid; and afterwards in the same letters he makes known that he had paid to his very dear brother, the king of England, a certain sum of money in part-payment of the said larger sum; and in those letters he bound himself and his heirs, and all their goods whatsoever, to pay to his p. 52.
said brother the remainder not yet paid, willing that all other bonds before made in this behalf be altogether accounted for naught.

"It is asked as before in the said article, and especially whether this second bond of the king of France, made at Boulogne, concerning the aforesaid sum payable to the king of England, doth seem to do away with the first bond

A.D. 1400. made to the king of England or in any way to alter the same, seeing that there appeareth in writing naught distinctly concerning the consent of the same king thereto.

"Also, in another article in the same treaty it is distinctly contained that, the king of France restoring certain strongholds, etc., in like manner the king of England is bound to restore certain other strongholds now held by him and his men.

"If it appear that the king of France hath made surrender of the strongholds, etc., and hath fulfilled all the aforesaid on his behalf, but that the king of England hath not performed his promises, can the payment of the money promised by the king of France to the king of England, as it is contained in the treaty, be justly refused?

"Also, in another article in the treaty whereof mention is made above, it is contained that the king of France did promise to deliver certain strongholds to the king of England, and likewise, after such delivery, that he should make certain abjurations upon certain rights and jurisdiction and other things; moreover, that he should make to be delivered in fact and handed over, at a certain time, at Bruges, to the king of England or his deputies, letters touching such abjuration and surrender, sealed with his seal. And the king of England in like manner promised to surrender certain strongholds, and to renounce his right touching the crown of France, etc.

"If it appear that the king of France, on his side, at the aforesaid day and place, was ready to fulfill all the aforesaid, and if it appear that the king of England performed not the promises made by him in this behalf, nor sent his messengers to Bruges, within the stated time, to receive the promises and offerings of the king of France and to fulfill the promises of the king of England,—can the payment of the money, as aforesaid, promised by the king of France to the king of England, be, on account of the negligence or default of the said king of England, justly refused?

"Also, if the aforesaid sum not yet paid out of the aforesaid three millions of crowns be owing to our lord the king of England, by his own right or by the right ceded by the executors of king Edward, etc., and if it hath so happened that the same lord the king is held to restore to our lady the queen, daughter of the king of France, the two hundred thousand francs, whereof mention is made above,—of such sums, claimed and owed on this side and that, ought, in law, a balance thereof to be struck, although the said queen in this event be deemed a third party, to whom restoration or payment must be made? Because, although the restoration of the two hundred thousand francs be made to the queen herself, yet was the bond in the first place agreed on and settled between Richard, king of England, and Charles, now king of France. And thus it appeareth that the king of England, that now is, in his own right or in that which is ceded to him, can strike a balance between the same parties. A.D. 1400. p. 53.

"Also, supposing, without prejudice to fact, that the king of England, that now is, be held, as earl of Derby, to restore the aforesaid two hundred thousand francs, or can balance them, as abovesaid, are the other lords, who were bound along with him as joint-bails or fellow-sureties, held, according to the terms of their letter, etc., to contribute toward the payment of those two hundred thousand francs, or ought the same king first to discount the same two hundred thousand francs from the goods and jewels of king Richard?

"Also, supposing again, without prejudice to fact, that the king, that now is, is held to give up the queen with her goods and jewels without let, according to the tenour of the clause set forth in the treaty,—can the same king, that now is, making exception in his own right as king of England, or in the right ceded to him by the executors of king Edward, as aforesaid, hinder the surrender of the aforesaid queen with her goods, etc., and make use of his

A.D. 1400. right of arrest, until the king of France shall be willing to make satisfaction to the king, that now is, of the remainder of the three million crowns, which, as is well known, is still due and unpaid?

"To put the question shortly:—Can the king of England, that now is, put forward the aforesaid exception of the unpaid remainder, or any other exception, which shall
p. 54. have force to hinder the surrender of the queen with her goods, until the king of France shall be able to break down or remove such exception?

"Also, the ambassadors of our lord the king, that now is, at Calais, finally promised in the treaty to the ambassadors of the king of France to give up the queen with her goods without let before the feast of the Purification of Our Lady next following, according to the tenour of the bond thereon made.

"If the council of the king of France, or of the same queen, shall refuse first of all to give an acquittance in fact on such surrender, which might sweep away and altogether root out evils without end and cause of offence and human bloodshed (and yet it is likely that all these will otherwise come about by reason of this marriage, as hath often happened between England and France, in times gone by, in like conjunctures), can the aforesaid ambassadors thereupon refuse to give up the queen together with her goods, notwithstanding promise made, and saving too the honour of king and kingdom, until the others shall be willing to deliver such exclusory acquittance, etc.?

"Also, formerly in the treaty of final peace, whereof in the third point above, it was among other things agreed between the same kings, as is declared, although it appeareth not in writing, that king Edward should cause to be driven out and wholly withdrawn, within a fixed time, at his own cost, all his mercenaries and others his subjects who were overrunning the realm of France.

"If it appear that king Edward fulfilled not his promises

within the said term, but did afford in arms help, counsel, and favour to the same his mercenaries and other subjects, it being clear as to the said agreement in the first treaty of peace or after that treaty,—can payment of the said remainder of the three million crowns be justly refused on that score?" A.D. 1400.

On the twenty-fifth day of September, the most noble lady, my lady Philippa, daughter of my lord the earl of March, who was wedded first to that most proper youth the earl of Pembroke who was slain in a tourney at Woodstock, and next to the noble earl of Arundel who was beheaded, and thirdly to the lord Saint John, a little while after she had presented me to the church of West Hanningfield in Essex, and before she had yet reached her four-and-twentieth year, went the way of all flesh at Halnaker by Chichester, and lies buried in the priory of Boxgrove [1]. p. 55.

The Lombards and other merchants from beyond seas in London, who had been wont to dwell in their own inns and had been allowed freely to offer their merchandise for sale, were now, after the foreign fashion, so restrained, that they might not dwell by themselves, but in the house of some citizen who should stand surety; nor were they allowed in any way to offer their goods for sale, except under the care of the same citizen.

The duke of Bavaria, brother of the queen of France, was, by the aid of the French, raised up to be emperor, the king of Bohemia, who for long while had held the empire, being despised as useless and as not yet having been crowned by the pope; but he was defeated in a stricken field together with many of the French by the same king [2].

[1] Philippa, daughter of Edmund, third earl of March, married first John Hastings, third earl of Pembroke, killed 30th December, 1391, *æt.* 17; secondly, Richard Fitzalan, fourth earl of Arundel; and thirdly, Thomas Poynings, baron Saint John.

[2] Wenceslaus, or Wenzel, king of Bohemia, who became emperor in 1378, was deposed by a majority of the electors in 1400; and

A.D. 1400. Four little bells, hanging at the four corners of the shrine of Saint Edward at Westminster, ringing of their own accord and with more than human power, miraculously sounded four times in one day, to the great awe and wonder of the brethren.

The spring wherein the head of Llewellyn ap Griffith, last prince of Wales, was washed after that it was cut off, and which is in the village of Builth, throughout a livelong day did flow in an unmixed stream of blood [1].

One thing in these days I grieve to tell, to wit, that two popes, like to a monster in nature, now for two and twenty years [2], most wickedly rending the seamless coat of Christ, contrary to the words of the Song of Solomon: "My dove is but one," [3] have too sorely vexed the world by leading astray men's souls, and racking their bodies with divers
p. 56. terrors. And woeful it is, if it be true what I call to mind in the text of Scripture: "Ye are the salt of the earth; but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be salted? It is thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of men." [4] Whence, seeing that the priesthood was become venal, did not Christ, making him a scourge of small cords, drive out them that bought and sold in the temple? And hence I fear lest we, with many stripes and spurnings, be cast out from the glory of the priesthood. For I take heed that in the Old

Rupert III., a duke of Bavaria and count-palatine of the Rhine, was chosen in his place. The new emperor succeeded in overcoming opposition, and was crowned on the 6th January, 1401. Adam is wrong in calling him the brother of the queen of France. Isabella of Bavaria, queen of Charles VI., was of another family, being the daughter of Stephen, duke of Bavaria-Ingolstadt.

[1] Llewellyn was defeated and slain by John Gifford and sir Edmund Mortimer, in 1282. His head, with a silver crown on it, was set up in Cheapside, in derision of the prophecy that he was to wield the sceptre of Brutus and ride through Cheapside with a crown on his head.—Thomas, *Memoirs of Owen Glendower* (1822), p. 13.

[2] The papal schism began in 1378, by the elections of Urban VI and Clement VII. [3] Ch. vj. 9. [4] Matt. v. 13.

Testament, after that venality had corrupted the priesthood, the cloud of smoke, the unquenchable fire, and the sweet smell which hurteth not ceased in the temple. In short, lo! the virgin mother, according to the word of Revelation [1], hath fled with the man child into the wilderness from the face of the beast that sitteth upon the throne. But here Plato bids me hold my peace; for there is nothing more certain than death, nothing more uncertain than the hour of death. And so, blessed be God!, I, already making my preparation for death, leave in my native church, that is, of Usk, my memorial in a suitable missal, and a grail, and a tropar, and a sequence-book, and an antiphonal, newly written and drawn up with new additions and notes, and in a full suit of vestments, with three copes, broidered with my bearings, that is: on a field sable, a naked man delving; and I commend myself to the suffrages of prayers offered up therein. Further, I have in view, if God grant it, to adorn the same church with more worthy repair, to the glory of the Blessed Virgin, in honour of whose Nativity it is dedicated; yet do I not reckon this to mine own praise, for God forbid that this record of my foolishness should be seen in my lifetime! A.D. 1400.

The eldest son of France was made duke of Aquitaine, in disinheritance and in defiance of the king of England; and, he dying, the second son, taking his place, passed with an army into the parts of Aquitaine to subdue it [2].

The emperor of the Greeks [3], seeking to get aid against the Saracens, visited the king of England in London, on

[1] xij. 14.

[2] Louis, duke of Guienne and dauphin of France, at this time only six years old, did not die till 1415, when he was succeeded by his brother John, who, in his turn, died in 1417, and gave place to Charles, afterwards king.

[3] Manuel II. Palæologus. He travelled into western Europe at this time, in order to solicit help against the Turks who were besieging Constantinople. He landed in England on the 11th December. See Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, ch. ix.

A.D. 1400. the day of Saint Thomas the Apostle (21st December), being well received by him, and abiding with him, at very
p. 57. great cost, for two months, being also comforted at his departure with very great gifts. This emperor always walked with his men, dressed alike and in one colour, namely white, in long robes cut like tabards; he finding fault with the many fashions and distinctions in dress of the English[1], wherein he said that fickleness and changeable temper was betokened. No razor touched head or beard of his chaplains. These Greeks were most devout in their church services, which were joined in as well by soldiers as by priests, for they chanted them without distinction in their native tongue. I thought within myself, what a grievous thing it was that this great Christian prince from the farther east should perforce be driven by unbelievers to visit the distant islands of the west, to seek aid against them. My God! What dost thou, ancient glory of Rome? Shorn is the greatness of thine empire this day; and truly may the words of Jeremy be spoken unto thee: "Princess among the provinces, how is she become tributary!"[2] Who would ever believe that thou shouldst sink to such depth of misery, that, although once seated on the throne of majesty thou didst lord it over all the world, now thou hast no power to bring succour to the Christian faith?

The king kept Christmas with the emperor at Eltham.

My lord of Canterbury sent the abbot of Leicester and me to the nuns' priory of Nuneaton, in the diocese of Lichfield, to make inquest against sir Robert Bowland, touching divers crimes, heresies, and errors there, as was

[1] These were the "duche cotis," as Langland (*Richard the Redeles*) calls the German-cut clothes said to have been imported with Anne of Bohemia, conspicuous with

"A wondir curiose crafte y-come now of late,
That men clepith kerving þe cloþe all to pecis,"

and with "sleves þat slode uppon þe erthe."

[2] Lament. i. 1.

evilly spread abroad, by him, like a serpent under the disguise of pretended holiness, wickedly committed. And then and there we found that a certain nun, by the unbounded lust of the same Robert, had become pregnant in an unnatural way, as appeared as well by the confession of the same nun as by the letters of the said Robert, and also by a view of her body taken by matrons before the birth; and that she had thereby, on the feast of Saint Petronilla (31st May) last past, borne a daughter who was like to the said Robert. And this did Robert himself confess in full convocation of the clergy. A.D. 1400. p. 58.

On the octave of Saint Hilary (20th January), the king held a solemn parliament in London, at Westminster. And my lord of Canterbury held a great convocation of the clergy in St. Paul's church [1]. A.D. 1401.

In the time of this parliament, the lord Grey of Ruthin, heir by intestacy of the earl of Pembroke and lord of Hastings, being admitted in the court of chivalry of England, moved a costly suit against the lord Edward Hastings, touching the arms of Hastings, to wit: a manche or, on a field gules, which the latter bore as his rightfully, claiming thus to be heir in this behalf. And herein he retained me of his counsel. In this suit, the lord William Beauchamp, lord of Bergavenny, for that he, by gift of the said earl if he should die without heirs of his body begotten, with the king's leave, had a moiety of that lordship and of others which belonged to the earl, for his own advantage worked manfully with the said lord Grey; and no wonder, for the victory of the said Edward would cause both to be utterly barred [2].

[1] The members of parliament assembled on the 20th, but the session actually commenced on the 21st January. Convocation met on the 29th of the month.

[2] Reginald, baron Grey of Ruthin, grandson of Roger, baron Grey of Ruthin, by Elizabeth, daughter of John, baron Hastings (*ob.* 1313), was adjudged heir of John Hastings, third earl of Pembroke (*ob.* 1391), great-great-grandson of the same baron Hastings. Edward, baron

A.D. 1401. In convocation, a certain sir William Sawtre, chaplain, being found guilty of, and condemned for, heresy, straightway, on such sentence being delivered against him, with great heat spake to my lord of Canterbury these words: "I, sent by God, declare to thee that thou and all thy clergy and the king also shall die anon an evil death; and the tongue of a strange people shall hold sway in the land. And this evil standeth waiting even in the gates." And he being thus condemned, having first been solemnly degraded, was afterwards, in Smithfield, in London, chained standing to a post in a barrel, packed round with blazing faggots, and was thus burned to ashes [1].

In the time of this parliament, at Lent, one William Clerk, a writer of Canterbury, but born in the county of Chester, was condemned by judgement of the court military, and was first reft of his tongue, for that he had uttered against the king wicked words, laying them to the charge of others, and then of his right hand where-
p. 59. with he had written them, and lastly by penalty of talion, because he made not good his charges, was beheaded at the Tower.

Ambassadors of state, on behalf of the duke of Bavaria, who had been, as above said, lately elected to the empire,

Hastings, was son of Hugh, baron Hastings, of Gressing Hall, co. Norf., great-grandson of the half-blood of the same John, baron Hastings. William Beauchamp, baron Bergavenny, was son of Thomas Beauchamp, earl of Warwick, by Katherine, daughter of Roger Mortimer, earl of March, and sister of Agnes, wife of Lawrence Hastings, first earl of Pembroke and lord of Bergavenny. The suit for the arms was decided in favour of lord Grey, after lasting twenty years.

[1] William Chatrys, or Sawtery, or Sawtre, formerly chaplain or parish priest of St. Margaret's, King's Lynn, and of Tilney, co. Norfolk. He was charged with heresy before Henry Spencer, bishop of Norwich, and was condemned; but he recanted and was pardoned, 6th February, 1400. He then became chaplain of St. Osyth in Walbrook, and, again preaching heresy, he was brought before convocation, 12th February, 1401. He was convicted, publicly degraded in St. Paul's on the 26th February, and burned on the 2nd March.

arrived in England, for the marriage of the king's daughter with him[1]. And I said to them aside: "Is not the king of Bohemia elected and in possession of the empire? Why then this new election, with the former one not quashed?" One of them, who was a priest of rank, answered me: "Because he was useless, and, as he was not yet crowned by the pope, the electors have thus done in this behalf." Then said I: "By the chapter: 'Venerabilem,' in the title: 'De electionibus,'[2] it is acknowledged that this power belongeth to the pope alone, because he himself did carry over the empire from the Greeks to the Germans." Then the bishop of Hereford bade me hold my peace. A.D. 1401.

From this priest I had these two verses against simony, which did please me:—

"These two evils shalt thou bear, if that thou be Simon's heir:
Thou shalt burn when thou art dead; living, thou shalt want thy bread."

But now as to what is touched on above concerning the election of the emperor, and how many and what crowns he hath, and by whom he is elected and receives them, and what they mean. There are seven electors, whence these verses:—

"From Maintz and Trier and eke Cologne
Come chancellors for Cæsar's throne.
A steward, the palgrave serves his lord;
And Saxony doth bear the sword.

[1] Negotiations for the marriage of Henry's daughter, Blanche, with Louis Barbatus, son of Rupert, count-palatine and emperor of Germany, which took place in 1402. Rupert sent three commissioners to treat with Henry, on the 9th January. Two of them were knights; the third was "Thilmannus de Smalenborch, decanus ecclesiæ Beatæ Mariæ ad gradus Coloniensis," the priest of rank with whom Adam conversed (*Fœdera*, viij. 170). The terms of the contract of marriage were settled by the 7th March.

[2] Decret. Greg. IX. lib. i. tit. vj. § 34.

A.D. 1401.

As chamberlain a marquis bends;
Bohemia's king the wine-cup tends.
On whom these princes' choice doth fall,
He reigneth over-lord of all."[1]

Extract: "De re judicata"; chapter: "Ad apostolicæ"; penultimate gloss of Johannes Andreæ [2].

The first crown, which is of iron, in token of valour, shall the archbishop of Cologne give to the elect; the second, of silver, in token of chastity, shall the archbishop of Trier give; the third, of gold, in token of excellence,
p. 60. shall the archbishop of Maintz give, and this last shall the pope, in the confirmation of the elect, place upon his head as he kneels at his feet in token of humility and to do honour to the holy Roman church, whose vassal he is.

It was ordained, in this parliament, that the men of the marches might use reprisals against Welshmen who were their debtors or who had injured them, a truce of a week for making amends being first had [3].

Also, on behalf of the prelates, it was proposed that, whereas they are summoned to parliament as barons and so hold their temporalities of the king, therefore their rank is not lower than that of the other patrons of the kingdom, as to collation of benefices. But the commons stood out for papal provision in relief of the universities and the clergy. The prelates then undertook of their own free

[1] Another version of the lines appears in the Antwerp edition of the Sextus of 1573:

"Magna Maguntia, crassa Colonia, Treveris alma,
Atque Palatinus dapifer, dux portitor ensis,
Marchio præpositus cameræ, pincerna Bohemus,
Romanum regem statuendi dant sibi legem."

[2] Sext. Decret. lib. ii. tit. xiv., "De sententia et re judicata," §. ij., "Papa Imperatorem deponere potest ex causis legitimis," beginning with the words "Ad apostolicæ."

[3] See *Rot. Parl.* iij. 474, for the ordinance sanctioning reprisals against the Welsh.

will to make provision of benefices within the kingdom to pious clerks[1]. A.D. 1401.

I knew a certain monk in the Charter-house, near to London, who was of good health and strong, though he fasted of his own will from all kinds of food for a whole fortnight together. Whereupon the prior of the house, whose counsel I was, put the question to me, whether, if the man should in such case die, he would deserve to enjoy church burial.

In this parliament and convocation there were granted unto the king by the clergy a tenth and a half, and by the people a fifteenth of all goods, with two shillings from every tun of wine, and from other merchandise eight pence in the pound, though with much murmuring and smothered curses of clergy and people.

This parliament was ended on the tenth day of the month of March; about which time, a little before, I heard debated very many harsh things to be put in force against the Welsh, to wit: that they should not marry with the English, nor get them wealth nor dwell in England, and many other grievous things. And, as God knoweth me, the night before, there roused me from my sleep a voice thus sounding in mine ears: "The plowers plowed upon my back," etc., "The Lord is righteous," etc., as in the psalm: "Many a time have they afflicted me."[2] Whence p. 61.
having awoke, and dreading that that day should bring me forth some mishap, I fearfully commended myself to the special governance of the Holy Ghost[3].

[1] See *Rot. Parl.* iij. 458, 465, touching relaxation of the statute of provisors. The commons petitioned, on behalf of the universities of Oxford and Cambridge, that the king would hold them in special remembrance, "queux sont founteins de Clergie en ceste Roialme, et par especial les Graduatz, en relevation et sustentation de la Clergie et de la Foie Catholike."

[2] Ps. cxxix.

[3] See the ordinances, 18th March, 1401. *Fœdera*, viij. 184.

A.D. 1401. *Here followeth the year of our Lord* 1401[1].

The earl of Warwick, a man of most kindly nature, of whom I have spoken above, having been delivered from prison[2], was taken from this life on Good Friday (1st April), a day which he was wont to honour by large alms, penances, and other deeds of devotion in many ways, and changed the fleeting things of earth for those which last for ever in heaven, leaving an only son his heir, to whom the king, giving him grace of two years of nonage, delivered his inheritance.

William ap Tudor and Rhys ap Tudor, brothers, natives of the isle of Anglesey, or Mona, because they could not have the king's pardon for Owen's rebellion[3], on the same Good Friday seized the castle of Conway, which was well stored with arms and victuals, the two warders being slain by the craftiness of a certain carpenter who feigned to come to his accustomed work; and, entering therein with other forty men, they held it for a stronghold. But, straightway being beleaguered by the prince and the country, on the twenty-eighth day of May next following they surrendered the same castle, cowardly for themselves and treacherously for their comrades; for, having bound nine of their number, who were very hateful to the prince, by stealth as they slept after the night watches, they gave them up, on condition of saving their own and the others' lives. And the nine thus bound and yielded up to the prince they straightway saw drawn, disembowelled, hanged, beheaded, and quartered.

[1] Commencing in the Old Style on the 25th March.

[2] He was set at liberty by Henry, and was restored in blood and honours, in 1399. The date of his death is usually stated to be the 8th April.

[3] William ap Tudor and Rhys ap Tudor were excepted, with Owen Glendower, in the pardon granted to the people of Anglesey, Merioneth, etc., 10th March, 1401. They surrendered the castle on condition of pardon.

At this same time certain men of the town of Usk, A.D. 1401.
secretly leaving the church during the service of the Passion of our Lord, entered by craft into the castle, and, breaking his prison, set free one John Fitz Pers, late seneschal therein, who, having been accused by evil report of adultery with a certain lady[1], had been, to all men's wonder, condemned to mortal penalty by sir Edward p. 62.
Cherleton, who was only her natural brother, and now lay naked undergoing punishment; and they gave him up, to their great delight, to the lord Bergavenny in his castle. Yet he was afterwards on this account exiled by the king for seduction.

In these days [Tamerlane], the son of the king of Persia, A.D. 1402.
conquered and took captive in a stricken field the soldan of the Turks of Babylon, called "Ilderim,"[2] who had struck great dread into Christendom, as boasting that he would destroy the faith, and who had been wont to invade the Christians, and especially the Hungarians, with a hundred thousand warriors; and he utterly destroyed Jerusalem, and held those parts with great state. Wherefore the pilgrimage of Christians to those parts is now hindered.

On the first day of May, at Norton St. Philip, the cloth A.D. 1401.
merchants slew, in the middle of the market-place, a certain

[1] The words "de adulterio cum domina quadam quia diffamatum" are an alteration from "propter adulterium cum domina . . . ." The erased words are probably "de Usk priorissa." I suppose that Adam means to say that the lady was a natural sister of sir Edward Cherleton. The words "mirabiliter" and "in ipsius . . . . grates" are also written on an erasure. And "hac de causa" seems to be a correction on "acta causa."

[2] The MS. reads "Aremirandine," which may be a corruption of the name "Ilderim" (or Thunderbolt) given to Bajazet I. on account of his astonishing conquests; or, perhaps more probably, of a title compounded of *amir*. Walsingham and other chroniclers refer to the battle as being fought against Balsak or Bassak, a son of Bajazet, who was named "Admiratus": a title in which may be recognized the origin of our word "admiral." Bajazet was defeated and taken prisoner by Tamerlane at Angora, 28th July, 1402.

A.D. 1401. servant of the king [1], who, bearing royal letters, sought to exact for sale of such cloths, contrary to the king's promise made on his happy coming into the land, a tax, rate, or due, which had been remitted. Wherefore, because the king's justices, although peers of the realm, were unable to punish such excess, on account of the resistance of the country people, the king in his own person coming to the place settled the disturbance in some way, though with gentle punishment.

Another such tax-gatherer, at Dartmouth in the county of Devon, being attacked by the people, seized a boat and hardly got out to sea.

At Bristol, the wives, acting the part of their husbands, gave the gatherers a like rebuff, sometimes giving and receiving wounds.

The lord of the Orkney Isles [2], to the great injury of my lord of March, who was still in wardship of the king, thought good to attack Ulster in Ireland belonging to the earl.

p. 63. On the feast of the Ascension of our Lord (12th May), in this year, the villeins of Bergavenny rose against their lord, the lord William Beauchamp [3], and, setting free, at the very gallows, three men condemned to death for theft, who on that same day, at the will of that second Jezebel, the lady of the place, without reverence to festival or time, were to be hanged, overwhelmed with a flight of arrows sir William Lucy, knight, who had been appointed to the execution.

On the eve of the Apostles Peter and Paul (28th June), Isabella, daughter of the king of France, queen of England and wife of Richard late king of England (though not yet

[1] His name was Thomas Newton. The riot took place rather earlier in the year.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 198.

[2] Apparently Henry Sinclair, second earl of Orkney. Henry, the first earl, died about 1400, but the exact date is uncertain.

[3] William Beauchamp, baron Bergavenny, married Joan, daughter of Richard Fitzalan, earl of Arundel (*ob.* 1397). She died in 1435.

eleven years of age), after much treating thereon, departed A.D. 1401.
from London to go to her father, clad in mourning weeds, and showing a countenance of lowering and evil aspect to king Henry, and scarce opening her lips, as she went her way. Concerning her departure, of which I was witness, the people were moved, and those in power chafed, some cursing her coming into this land, as being the cause of all its troubles, others declaring that, now she was gone, she would bring on us greater worry by the kindling of her vengeance for the death of king Richard, her late husband.

In this year of our Lord 1401, on the feast of the Commemoration of Saint Paul (30th June), a certain king of arms of Scotland, called in English a herald, was, for evil things spoken by him against king Henry in the kingdom of France, condemned by the court of chivalry, being first stripped of his badges and with his face turned to his horse's tail, to ride through London and then to have his tongue cut out[1]. But the king sent him back to the king of Scotland, his master, with letters setting forth his disgrace, in a more handsome way than that same ride.

On the same day was a great suit in the same court between the lord Grey of Ruthin, for whom I appeared, and the lord Edward Hastings, for the arms: on a field gules, a manche or, whereof above, which were formerly those of the lords of Bergavenny; and between sir John Colvylle of Dale[2], against whom I pleaded, and sir Walter p. 64.
Byttervey, of the county of Salop, knights, for the arms: on a field or, a fess, three torteaux in chief gules; judgement

[1] His name was Brice or Bruce. He had been seized and committed to the Tower on the 25th May.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 193.

[2] Executed, in 1405, for complicity in archbishop Scrope's rising. Shakespeare introduces him in the *Second Part of king Henry the Fourth* (act IV. sc. iij.) as Falstaff's prisoner. An impression of his seal of arms, with the bearings mentioned in the text, is in the British Museum, no. xlix. 17.

A.D. 1401. of possession being refused to both sides, and they urging the suit with much heat.

All this summer, Owen Glendower, with many chieftains of Wales, who were held for exiles and traitors to the king, lurking in the mountainous and wooded parts, sometimes pillaging, sometimes slaying their foes who laid snares and attacked them, harassed with no light hand the parts of West and North Wales; and they took prisoner the lord Grey [1].

The French invaded and seized to their own use a great part of Gascony, which clave to England, and specially all the county of Perigord [2], to wit, the city itself with thirty castles and all the lands of the same county. I saw the count, on the abovesaid day, come to the king to tell him of these things.

Then also I saw some lords of Ireland who loudly complained before the king against the fierceness of the Irish mercenaries.

Tideman, bishop of Worcester, sometime monk of Hales, whose counsel I had been, and whom king Richard, after that he had been driven forth from his monastery for the evil arts of brewing charms and weaving spells, raised up to be bishop, first of Llandaff, and then of Worcester, ended his days on the sixth day of June [3]. Wherefore the king wrote to the pope on behalf of master Richard Clifford, keeper of his privy seal, that it would please him, having changed the provision of the church of Wells,—which had

[1] Glendower's rebellion first arose out of a quarrel with lord Grey of Ruthin. Grey was taken prisoner early in 1402, and paid 10,000 marks for his ransom.

[2] Archambaud IV., count of Perigord, was, for rebellion, deprived of his county and condemned to death, in April 1398; but the capital sentence was remitted. He fled to England at the end of the year. His son, Archambaud V., was likewise banished in the following year. The county of Perigord was given to Louis, duke of Orleans.

[3] Tideman de Winchecumb, abbot of Beaulieu, bishop of Llandaff, 5th July, 1393; translated to Worcester, 25th January, 1396.

been made to the same Richard, who however had not yet A D. 1401.
been consecrated by reason of the king withstanding it,—
to make provision to him of the church of Worcester, and
to master Henry Bowet, doctor of laws (with whom I had
been retained), of the church of Wells, which had now
been vacant for a year and a half on account of the said
resistance [1].

On the same feast of Commemoration of Saint Paul
(30th June), the lord George, earl of Dunbar in Scotland [2], p. 65.
became the liege-man of the king of England, yielding up
to him all his possessions and strongholds held in the
kingdom of Scotland; but it was said that the Scots,
forestalling this his deed, seized the same to the use of the
king of Scotland, so that such homage and surrender
seemed to do but little profit, aye very little, to the king
of England.

Behold!, there was sent to king Henry the following
letter [3], suiting well with the times: "Most illustrious

[1] Richard Clifford, dean of York, bishop of Worcester, 1401; translated to London, 1407. Henry Bowet, archdeacon of Lincoln, bishop of Bath and Wells, 1401; translated to York, 1407.

[2] George, earl of Dunbar and March, renounced his homage to his king on the 25th July, 1400. He had taken offence because the duke of Rothsay, son of king Robert III., had broken a contract to marry his daughter. He returned to Scotland in 1408.

[3] This letter was addressed to Henry by Philip Repyngdon, or Repington, then abbot of the monastery of St. Mary de Pré at Leicester. Repyngdon had been an active supporter of the tenets of Wycliffe, but abjured in 1382. He was abbot of St. Mary de Pré from 1394 to 1404; chancellor of the university of Oxford in 1397, and again in 1400–1402; bishop of Lincoln, 1405–1419. He was made a cardinal by Gregory XII. in 1408. He resigned his bishopric on the 10th October, 1419; and died probably in 1424. Henry, on his accession to the throne, made Repyngdon his chaplain and confessor, and admitted him to his friendship. An interesting anecdote, illustrating their intimate relations, is told in the MS. register of the charters of Leicester abbey (Cotton MS., Vitellius F. xvij. f. 42 b), and is quoted, not quite accurately, by Tanner (*Bibliotheca*, 622). It is to the effect that, immediately after his victory at Shrewsbury, Henry sent a special messenger to Repyngdon: "Memorandum quod

A.D. 1401. prince and most serene lord, may it please your highness, with your wonted graciousness, to look favourably upon me your highness's servant, who, filled heart and soul with grief, lie prostrate at your feet. Whereas your singular serenity did require of me, the least of your servants, when last I went out from before you with heavy heart, that, if I should hear aught adverse, I should make it known unto your excellency without delay, now, as your most obedient servant, do I take my pen in my hand to show what I have heard and seen. Truly, most noble prince, as the wise Solomon doth bear witness in the Proverbs of the Holy Ghost: 'Faithful are the wounds of a friend; but the kisses of an enemy are deceitful,'[1] therefore, as a true lover of you and of your kingdom, and, according to my strength, a faithful servant to God and to you, I have chosen, with the psalmist[2], rather to be 'a doorkeeper in the house of my God,'[3] for the truth's sake, than, with traitor Judas, to live amongst kingly pleasures and carry on my lips the kiss of flattery. Therefore, dissolved in tears, and my heart torn with wounds by reason of my grief, I declare with the prophet that 'they which call thee
p. 66. blessed cause thee to err, and destroy the way of thy paths.'[4] And hence, of such great desolation in the hearts of the prudent, for the disorder and tumult which they

Henricus quartus, finito magno bello in campo Salopie et victoria habita, confestim fecit proclamacionem per totum exercitum suum si aliquis servus abbatis Leycestrie fuerit ibi. Statim venit unus servus dicti abbatis, cui rex tradidit annulum de digito suo, donans ei c. solidos, precipiendo quod cum omni festinacione pergeret ad dominum Philippum, abbatem Leycestrie, et nullo modo quiescat, donec traderet ei dictum annulum, et diceret ei quod rex vivit, habens victoriam de inimicis suis, benedictus Deus!" The same MS. records (f. 43) Repyngdon's gift to the abbey of a small cross of gold, which had been given to him by Henry. Adam was associated with him in the enquiry at Nuneaton: above, p. 220.

[1] Prov. xxvij. 6.

[2] baptista. MS.

[3] Ps. lxxxiv. 10.

[4] Is. iij. 12. Author. vers., "they which lead thee," etc.

fear shall in short time arise in this land, never, from the days of my youth, do I remember to have heard. For law and justice are banished from the realm; thefts, murders, adulteries, fornications, extortions, oppressions of the poor, hurts, wrongs, and much reproach, are rife; and one tyrant will doth serve for law. And therefore sure am I that if the gospel of Christ be true, which saith that 'every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation,'[1] and if the words of the wise man be not foolishness, who declareth that 'because of unrighteous dealings, injuries, reproaches, and divers deceits, the kingdom is translated from one people to another'[2]—if, I say, all these things do wax unbridled in the land, and there be no man of power in the kingdom, clerk nor knight, who, as a faithful minister of Christ, may stand up against or heal these and other countless offences and scorn of our God, I say, with the faithful prophet, that the Lord God, strong and long-suffering, 'is angry with the wicked every day, and if ye turn not, he will whet his sword; he hath bent his bow, and made it ready. He hath also prepared for him the instruments of death; he ordaineth his arrows against the persecutors,'[3] so that, after that the manifest miracles of God and his exceeding loving-kindnesses have in fact and deed been despised or unheeded, he shall bring down swift and raging vengeance upon his unthankful servants and those who openly despise him. But we hoped that your wonderful entry into the realm of England, which I doubt not was the work of the hand of God, would have redeemed Israel, and would have turned to repentance those guilty of all those sins and wicked contempts of God, 'for the punishment of evil-doers and for the praise of them that do well.'[4] But now the prudent do weep, and the froward laugh; the widow, the fatherless, and the orphan wring their hands; and tears flow down the cheeks of those who, A.D. 1401. p. 67.

[1] Luke xj. 17.
[2] Cf. Ecclus. x. 8.
[3] Ps. vij. 11–13.
[4] 1 Pet. ij. 14.

A.D. 1401. but a little while ago, with applauding hands and praising God with one voice, went forth with the sons of Israel, on the day of Palms, to welcome Christ, and who cried aloud of you, their anointed king, as of another Christ: 'Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord, our king of England!'[1] hoping for a happy reign over the land. But now 'our harp is turned to mourning,'[2] and our joy is changed into sorrow, while all evils are multiplied, and the hope of healing hath with tearful sadness gone out from the hearts of men. Therefore doth God, who is a righteous judge, as a just punishment and vengeance on the neglect and carelessness of the rulers of the land, permit the commons, like wild beasts, without rule and without reason, to sit in judgement, and to usurp, contrary to nature, the government which belongeth to those above them, and to rage like the brutes, without the balance of reason, against those who are above them, those who are equal with them, and those who are below them. And in truth, if I mistake not, well may your royal authority wax wroth at the rebellion of the people, and so sorely may your vigour and warlike fierceness be roused, that even in one province of your kingdom, perhaps, which God forbid!, some twenty thousand of your liegemen may fall by the edge of the sword, till the fury of the executors be glutted—you, who, when you came into the realm of England, did pledge yourself to God and the people to shield from their enemies all and every the dwellers in the realm, poor and rich, great and small. But not thus will the murmuring of the people cease, nor will the displeasure of our angered God; but more and more will it be roused to fury, and more and more, when the time cometh, will it rage, even to vengeance, until the law and the lawful justice of your realm shall be kept, and wrongs and unjust deeds and oppressions of the people shall be done away and blotted out,

[1] Matt. xxj. 9. [2] Job xxx. 31.

and, by the upright ruling of justice, every man shall have his own; so that peace may first be re-established between God and man, and thence may afterwards in deed and in truth be had between man and his neighbour. 'For who hath hardened himself against him, and hath prospered?'[1] Because your sins and 'your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and have hid his face from you,'[2] therefore, by the just judgement of God, 'as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law,'[3] and they who despise the law, being convinced of the law, shall be justified according to the law. And, according to the blessed James, 'not the hearers of the law are just before God, but the doers of the law shall be justified'[4]; and, on the other hand, the despisers of the law shall be confounded, as within two years we beheld ensampled in king Richard, as in a wonder-mirror: a thing ever to be holden in unfailing and undying remembrance by the whole world and for all ages to come. Therefore may my God, the sun of justice, take away the veil from your eyes, that you may clearly see with the eyes of your mind what, at your happy coming into the kingdom of England, you did vow in public and in private to a faithful God who forgetteth not, and, further, what justice and what obedience you have repaid to a thankworthy and gracious God, and to the kingdom of England, for all his benefits. And if you find aught wanting, speedily, for fear of vengeance, hasten to repay; and if you find aught of righteousness, give thanks to the Lord, the giver of all good things, who rendereth justly to every man according to his deserts. And may the Blessed Trinity, in whose hand are the hearts of kings and the governance of kingdoms, give to you a teachable and a yielding heart, easily led to all good, to fulfill with faithfulness the bounden duty of kingly rank, and to understand in your heart and throughly, and to

A.D. 1401. p. 68.

[1] Job ix. 4. [2] Isaiah lix. 2. [3] Rom. ij. 12. [4] Jas. i. 22; Rom. ij. 13.

A.D. 1401. heal the sufferings of your people; and may the Lord open your heart in his law and in his commandments, and stablish peace in the kingdom of England for ever and
p. 69. ever! Written, if it please your lordship, with a trembling heart, and with yearning love, at London, on Wednesday, the morrow of the Invention of Holy Cross (4th May), by the hand of your bedesman. Most serene prince, these things, as a true worshipper of God, and as a friend of your government, if good, and as a faithful lover and bedesman of the state and of your realm, giving freedom to my heart's thoughts, have I already spoken by the words of my mouth in your presence; and now, if it please you, I write them unto you, burning with the same desire and love, aye yearning love, 'before it come to pass, that, when it is come to pass, you might believe, and that, when the time shall come, you may remember that I spake to you, saying: When he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth; and he will shew you things to come.'[1] Behold!, 'O greatly beloved,'[2] I yearn with love."

On the twenty-eighth day of the month of July, in the year of our Lord 1401, the aforesaid queen of England, still a child, crossed over to Calais, and there, until the first day of August next following, during the treating between our people of England and the councillors of the king of France, she stayed; and on that day she, together with her jewels and dower, was honourably received by the Frenchmen, to be sent to the king of France, her father, all the English, of either sex, being sent back to their own homes[3].

In this summer the fleets of England and France attacked each other much at sea.

[1] John xiv. 29; xvj. 4, 13. [2] Dan. ix. 23.

[3] Isabella rested three days at Calais, and on the 31st July was conducted to Leulinghen, where, after final arrangements, she was handed over to the French commissioners.

On the morrow of the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin (16th August), in the same year, our lord king Henry, with the peers from all parts of the realm hereunto summoned, in a great and solemn council holden at Westminster, determined that his adversaries of France and Scotland should be by him assailed in war. A.D. 1401.

In this autumn, Owen Glendower, all North Wales and Cardigan and Powis siding with him, sorely harried with fire and sword the English who dwelt in those parts, and their towns, and specially the town of Pool. Wherefore the English, invading those parts with a strong power, and utterly laying them waste and ravaging them with fire, famine, and sword, left them a desert, not even sparing children or churches, nor the monastery of Strata-florida, wherein the king himself was being lodged, and the church of which and its choir, even up to the high altar, they used as a stable, and pillaged even the patens; and they carried away into England more than a thousand children of both sexes to be their servants. Yet did the same Owen do no small hurt to the English, slaying many of them, and carrying off the arms, horses, and tents of the king's eldest son, the prince of Wales, and of other lords, which he bare away for his own behoof to the mountain fastnesses of Snowdon. p. 70.

In these days, southern Wales, and in particular all the diocese of Llandaff, was at peace from every kind of trouble of invasion or defence.

Among those slain by the above inroad of the English, Llewellyn ap Griffith Vaughan, of Cayo in the county of Cardigan, a man of gentle birth and bountiful, who yearly used sixteen tuns of wine in his household, because he was well disposed to the said Owen, was, on the feast of Saint Denis (9th October), at Llandovery, in the presence of the king and his eldest son[1], and by his command, drawn, hanged, beheaded, and quartered.

[1] The words "cum filio suo primogenito" might more strictly mean

A.D. 1401. At this time, about Michaelmas, a quarter of wheat on a sudden rose in price from one noble to two, and in some parts of England to three nobles.

Throughout all Wales the strongholds were repaired in walls and ditches [1].

Died the noble lord, lord John Cherleton, lord of Powis, at his castle of Pool, on the day of Saint Luke (18th October); to whom by right of inheritance succeeded the lord Edward, his brother, a most graceful youth, lord, in right of his wife, the countess of March, of Usk and Caerleon.

p. 71. The lord Thomas, the king's second son, crossed over with a great host to subdue the rebellion of the Irish [2]. So too the earl of Rutland, to withstand the invasions of the French, went over into Gascony.

The Scots, refusing to treat for peace or truce with the English, determined to begin war and defiance against them on Saint Martin's day (11th November) [3].

The commons of Cardigan, being pardoned their lives, deserted Owen, and returned, though in sore wretchedness, to their homes, being allowed to use the Welsh tongue, although its destruction had been determined on by the English, Almighty God, the King of kings, the unerring Judge of all, having mercifully ordained the recall of this decree at the prayer and cry of the oppressed.

On the morrow of All Hallows (2nd November), Owen, seeking to lay siege to Caernarvon, there, in the midst of a great host, unfurled his standard, a golden dragon on

the son of the sufferer. I think, however, that the prince of Wales is referred to. Henry was in Wales in the early part of October.

[1] One of the ordinances passed on the 22nd March, 1401, was that the defences of the castles in North Wales should be kept in repair for three years at the expense of the Welsh.

[2] Thomas Plantagenet, created earl of Albemarle and duke of Clarence in 1411, was slain at the battle of Baugé, 1421. He was appointed lieutenant of Ireland in the summer of 1401, and landed at Dublin on the 13th November, and remained in the country for two years.

[3] The date of a proposed truce, to last for a year.

a white field; but, being attacked by those within, he was put to flight, losing three hundred of his men. A.D. 1401.

At this time, our lord the king made a levy on all the realm for the marriage of his daughters[1]. A.D. 1402.

The lords Percy, father and son, subdued with vigour the rebellion of the Scots, slaying and taking captive a great number.

Owen and his men cruelly harried the lordship of Ruthin, in North Wales, and the country-side with fire and sword, on the last day but one of January, carrying off the spoil of the land and specially the cattle to the mountains of Snowdon; yet did he spare much the lordship of Denbigh and others of the earl of March, having at his beck the two counties of Cardigan and Merioneth which were favourable to him both for government and war.

A certain knight, called David ap Jevan Goz, of the county of Cardigan, who for full twenty years had fought against the Saracens with the king of Cyprus and other Christians, being sent by the king of France to the king of Scotland on Owen's behalf, was taken captive by English sailors and imprisoned in the Tower of London.

Messengers of Owen, bearing letters as follows, addressed to the king of Scotland and lords of Ireland, were taken in Ireland and beheaded: "Most high and mighty and redoubted lord and cousin, I commend me to your most high and royal majesty, humbly as it beseemeth me, with all honour and reverence. Most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, please it you and your most high majesty to know that Brutus, your most noble ancestor and mine, was the first crowned king who dwelt in this realm of A.D. 1401. p. 72.

[1] Orders were first issued on the 1st December, 1401 (*Fœdera*, viij. 232), for the levy of an aid for the marriage of the princess Blanche with Louis of Bavaria, which took place on the 6th July, 1402. Negotiations were also being carried on during the year and afterwards for the marriage of Henry's second daughter, Philippa, with Eric, king of Denmark, whom, however, she did not marry till August, 1406.

A.D. 1401. England, which of old times was called Great Britain. The which Brutus begat three sons, to wit: Albanact, Locrine, and Camber. From which same Albanact you are descended in direct line. And the issue of the same Camber reigned royally down to Cadwalladar, who was the last crowned king of my people, and from whom I, your simple cousin, am descended in direct line; and after whose decease I and my ancestors and all my said people have been, and are still, under the tyranny and bondage of mine and your mortal foes the Saxons; whereof you, most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, have good knowledge. And from this tyranny and bondage the prophecy saith that I shall be delivered by the aid and succour of your royal majesty. But, most redoubted lord and sovereign cousin, I make grievous plaint to your royal majesty and right sovereign cousinship, that it faileth me much in men at arms. Wherefore, most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, I humbly beseech you, kneeling upon my knees, that it may please your royal majesty to send unto me a certain number of men at arms who may aid me and may withstand, with God's help, mine and your foes aforesaid; having regard, most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, to the chastisement of this mischief and of all the many past mischiefs which I and my said ancestors of Wales have suffered at the hands of mine and your mortal foes aforesaid. Being well assured, most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, that it shall be that, all the
p. 73. days of my life, I shall be bounden to do service and pleasure to your said royal majesty and to repay you. And in that I cannot send unto you all my businesses in writing, I despatch these present bearers fully informed in all things, to whom may it please you to give faith and credence in what they shall say unto you by word of mouth. From my court. Most redoubted lord and right sovereign cousin, may the Almighty Lord have you in his keeping."

"Greeting and fullness of love, most dread lord and right A.D. 1401.
trusty cousin. Be it known unto you that a great discord or war hath arisen between us and our and your deadly foes, the Saxons: which war we have manfully waged now for nearly two years past, and which, too, we purport and hope henceforth to wage and to bring to a good and effectual end, by the grace of God our Saviour, and by your help and countenance. But, seeing that it is commonly reported by the prophecy that, before we can have the upper hand in this behalf, you and yours, our well-beloved cousins in Ireland, must stretch forth hereto a helping hand; therefore, most dread lord and right trusty cousin, with heart and soul we pray you that of your horsemen and footmen, for the succour of us and our people who now this long while are oppressed by our said foes and yours, as well as to oppose the treacherous and deceitful will of those same our foes, you do despatch unto us as many as you shall conveniently and honourably be able, saving in all things your honourable estate, as quickly as may seem good unto you, bearing in mind our sore need. Delay not to do this, by the love we bear you and as we put our trust in you, although we be unknown to your dread person, seeing that, most dread lord and cousin, so long as we shall be able to wage manfully this war in our borders, as doubtless is clear unto you, you and all the other chieftains of your parts of Ireland will in the mean time have welcome peace and calm repose. And because, p. 74.
my lord cousin, the bearers of these presents shall make things known unto you more fully by word of mouth, may it please you to give credence unto them in all things which they shall say unto you on our behalf, and, as it may be your will, to confide, in full trust, unto them whatsoever, dread lord and cousin, we your poor cousin may do. Dread lord and cousin, may the Almighty preserve your reverence and lordship in long life and good fortune. Written in North Wales, on the twenty-ninth day of November."

A.D 1402. And now, O God, Thou, who of thine unbounded grace didst grant me to fulfill my student's time at Oxford and the three years' doctor's course, and then seven years' service as pleader in the court of Canterbury, be it honour or be it profit, and in all other my businesses whatsoever hast been my help, from the days of my youth up even to old age and decay, forsake me not; but make of me an ensample for goodness, that they who come nigh me may behold and be astonished, "because Thou, Lord, hast holpen me and comforted me[1]." And now grant that my journey to Rome, as Thou hast ordered it, both in my going thither and in my return hither according to my desire, whether I be numbered among advocates or auditors, may mercifully receive Thy consolation, to the honour and praise of Thy name, and to my welfare in either man, and with threefold honour and temporal wealth.

To be short. On the nineteenth day of February, in the year of our Lord 1401–2, I, the writer of this history, as, by the will of God, I determined, took ship at Billingsgate in London, and with a favouring wind crossed the sea, and, within the space of a day landing at Bergen-op-Zoom, in Brabant, the country which I sought, I set my face towards Rome. Thence passing through Diest, Maastricht, Aachen, Cologne, Bonn, Coblentz, Worms, Speyer, Strassburg, Breisach, Basel, Bern[2], Lucerne and its wonderful lake, Mont St. Gotthard and the hermitage on its summit, where I was drawn in an ox-waggon half dead with cold and with mine
p. 75. eyes blindfold lest I should see the dangers of the pass, on the eve of Palm Sunday (18th March) I arrived at Bellinzona in Lombardy. Thence through Como, Milan, Piacenza, Borgo-San-Donnino, Pontremoli, Carrara[3], Pietrasanta, Pisa,

[1] Ps. lxxxvj. 17.

[2] The MS. places Bern after Lucerne.

[3] The MS. reads "Carenciam," and the name precedes Pontremoli in Adam's list. But I have no doubt that Carrara is meant, that city being the first important place at which the traveller would arrive on descending from the hills towards the coast.

Siena, and Viterbo, turning aside from Bologna, Florence, and Perugia, on account of the raging wars and sieges of the duke of Milan, of whom hereafter, and the perils thereof, and halting for two days at every best inn for refreshment of myself and men, and still more of my horses, on the fifth day of April, by the favour of God and the fear of our archer-guards, I came safely through all to Rome. And within a fortnight after being presented, with his recommendation, by the lord Balthasar, cardinal deacon of the title of Saint Eustace, who was afterwards pope John the twenty-third [1], to our lord the pope Boniface the ninth, by whom I was honourably received to the kiss of foot and hand and cheek; and then by him being given over to the cardinal of Bologna, afterwards pope Innocent the seventh [2], to be straitly examined as to my knowledge, and being approved, I was raised within a fortnight, by the counsel of the pope and the Rota, to the dignity of papal chaplain and auditor of the apostolic palace and judge of city and world, being invested by the pope himself with the ensigns of office, to wit, the cope and rochet and hat. And, within a se'nnight after, the pope assigned thirty great causes, which had been referred to his hearing, to be determined by me. A.D. 1402.

In my journey hither, first at Cologne and thence right up to Pisa mentioned above, as well by night as by day, I beheld a dreadful comet which went before the sun, a terror to the world—to the clergy which is the sun thereof, and to the knighthood which is its moon—which forecast the death of the duke of Milan, as it soon after came to pass. His dreaded arms too, a serpent azure swallowing a naked man gules, on a field argent, were then ofttimes seen in the air.

[1] Cardinal Balthasar Cossa became pope John XXIII. in 1410.

[2] Cosimo dei Migliorati, appointed bishop of Bologna, but refused by the people. He, however, always kept the title of cardinal of Bologna. He became pope Innocent VII. in 1404.

A.D. 1401-2. The duke of Bavaria, being chosen emperor, entered Italy, eagerly striving to make for Rome for his coronation. But suffering defeat at the hands of the said duke at Padua, his design was brought to naught, and he went back confounded into his own country [1].

A.D. 1402. p. 76. This duke, having subdued Bologna, the delight of the world and the glory of Italy, a man before whom all the earth was quiet [2], and who, drawing away the mighty river Po through the midst of mountains and over many miles of land, just as the great Cyrus turned aside the Euphrates from Babylon, had gained Padua, died stricken by a sudden plague, to the great sorrow of strangers, because, ruling his lands with a rod of iron, he made passage through them safe to wayfarers. And surely was it believed that, had he but lived another year, he had reigned over Germany and Italy as one kingdom. In every prince's family in Europe he had spies in his pay, to make known to him any news, at much cost, besides bribing the princes them-

[1] The emperor Rupert advanced into Italy against the duke of Milan, but was beaten at Brescia, 24th October, 1401, and retired in the following April.

[2] 1 Maccabees i. 3. Gian-Galeazzo Visconti, duke of Milan, who succeeded his father Galeazzo in 1378. By his wonderful powers of organization he conquered the greater part of northern Italy, and was only checked when he came in contact with the republic of Florence. He was almost always successful. Even when attacked on all sides by a combination of his enemies, he shook them off and advanced to fresh victories. His last conquest was Bologna. Soon after its capture, the appearance of the plague frightened him into retirement at Marignano, where however he sickened and died on the 3rd September, 1402. He is said to have pointed to the comet which was then blazing in the heavens as a sign of his approaching end. Adam has made some mistakes in details. Padua was taken by Gian-Galeazzo as far back as 1388, but whether the waters of the Brenta (not the Po, as Adam states) were diverted does not appear. However, the duke had the design, which he partly carried out, of changing the channels of the Brenta and Mincio and drying up the lagoons of Venice, in order to attack the republic. In 1390, Padua was recovered by Francesco da Carrara, who effected an entry by the bed of the river.

selves to his side by great gifts. But see!, according to the common saying, "Ill-gotten gains scarce reach the third generation," his great-uncle, the archbishop of Milan[1], a man of large mind, vicar of the empire, leaving, at the time of his death, his two nephews, that is, the lord Galeazzo, father of this duke, and the lord Bernabo, his uncle, captains in the emperor's camp, bequeathed to them pride and mutual hate by filching the rights of the empire, and left his ill-gotten gains to be rooted out in the person of this duke who was the third after him. A.D. 1402.

The said duke of Milan being dead, the duke of Bavaria who was elected emperor sent a solemn embassy to the pope for his confirmation; which he had, as appears below.

Bologna, Perugia, and other lands of the church, which had been commended to the deceased duke, broke into revolt; but they were brought back into subjection by the diligence of the said cardinal of Saint Eustace.

Throughout all Lombardy and Tuscany treaties of peace and concord were torn up; and, by the party-warfare of Guelphs and Ghibellines, tumults raged with fire and sword.

On the twenty-second day of December, abuses of indulgences, unions, exceptions, pluralities, and other things which brought scandal on the court, were, while I was present, revoked[2]; or more truly I may say they were renewed; for, alas!, a new sale of reinstatements of what had been revoked grew up. Contrary to the revocation

[1] This was Giovanni Visconti, the friend of Petrarch, who governed Milan from 1349 to 1354. He recalled his three nephews, Matteo, Galeazzo, and Bernabo, from exile, and on his death left them to divide his possessions. He was not vicar of the empire, as Adam states; but that office was held by his father Matteo. So far from quarrelling, as the chronicle would make out, Galeazzo and Bernabo, the two despots, after murdering their brother Matteo, seem to have governed the Milanese with remarkable amiability towards one another.

[2] The bull is recited in *Annales Ric. II. et Hen. IV.* (Rolls series), 351.

A.D. 1402. of unions, the pope conferred on me, the writer of this history, the archdeaconry of Buckingham, together with
p. 77. the churches of Knoyle, Tisbury, and Deverill, in England; but, the Welsh war preventing this, he gave me the archdeaconries of Llandaff and Caermarthen, together with the church of Llandefailog and the prebend of Llanbister.

A.D. 1403. In the year of our Lord 1402–3 Ladislas, king of Naples, seeking for himself the kingdom of Hungary, by right of descent, entered into it with a strong force. But having subdued only Slavonia, he was bravely driven back by Sigismund, brother of queen Ann of England and afterwards emperor, who then held the kingdom; and he returned with shame into Italy[1].

My God!, how grievously now are church and empire harassed and laid waste with internecine slaughters, the one with two, the other with three rulers. And specially that empire of the Greeks—founded by the race of the great Constantine, who ruled in Britain, the son of the holy Helena, and first by him transferred from the Romans to the Greeks, and lastly by pope Stephen from the Greeks to the Germans—is now, as all men know, laid waste by Turks and Tartars.

A.D. 1402. On the day of Saint Alban (22nd June), near to Knighton in Wales, was a hard battle fought between the English under sir Edmund Mortimer[2] and the Welsh under Owen Glendower, with woeful slaughter even to eight thousand souls, the victory being with Owen. And, alas!, my lord the said sir Edmund, whose father, the lord of Usk, gave me an exhibition at the schools, was by fortune of war carried away captive. And, being by his enemies in England stripped of all his goods and hindered from paying ransom, in order to escape more easily the pains of captivity, he is known by common report to have

[1] Ladislas, king of Naples, was crowned king of Hungary, 5th August, 1403; but was defeated and retired to Naples in October.

[2] Uncle of the earl of March.

wedded the daughter of the same Owen; by whom he had a son, Lionel, and three daughters, all of whom, except one daughter, along with their mother are now dead. At last, being by the English host beleaguered in the castle of Harlech, he brought his days of sorrow to an end, his wonderful deeds being to this day told at the feast in song. A.D. 1402.

In this year also the lord Grey of Ruthin, being taken captive by the same Owen, with the slaughter of two thousand of his men, was shut up in prison; but he was set free on payment of ransom of sixteen thousand pounds in gold[1]. p. 78.

Concerning such an ill-starred blow given by Owen to the English rule, when I think thereon, my heart trembles. For, backed by a following of thirty thousand men issuing from their lairs, throughout Wales and its marches he overthrew the castles, among which were Usk, Caerleon, and Newport, and fired the towns. In short, like a second Assyrian, the rod of God's anger[2], he did deeds of unheard-of cruelty with fire and sword.

These things I heard of in Rome. And there everything was bought and sold, so that benefices were given not for desert, but to the highest bidder. Whence, every man who had wealth and was greedy for empty glory, kept his money in the merchants' bank ready to further his advancement. And therefore, as, when under the Old Testament the priesthood were corrupted with venality, the three miracles ceased, to wit, the unquenchable fire of the priesthood, the sweet smell of sacrifice which offendeth not, and the smoke which ever riseth up, so I fear will it come to pass under the New Testament. And methinks the danger standeth daily knocking at the very doors of the church.

In this year the king, with one hundred thousand men and more divided into three bodies, invaded Wales in war

[1] See above, p. 230.

[2] Isa. x. 5.

A.D. 1402. against Owen. But he and his poor wretches keeping close in their caves and woods, the king laid waste the land and returned victoriously, with a countless spoil of cattle, into his own country.

The lord Fitz-Walter, who while he was in Rome listened to my advice (but in this he consulted me not), wishing to pass by sea from Rome to Naples, was taken by Saracens and carried prisoner to Tunis, the chief city of the savages; but, though ransomed by Genoese merchants, he delayed returning to England by reason of the troubles there and died in Venice[1].

A.D. 1403. For the abovesaid confirmation of the emperor, this text is pronounced: "Father, glorify thy son."[2] And the pope

p. 79. answers in the form of a collation[3]: "Mine arm also shall strengthen him."[4] And this is the bull of confirmation: "Boniface, bishop, servant of the servants of God, to our well-beloved son, Rupert, duke of Bavaria, king elect of the Romans, greeting and apostolic blessing. The most high Father of boundless majesty, who disposeth all things by His merciful providence, hath ordered the world in kingdoms, which He hath willed to be directed by good counsel and to be governed with healthful governance, lest the estate of the human creature, which doth manifest the image and likeness of his Creator, might be overwhelmed in the gulf of the stormy waves of this world, or hindered from the sweetness of its peace,—yea, verily, that all might live a peaceful life bound by the rule of law and honour, and that each one might abstain from offence against his neighbour, and might acknowledge with natural love the great Maker, might worship Him when known, and might submit to His dread empire. At length the Father, looking down from on high, and seeing that the people which He

[1] Walter, ninth baron Fitz-Walter, died in 1407.

[2] John xvij. 1.

[3] After "collacionis" the manuscript reads "in utroque," of which I can make nothing.

[4] Ps. lxxxix. 21.

had made had incurred the sentence of damnation, mercifully sent into the world the King of Peace, His only begotten Son, our Lord Jesus Christ, for the salvation of His people. Who, putting on the flesh of our mortality, rescued the people from the pangs of everlasting death and redeemed them with His precious blood. We therefore, who, undeserving though we be, bear His office in this earthly kingdom, like unto a shepherd keep watch both of body and mind, in order that we may see what may be profitable to the flock committed to us, and what toil must be spent, so that, with the support of Him, whose are the pillars of the earth[1], and by whom actions are weighed[2], and who governeth the deeds of mortal men, we may profitably make manifest our part in that office, to attain those things which we see of necessity to be of advantage to the faithful. In truth, of late, the pope Urban the sixth of blessed memory, who was next before us, perceiving by prudent thought that the world is placed by the bonds of sin in evil plight, and that, by the ordering of the Lord, to whom all things are obedient, the mother church of Rome doth hold the chief lordship over kings and kingdoms, as mother and mistress of all, in order that by her ministry the foundation of the catholic faith may be profitably governed, did by divers messages and letters, at various times, with fatherly affection urge our well-beloved son in Christ, Wenceslaus, then king of Bohemia and of the Romans, for the defence of the church militant and for the honour and estate of the holy empire, as his duty required of him, to come to the parts of Italy in order to receive the crown of the empire. And seeing him to be lukewarm herein from too much sloth, while he still warned him now by letters, now by messengers, he most urgently required the electors of the empire, as the principal members thereof, with fitting means and remedies to exhort the same Wenceslaus to come down into Italy, and with earnestness

A.D. 1403.

p. 80.

[1] 1 Sam. ij. 8. [2] 1 Sam. ij. 3.

A.D. 1403. and with due warnings to enforce him thereto. But at length the same Urban, our predecessor, by the Lord's will, was withdrawn from the light of this life, and we, being by the mercy of God raised up to the summit of the most high apostleship, burning with mighty zeal of heart, sought to withstand the offences which we saw ever growing up to the harm of the church of Rome, our spouse, and to the harm, too, of the empire; and therefore, as well by messages as by letters, with fatherly kindness we interposed our part, in divers ways which we thought fitting, in order that we might induce the said Wenceslaus to such journey, never giving up any possible chance which appeared serviceable. And, perceiving that the exhortations of our said predecessor and our own profit nothing, in order that the prudence of the apostolic court should leave nothing untried in so grave a case and weighty a matter, we bring to remembrance that ofttimes we have written to our reverend brethren and beloved sons, the electors of the sacred empire, that they—having regard to the dangers which from the exceeding sloth of the aforesaid Wenceslaus were ever assailing the church and the empire and the
p. 81. Christian religion, and above all seeing that France, which we ever perceive to strain with all her strength for the usurpation, or at least for the division, of the church and empire, hath seized on the imperial city of Genoa, which lieth in the very jaws of Italy—should in all fitting ways and with timely remedies and warnings, rouse up the same Wenceslaus to come into Italy, after the manner of the lords his predecessors, in order to receive from our hands the crown of the empire, and to prevent the French from making good their footing in Italy, and also to defend the church and empire as by his office he is bound to do. At length, the electors themselves perceiving that his delay did cause endless losses, and that the abovesaid exhortations were in vain and of none effect, though made with persistence for this matter which is so sacred and necessary

for Christendom, and that the same Wenceslaus was utterly A.D. 1403.
useless for the government of the said empire, and lest the commonwealth of the same empire should by his idleness fall to pieces, they took care to make known to us by their envoy that, diligently enquiring into the slothfulness of the aforesaid Wenceslaus, whereby a crop of dangers has sprung up to the world, they had made ready, after setting him aside, to proceed to the election of another who might cope with those evils; and, although the deposition of the same Wenceslaus is acknowledged altogether to pertain to us, yet, armed with our authority, they with one accord did proceed to the deposition of the same Wenceslaus, and with one accord did choose thee, our well-beloved son, duke of Bavaria, count-palatine and co-elector of the Rhine, to be king of the Romans and next emperor. And thou, after duly considering this matter, and urged by them and others, hast given thy free consent to such election. And afterwards, by a solemn embassy on thy behalf, it was humbly prayed of us that we, of our wonted kindness, would deign to approve by apostolic authority the setting aside of the same Wenceslaus and thy election and whatsoever followed thereon, and to decree and pronounce thy person to be fit and proper to undertake the aforesaid dignity of imperial exaltation. Therefore, being credibly informed of all the aforesaid matters, and of thy person, as far as in thine absence it p. 82.
might be, and of thy virtuous conduct and qualities and of the allegiance whereof thou art approved towards us and the Roman church, and having weighed carefully all these things with our brethren, the cardinals of the holy Roman church, listening to thy prayer, and with their consent, to the praise and glory of God, and the glory of the Virgin Mary and of the blessed Apostles Peter and Paul, and the honour of the said Roman church, and the good and profit of the holy empire, and the good estate of the world, seeing that difficulties and dangers are likely

A.D. 1403. to arise from the carelessness of the said Wenceslaus, and holding as valid and according to our will his deposition and thy election and whatsoever thereupon followed, we receive thee as the chosen son of us and of the church, and, granting to thee grace and favour and considering thy person to be fitting, we pronounce and choose thee to be king of the Romans, declaring thee to be fit therefor, and decreeing the anointment and consecration and the crown of the empire to be bestowed on thee by our own hands; making good every defect, which in any way in such election might be found, of our sure knowledge and fullness of apostolic power. And we enjoin all faithful and liege men of the empire, of what estate soever they be, even though they be pre-eminent in kingly or priestly honours, that they most fully obey and look towards thee as king of the Romans and emperor elect. Let no man therefore, etc. Given at Rome, at St. Peter's, on the first day of October, in the fourteenth year of our pontificate."

In the next year, on behalf of the crown of England claimed for the earl of March, as is said, a deadly quarrel arose between the king and the house of Percy of Northumberland, as kin to the same earl, to the great agitation of the realm as it took part with one side or the other; and a field being pitched for the morrow of Saint Mary Magdalene (23rd July), the king, by advice of the earl of Dunbar of Scotland, because the father of the lord Henry Percy and Owen Glendower were then about to come
p. 83. against the king with a great host, anticipating the appointed day, brought on a most fearful battle against the said lord Henry and the lord Thomas Percy, then earl of Worcester. And, after that there had fallen on either side in most bloody slaughter to the number of sixteen thousand men, in the field of Berwick[1] (where the king afterwards founded a hospice for the souls of those who

[1] Berwick was the village where Hotspur passed the night before the battle of Shrewsbury.

there fell) two miles from Shrewsbury, on the eve of the said feast, victory declared for the king who had thus made the onslaught. In this battle the said lord Percy, the flower and glory of the chivalry of Christendom, fell, alas!, and with him his uncle. Whereby is the prophecy fulfilled: "The cast-off beast shall carry away the two horns of the moon."[1] There fell also two noble knights in the king's armour, each made conspicuous as though a second king, having been placed for the king's safety in the rear line of battle. Whereat the earl of Douglas of Scotland, then being in the field with the said lord Henry, as his captive, when he heard victory shouted for king Henry, cried in wonder: "Have I not slain two king Henries (meaning the said knights) with mine own hand? 'Tis an evil hour for us that a third yet lives to be our victor."[2] A.D. 1403.

The circuits of full indulgence [at Rome], to lighten the heavy toil of visiting others, consist in seven churches, to wit: St. John Lateran, St. Mary the greater, St. Cross of Jerusalem, St. Peter's, St. Paul's, St. Lawrence without the walls, and SS. Fabian and Sebastian. Also, since it would be too much labour to visit all places of indulgence in the church of St. Peter, it sufficeth to visit within the circuit

[1] The application of the "two horns of the moon" to the two Percys who fell is no doubt suggested by the Percy badge, a crescent. See a memorandum in Nicolas, *Acts of the Privy Council*, i. 209, in which the Percy retainers are described at this very time as wearing the badge: "et pluseurs chivachent devers lui, leur cressans as braas."

[2] "This battell lasted three long houres, with indifferent fortune on both parts, till at length, the king crieng Saint George! victorie! brake the arraie of his enemies, and adventured so farre, that (as some write) the earle Dowglas strake him downe, and at that instant slue sir Walter Blunt, and three other, apparelled in the king's sute and clothing, saieng: I marvell to see so many kings thus suddenlie arise one in the necke of an other."—Holinshed, iij. 26. "Another king! they grow like Hydra's heads." — Shakespeare's *Hen. IV., pt. I.*, act V. sc. iv.

A.D. 1403. seven altars, to wit: the high altar of Saint Peter, wherein he lieth, as too Saint Paul doth in the high altar of his church, although their heads are in St. John Lateran, adorned with gold; also the altars of Saint Cross, Saint Veronica, Saint Gregory, Saint Fabian and Saint Sebastian, Saint Leo pope, and Saint Andrew.

Also, in the city there are four patriarchal churches, to wit: St. John Lateran, which is the mother of city and world, wherein also is the papal throne, and out of regard to which the pope is called Roman pontiff, once the palace of the great Constantine, and by him given for this pur-

p. 84. pose to Saint Silvester, but first built by Nero; the second, St. Mary the greater; the third and fourth, St. Peter's and St. Paul's; and in these churches all the cardinals, as canons thereof, receive their titles, and at their high altars no man doth celebrate save only the pope. Yet there are in the city many other churches, as in the line:—

"In Rome are chapels a thousand six hundred and five."

From one of my fellow auditors of the Rota, a native of Naples, I heard that in these days a certain ship of that city was taken by the Saracens, wherein was a lady of noble birth, who, choosing death rather than suffer violation, on a sudden cast herself into the sea and was drowned.

After the above-told battle between the king and the said lord Henry Percy, Owen with his manikins, issuing from his caves and woods and seizing his chance, marched through Wales with a great power as far as the sea of the Severn, and brought into subjection with fire and sword all who made resistance and also those beyond the same sea wherever the Welsh, as such, had been pillaged by the country people, sparing not even churches; whereby at last he came to ruin. And then with a vast spoil he retired for safety to the northern parts of Wales, whence are spread all the ills of Wales, and to the mountains of Snowdon, amid smothered curses on his open adulteries.

The men of Bristol with an armed fleet, under their captains, James Clyfford and William Rye, esquires, invaded the parts of Glamorgan, and pillaged the church of Llandaff; but, being beaten by the country people, through a miracle of Saint Theliau, they were driven back in disorder with no small loss. A.D. 1403.

The prior of Launde and sir Roger Clarendon, knight, natural brother of king Richard, and eleven of the order of grey friars, doctors in theology, who were confederates of the said Owen [1], being betrayed to the king by their own fellows, at Tyburn in London were drawn and hanged with cruelty. And many lords and ladies, even countesses, were for the same cause committed to prison. A.D. 1402.

The king, hoping to receive help through her, took to wife the widow of the duke of Brittany and sister of the king of Navarre [2]. But straight his hopes were rendered vain, for the Bretons, denouncing the marriage, along with the French and under command of the count marshal of Aquitaine and the lord of Huguevilles of Normandy, entered Wales in great force to the succour and support of Owen; and wasting all the march with fire and sword they did no small hurt to the English [3]. A.D. 1403. p. 85.

[1] The charge against them was that of spreading the rumour that Richard was still living, and so attempting an insurrection against Henry; and also of sending money to Owen.

[2] Henry's marriage with Joan, daughter of Charles of Navarre and widow of John Montfort, duke of Brittany, was celebrated on the 7th February, 1403.

[3] The Bretons made a descent on the southern coast and burned Plymouth, in 1403. The following year they reappeared near Portland and did some damage, but were beaten off with the loss of their leader (Walsingham, ij. 259, 261). Owen Glendower entered into an offensive and defensive alliance with the French on the 14th June, 1404. In consequence of this, an expedition of one hundred and forty sail, with 12,000 men, sailed from France to Wales, under command of Jean, sire de Rieux et Rochefort, marshal of France and Brittany (the count marshal of Aquitaine, of the text above), and Jean, sire de Hangest, lord of Avenescourt and Huguevilles, grand-master of the crossbows.

A.D. 1402, 1406. The king bestowed his two daughters in marriage, the one to the king of Denmark, and the other to the son of the duke of Bavaria, emperor elect as above, with no small taxation of the kingdom [1].

A.D. 1402. The house of Percy, short time before its ill fate as told above, in battle at Homildon Hill in the march of Scotland, slew many thousands of the Scots; and many nobles, amongst whom was the Douglas spoken of above, were carried off captive by the fortune of war. And it is believed that from this victory that house became too much puffed up, and, according to the common saying: "An haughty spirit goeth before a fall," [2] went headlong to its ruin. And no wonder; for it is not the saw which cutteth the log nor the axe which cleaveth, but the hand of man. So the hand of God alone giveth the victory.

A.D. 1404. In these days the church of Hereford being vacant [3], the pope made disposition thereof in favour of me the writer of this history, but through the envy of the English who opposed me and by letters belied me with poisonous words to the king,—whereby for four years long, an exile, on sea and land I suffered the pangs of grievous misfortunes [4],—I got not advancement but rather abasement, and suffered the last degree of poverty, stripped of benefices and goods, and, like Joseph, hearing among strangers a tongue which I knew not, albeit I was paid with gold for my counsel.

Meanwhile in England many parliaments were holden, wherein both more stringent statutes were passed against papal provisions, and more than was wont the clergy and people were taxed with heavier levies. And no marvel; for

[1] Blanche, married to Louis of Bavaria, son of the emperor, in 1402; and Philippa, married to Eric of Denmark, in 1406.

[2] Prov. xvj. 18.

[3] By the death of John Trevenant on the 6th April, who was succeeded by Robert Mascall on the 2nd July, 1404.

[4] Adam was in exile for six years in all, from 1402 to 1408. He is here taking account of the last four years, dating from 1404, the year in which he is writing.

they were pressed to hold their own in war against France, Scotland, Ireland, Wales, and Flanders, and owing to war they had lost sixty thousand pounds which Wales was accustomed to pay. A.D. 1404. p. 86.

Owen and his hill-men, even in their misery, at Machynlleth, usurping the right of conquest and other marks of royalty, albeit to his own confusion, held, or counterfeited or made pretence of holding parliaments.

The earl of Northumberland, father of the above famous lord Henry, at the prayer and request of all the parliament, was shortly, though to no purpose, reconciled to the king. And in this parliament, a certain villein, Serle by name, was for the murder of the duke of Gloucester, of whom above, drawn, hanged, disembowelled, beheaded, and quartered[1].

On account of the slanders of mine enemies, I, the present writer, sent unto the king, under mine own hand, although to no purpose, the following letter, which was delivered to him by the bishop of Salisbury[2]: "With most humble and devout recommendations and with continual prayers to God for the health of your royal majesty. Most excellent and most benign prince, whereas, after leave had of your royal highness to visit the court of Rome, I with others did so visit it, it did please our father and lord in Christ, Boniface, by the divine will pope, that now is, to attach me, although unworthy, to the college of the lords auditors of his sacred palace. And I, trusting in Him who can make the rough places smooth and who alone can water with the spring of His grace the heart which is parched, and hoping that He would make fruitful my short-coming with the dew of His loving-kindness, did accept that unpaid office,

[1] William Serle, a devoted servant of Richard II., was taken prisoner on the northern border and brought to Pontefract. He was executed with more than ordinary cruelty, suffering "more and severer penalties than other our traitors have endured before these times."—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, i. 450.

[2] Richard Metford, translated from Chichester, 1395; died, 1407.

A.D. 1404. to the praise of God and that I might do more useful service to your royal pre-eminence and to your servants; and I now hold the same; and still for some time, if fortune favour me in the cost of my sojourn here, I, as best I can, by the help of divine favour, do purpose to practise it, offering myself with heart and soul to your royal wishes and commands, whereunto, according to the small measure of my littleness, I am ready ever to do service; praying in most humble and devoted wise of your royal majesty, under the shadow of which I live and move (seeing that
p. 87. nothing is so acceptable to me as the safe estate, and the happy progress, and the glorious triumph thereof), that, graciously bearing in the memory of your royal loving-kindness how I grieved for your absence which was caused by the shafts of envy, as my lord your brother[1] knoweth (to whom I foretold your prosperous return, just as it happened, at which happy fortune I rejoiced—as I hope hath not been hid from your royal goodness—and wherein I as a sharer gave most loyally at mine own expense my service, poor as it was, till you had right worthily been exalted to the pinnacle of royal majesty), of your charity your majesty may please to restore me to the old age of my insignificance with the relief of some better promotion. This offering of me your humble and faithful bedesman and willing servant may your majesty be pleased to accept with your inborn clemency and graciousness, inclining not the ears of your loving-kindness to those who speak evil of me, but favourably deigning to foster me and my fortunes and my friends under the shadow and protection of your exalted arm; and may He, by whom all kings and princes are governed, grant you to triumph over your foes, at your desire, and to reign long and happily here on earth, and hereafter to pass to the heavenly kingdom. Written at Rome, in the fifth year of your reign, on the twelfth day of the month of September."

[1] No doubt Henry Beaufort, then bishop of Lincoln, the king's half-brother.

On the feast of Saint Michael (29th September) there came, A.D. 1404.
seeking for the union of the church, a solemn embassy, on the part of the kings of France, Castille, and Aragon, and of other princes who were obedient unto him who sat at Avignon[1], to pope Boniface; and he gave them public audience. And the bishop of St. Pons[2] in France spake to him in these words, not acknowledging him as pope: "Most dread lord, if you of yourself do not feel pity for the souls of others, yet my lord doth offer himself as ready to lay down his life to find a way of union." Whereat lord Boniface burst forth: "Thy lord is false, schismatic, and very antichrist." "Saving your reverence, father, not so. My lord is holy, just, true, catholic; and he sits upon the true seat of Saint Peter"; and further the same bishop cried out with heat: "Nor is he simoniac." Whereupon Boniface, p. 88.
astonished at these words, withdrew into his chamber, and within two days (1st October) was plucked out from this life. Concerning this matter, on the same night, I had two dreams. The first was, that I beheld Saint Peter, robed in his bishop's vestments, sitting without his gate, and he cast forth to earth another who appeared as a pope, of sad countenance and foul, and who was sitting on his left hand. In the second, there appeared unto me a fox chased by dogs, which, taking the water, seized in his mouth, to keep himself afloat, a branch of willow which grew above, and lay covered to the nostrils; and, when he was again hunted out by the dogs, in terror he left the water, and, as a last refuge, ran into a hole, where forthwith he disappeared. Whence I understood that the fox, though ever greedy, yet ever remaineth thin; and so Boniface, though gorged with simony, yet to his dying day was never filled.

A certain German also showed me a letter sent from other parts by the hands of a holy man, wherein he declared

[1] Benedict XIII.

[2] Pierre de Rabat, bishop of St. Pons de Tomières, in the province of Narbonne, 1397–1409.

A.D. 1404. that he had seen Saint Michael fell Boniface to the earth with a heavy buffet; and so, on his festival, it came to pass as above.

By the death of our lord the pope the safe-conduct of the ambassadors became void; and so they were by the captain of the castle of Sant' Angelo therein thrust prisoners.

For the election of a new pontiff of Rome the cardinals entered the conclave, which was entrusted to the safe keeping of the king of Naples and six thousand of his soldiers.

The pestilent Roman people rose divided into the two parties of Guelphs and Ghibellines, and for the space of three weeks with slaughter and robbery and murder did they harry each other, either party urging the creation of a pope on its own side; yet by reason of the said guard could they not come near to the palace of Saint Peter nor to the conclave. And so their partisanship brought about the election, as pope, of one who lay not in the bosom of either party, namely Innocent the seventh, a native of Sulmona [1]. And, when his election was made known, the Romans attacked his hospice, and, after their greedy fashion, nay rather from festering corruptness, they sacked it, leaving therein not so much as the bars of the windows [2].

p. 89. The conclave is a close-built place, without anything to divide it, and it is set apart to the cardinals for the election of the future pope; and it must be shut and walled in on all sides, so that, excepting a small wicket for entrance which is closed up after they have gone in, it shall remain strongly guarded. And therein is a small

[1] Cosimo dei Migliorati, elected on the 17th October. Adam is mistaken in saying that the king of Naples was in Rome. He had been called in by the people, and was marching on the city when the conclave met. The cardinals hastened to make the election before his arrival.

[2] This seems to have been the custom of the times. At a later period a guard was set over the house of the pope elect.

window for food to be passed in to the cardinals, at their own cost, which is fitted so as to open or shut as required. And the cardinals have each a small cell on different floors, for sleep and rest; and three rooms alone in common, the privy, the chapel, and the place of election. After the first three days, while they are there, they have but one dish of meat or fish daily, and after five days thence bread and wine only, until they agree. A.D. 1404.

Heavens! The glory of Cæsar and Augustus, of Solomon and Alexander, of Ahasuerus and Darius, and of the great Constantine—where is it now? And whither shall this glory pass? Let it be left to the outcome of the future!

"Proud he wears the triple crown
Whose vassals throng his foot to kiss;
For king or kaiser's angry frown
Not a wight cares aught, I wis.
Christ his pardon freely gave,
Gave his grace without a price;
He, who here will favour have,
To mammon's god must sacrifice."

Christ was meek, and his vicar a lowly fisherman. But Plato bids me hold my peace.

Such advancement of my lord Innocent saw I thus in a vision, how he went up from the sacristy of St. Peter's to the altar to celebrate mass, robed in the papal vestments of scarlet silk woven with gold.

The dead pope, after the proclamation of the election, was carried to the church of St. Peter for the funeral rites, which lasted for nine days.

A disgraceful treaty (for how soon was it broken!) was made with the Romans by the new pope, to wit, that, the lordship of the city with the borough of St. Peter and the castle of Sant' Angelo and yearly tribute of six thousand florins being reserved to him, as well as the appointment of the senator, who, however, must be born a full hundred p. 90.

A.D. 1404. miles from Rome, the rest should remain at the will and behoof of the people [1].

The aforesaid king of Naples, having received from the pope Campania and the sea-coast for a yearly tribute for five years, afterwards a cause of weariness to the church, departed with his army from Rome.

On the feast of Saint Martin (11th November) the new pope went down from the palace to the church of St. Peter for the ceremony of his coronation, and at the altar of St. Gregory, the auditors bringing the vestments, he was robed for the mass. And, at the moment of his coming forth from the chapel of St. Gregory, the clerk of his chapel, bearing a long rod on the end of which was fixed some tow, cried aloud as he set it aflame: "Holy father, thus passeth away the glory of the world"; and again, in the middle of the procession, with a louder voice, thus twice: "Holy father! Most holy father!"; and a third time, on arriving at the altar of St. Peter, thrice: "Holy father! Holy father! Holy father!" at his loudest; and forthwith each time is the tow quenched. Just as in the coronation of the emperor, in the very noontide of his glory, stones of every kind and colour, worked with all the cunning of the craft, are wont to be presented to him by the stone-cutters, with these words: "Most excellent prince, of what kind of stones wilt thou that thy tomb be made?" Also, the new pope, the mass being ended by him, ascends a lofty stage, made for this purpose, and there he is solemnly crowned with the triple golden crown by the cardinal of Ostia as dean of the college. The first crown betokens power in temporal things; the second, fatherhood in things spiritual; the third, grandeur in things of heaven. And after-

[1] The local rivalry between the pope and the people of Rome was temporarily settled to the advantage of the former in 1393, when, on condition of his coming to reside in Rome, Boniface was allowed a certain share in the municipal government of the city. But this arrangement soon broke down, and there ensued constant quarrels between pope and people, as told by Adam.

wards, still robed in the same white vestments, he, as well as all the prelates likewise in albs, rides thence through Rome to the church of St. John Lateran, the cathedral seat proper of the pope. Then, after turning aside, out of abhorrence of pope Joan, whose image with her son stands in stone in the direct road near St. Clement's, the pope, dismounting from his horse, enters the Lateran for his enthronement. And there he is seated in a chair of porphyry, which is pierced beneath for this purpose, that one of the younger cardinals may make proof of his sex; and then, while a "Te deum" is chanted, he is borne to the high altar [1]. A.D. 1404. p. 91.

[1] A detailed account of the papal coronation will be found in the *Tableau de la Cour de Rome*, par le Sieur J. A[imon] (1726), and in *Cérémonies et Coutumes Religieuses* (Amsterd. 1723). Interesting particulars of the coronation of Innocent VIII., in 1484, are given by Burchard (*Diarium*, Florent. 1854), which may be compared with the narrative in our text. Burchard himself, as chamberlain, performed the ceremony of lighting and extinguishing the tow. At a later time this simple emblem of the "gloria mundi" was changed for a more elaborate one, the fragments of tow giving place to miniature models of castles and palaces made of that material. Part of the ceremonies were, however, omitted in Innocent's coronation for the following reason. It appears that if the pope rode in state up to the Lateran, the people claimed both horse and baldacchino. To resist this claim, and to avoid the rudeness of the crowd, Innocent dismounted near St. Clement's church and was thence carried in a chair. But this only made matters worse; for the pressure of the crowd was so great that his bearers, making a rush to carry him through, were swept right into the church, so that "pontificis receptio in ostio sive porticu Lateranensi et ejus locatio in sede stercoraria ac jactio pecuniarum fieri non potuerunt," and the procession reached the high altar in ludicrous confusion.

The ceremony of the "sedes stercoraria," with the meaning given to it in this and other chronicles, is discussed by the editor of Burchard's Diary (48 sqq.), who quotes from various authorities to show that the name arose from the verse chanted by the cardinals, as they raised the pope from the chair in which he was seated within the portico of the church: "Suscitat de pulvere egenum et de *stercore* erigit pauperem" (Ps. cxij. 7); and that by an obvious confusion the chair became in the popular mind a "sedes probatoria."

For an account of pope Joan (whom our chronicler, curiously

A.D. 1404. In their street the Jews offered to him their law, that is the Old Testament, seeking his confirmation; and the pope took it gently in his hands, for by it we have come to the knowledge of the Son of God and to our faith, and thus answered: "Your law is good; but ye understand it not, for old things are passed away, and all things are become new[1]." And, as if for a reproach, since they being hardened in error understand it not, he delivers it back to them over his left shoulder, neither annulling nor confirming it[2].

There rode with the pope not only those of his court and the clergy, but also the thirteen quarters of the city with their captains and standards at their heads. During the progress, in order to ease the thronging of the people, largess was thrice cast among the crowd, and a passage was thus cleared while it was being gathered up.

Now I rejoice that I was present and served in that great solemnity, as also I did in the coronation of king Henry the fourth of England and in the confirmation of the empire spoken of above.

O God!, how much is Rome to be pitied! For, once thronged with princes and their palaces, now a place of hovels, thieves, wolves, worms, full of desert places, how pitifully is she laid waste by her own citizens who rend each other in pieces! Thou, O Rome, didst draw thine origin from Æneas after the Trojan war, as my nation too

enough, calls Agnes), see Burchard's Diary, 82 sqq. Niem, who was contemporary with Adam of Usk, states in his *Historiæ sui temporis* that her image stood in the street between the church of St. Clement and the Coliseum.

[1] 2 Cor. v. 17.

[2] This curious custom is traced back to the twelfth century, when, on Innocent II. taking refuge in France and entering Paris, the Jews presented him with a copy of their law (*Cérémonies*, etc., I. pt. i. 81). Burchard (47) says that in his time the ceremony took place at the Monte Giordano, but formerly near the castle of Sant' Angelo, from whence, however, the Jews were driven by the insults of the people. In later times (*Cérémonies*, etc., I. pt. ij. 59) the scene was removed to the Coliseum.

from his great-grandson[1]; whence we stand on common ground in affliction. And truly it was first her empire which devoured the world with the sword, and next her priesthood with mummery. Whence the lines:— A.D. 1404.

"The Roman bites at all; and those he cannot bite he hates.
Of rich he hears the call; but 'gainst the poor he shuts his gates."

And it was thus that a certain German spake who was pleading before me for a benefice, but whose cause was sold by forestalling the date in the papal camera:—

"Weep, pitiful Rome, for thy fame past recall;
'No man shall sell!,' but Rome chaffers for all.
Thus shalt thou pass away, thus shalt thou fall."

The church of London being vacant, the college of auditors with one accord went up and besought the pope to translate thither the lord Guy de Mona, bishop of St. David's, and to make provision of the church of St. David's to me, the writer of this history[2]. Which thing was very pleasing to him, and he said: "We thank you heartily that you have thus recommended him to us; and we rejoice at so good an occasion of making provision for him of a better church in his own country, for the church is one of dignity. And we knew his good estate, and also the same Guy de Mona at the time when we were collector in England." But, the matter being noised abroad, my enemies with mighty clamour and speech declared against it to the king and cardinals who held benefices in England, threatening the latter that, if they should allow this thing, they would lose their benefices by the king's displeasure; and they swore p. 92.

[1] The mythical Brut.

[2] Robert de Braybrooke, bishop of London, died on the 27th August, 1404. He was succeeded by the ex-archbishop, Roger Walden, dean of York. Guy de Mona remained bishop of St. David's till his death in 1407.

A.D. 1404. that the king would send me to prison and the gallows. Moreover they forbade the merchants to lend me money, under pain of expelling their partners out of England. And this was the chief hindrance of the matter; and so it fell to the ground.

On Christmas day I was present at the papal mass and the banquet, as also on other festivals, together with others my fellow auditors and officers. And, in the first mass, at the right horn of the altar was placed a sword adorned with gold, bearing on its upright point a cap with two labels like a bishop's mitre, for this purpose: that the emperor, if present, holding the naked sword, should himself read, as deacon, as having been anointed, the gospel: "There went out a decree from Cæsar," [1] and should have the same sword from the pope for himself. But, owing to the absence of the emperor, a cardinal deacon read the gospel, and the pope delivered the sword to the count of Malepella [2], as being the most noble then present [3]. In the same mass, double gospel and epistle are read, in Latin by two Latins, and in Greek by two Greeks,

[1] Luke ij. 1.

[2] This name is not to be identified. Probably the scribe has blundered. Count Ugo Balzani, *La storia di Roma nella cronica di Adamo da Usk*, 1880, has found a certain count Manopello, of the Orsini faction; but his identity with "Malepella" must remain uncertain.

[3] So also Burchard (81), under date of 1486, has the following: —"Feria secunda, 25 mensis Decembris, festo Nativitatis Domini Dei Salvatoris Nostri Jesu Christi, Papa processionaliter venit sub baldachino ad basilicam S. Petri, praelatis et Cardinalibus post crucem praecedentibus. Dominus Sinulphus clericus Camerae ad sinistram Crucis ensem cum pileo portavit super altare majus in cornu epistolae, ubi per totam missam mansit. Qua finita, Sanctissimus Dominus Noster, sedens in sede solii, comiti Tondillae ante se genuflexo tradidit gladium cum capello, dicens sine libro: *Accipe gladium, et sis defensor fidei et Sanctae Romanae Ecclesiae, in nomine Patris, etc.*, quem ille accipiens osculatus est manum, deinde pedem Papae, et dedit eum uni ex suis militibus, qui eum continuo ante ipsum portavit." The *Table de la Cour de Rome* (348) gives the following

for their satisfaction, because they say that they were driven out of the church. A.D. 1404.

The pope created a noble Roman knight prior of the Hospital of Saint John, his own marshal girding him with the sword; but the pope, after drawing the sword, only struck him with the hand on the forehead, saying: "Bear this blow for the commonwealth and faith of Christ." Then the new knight kisses the other knights standing round about, and is robed by the pope's hand in the tunic of religion; and by the pope's order the golden spurs are fastened on his heels by another knight. p. 93.

Two monks from India, black and bearded, do reverence to the pope, and, in proof of their belief in Christ, they show the crosses which they bear upon their breasts, and their baptism on the right ear, not made with water but with fire, saying: "From the time when the sound of the apostles of Jesus Christ went out into all the earth[1], and specially from the time of Saint Thomas, our apostle, although others have turned aside from the faith, never have we so turned aside, but we are true Christians." And they had a gracious hearing[2].

account of the origin of this ceremony: "Les Papes fondent cet usage sur ce qu'on trouve dans le second livre de Machabées, au chapitre xv., où il est dit que Judas Machabée étant prêt à combattre Nicanor, général de l'armée d'Antiochus, Roi de Syrie, eût une vision en laquelle il lui sembloit voir le grand Prêtre Onias, quoique mort, qui prioit Dieu pour le peuple Juif, et le Prophète Jeremie qui présentoit au même Judas une epée dorée, en lui disant ces paroles: Reçois cette sainte epée que Dieu te donne et avec laquelle tu detruiras les adversaires de mon peuple Israël." The cap was usually sent to some prince or captain distinguished by his zeal for the church. Pius II. sent a sword and cap to Louis XI.

[1] Rom. x. 18.

[2] These two "nigerrimi barbati" seem to have been Ethiopians. Marco Polo (ed. Yule, 2nd edit. 1875, ij. 421) in his account of Abash, or Abyssinia, thus refers to the custom of branding: "The Christians in this country bear three marks on the face; one from the forehead to the middle of the nose, and one on either cheek. These marks are made with a hot iron, and form part of their baptism; for, after

A.D. 1404. I, the writer of this history, delivered to the pope the following petition: "Holy father, in the town or borough of Usk, in the diocese of Llandaff, is a certain most honourable monastery of a prioress and convent of nuns, under the profession of the order of Saint Benedict, who serve God with the greatest devoutness, which was of old sufficiently endowed with possessions, rents, and other profits; and in this monastery none but virgins of noble birth were and are wont to be received. But now, owing to the burnings, spoilings, and other misfortunes which have been caused by the wars which raged in those parts, or otherwise, this same monastery hath come to such want that, unless ready help be forthwith found by your holiness, the sisterhood will be forced to beg for food and clothing, straying through the country, or to stay in the private houses of friends; whereby it is feared that scandals may belike arise. And, seeing that within the walls of the same monastery there is built a certain chapel in honour of Saint Radegund, virgin nun, once queen of France, where-

that they are baptized with water, these three marks are made, partly as a token of gentility, and partly as the completion of their baptism. There are also Jews in the country, and these bear two marks, one on either cheek; and the Saracens have but one, to wit, on the forehead, extending halfway down the nose." Colonel Yule, in his learned note upon the passage, refers to the early mention by Matthew Paris, under the year 1237, of the practice among the Jacobite Christians of branding their children on the forehead before baptism. It appears also to have been the custom in Abyssinia and other parts of Africa to cauterize the temples of children, to inure them against colds. Ariosto, referring to the emperor of Ethiopia, has:

"Gli è, s'io non piglio errore, in questo loco
Ove al battesmo loro usano il fuoco."

Salt, the traveller, mentions that most of the people of Dixan had a cross branded on the breast, right arm, or forehead; which he explains as a mark of attachment to the ancient metropolitan church of Axum. And in Marino Sanudo it is stated that "some of the Jacobites and Syrians who had crosses branded on them said this was done for the destruction of the pagans, and out of reverence to the Holy Rood."

unto the men of that country bear great reverence, and A.D. 1404.
which they ofttimes, and specially at the feasts of Easter
and Whitsuntide, are wont to visit; now therefore, prayeth
your holiness your faithful chaplain and auditor of causes p. 94.
of the sacred palace apostolic, who first drew breath in the
same town or borough, and of whose blood are some of the
same sisterhood, that, having pity with fatherly compassion
on that monastery and prioress and nuns, you will deign
graciously to grant to all Christian people who, so often as,
on the second days of the said festivals, for all time to
come, they shall visit the same chapel, shall stretch forth
the hand of help thereto, some indulgence, as your holiness
shall think fit, with necessary and proper clauses, as in
form." And the pope signed it thus: "So be it, as it is
asked," for five years and as many periods of forty days,
as appeareth in the same chapel.

Being lodged near the palace of St. Peter, I watched the habits of the wolves and dogs, often rising at night to this end. For, while the watch-dogs barked in the gateways of their masters' houses, the wolves carried off the smaller dogs from the midst of the larger ones, and although, when thus seized, the dogs, hoping to be defended by their larger companions, howled the more, yet the latter never stirred from their posts, though their barking waxed louder. And so I pondered on the same sort of league which we know doth exist in our parts between the great men of the country and the exiles of the woods.

The viper race of Lombardy, split up into Guelphs and Ghibellines, with plundering and fire and slaughter, and even eating the flesh of the dead and dashing against rocks their own offspring if they took the opposite side, destroyed each other and certain of their cities at this time.

The Romans, about Quinquagesima Sunday, meet together for public games, with the captains of their different quarters, in a large well-equipped body; and, according to the words of Saint Paul: "They which run in a race run

A.D. 1404. all,"[1] they strive manfully for the prize. They set up three large silver rings, tied to a rope up aloft, and, galloping past them on their horses, they hurl lances through them, to carry them off as prizes. At these games are present the senator of the city, the two wardens, and the seven regents, in state dress, the block and axe being
p. 95. borne before them for the punishment of the mutinous. In the same games, too, the Romans run riot like brute beasts in drunkenness (the feast of misery), with unbridled extravagance, like to the sons of Belial and Belphegor.

Then, on the same Sunday, at the cost of the Jews, four carts covered with scarlet cloth, in which are eight live boars, being placed on the top of the mountain of all the earth (which is so called because it is made of earth brought thither from all parts of the world in token of universal lordship)[2], are yoked with eight wild bulls; and, they being shaken open by the swift descent downhill and the beasts set free, the whole becomes the prey of the people. And then every man pell-mell rushes at the beasts with his weapon; and, if it so happen that any one brings not home to his wife some part of the spoil, he is accounted a poor spirit and a craven who shall not have her company till the feast of Saint Pancras. And often in the scuffle they cut down or wound in particular the courtiers whom they hate for wrongs done to wives and daughters.

After this, they set up on the points of spears three cloths, one of gold for the best horses, and another of silver for the

[1] 1 Cor. ix. 24.

[2] The Monte Testaccio, an artificial mound of some size, measuring in circumference at the base about half a mile, situated near the Tiber, to the south of the Aventine. It was the rubbish-heap of the Romans, which began to accumulate, it is thought, about the beginning of the empire. It consists almost entirely of broken pottery, chiefly of vessels used in the importation of products from the provinces and mostly from Spain. The adjoining landing stages were apparently cleared periodically of broken or waste vessels, which were discharged on to this site.

second best, and the third of silk for the swiftest mares; A.D. 1404.
and whichever horseman severally reaches them first in the races takes them as prizes.

At length, after the onslaught on the beasts, some with shreds, others with the guts or filth on their sword-points, they depart in sorry procession home to their wives.

On the feast of the Purification (2nd February) the pope blesses candles, and, seated on his throne, he gives them out, not only to each there present, but also to all the catholic princes and princesses of the world, greater or smaller according to the differences of state and rank. They are made of white virgin wax. So too on Ash Wednesday, in his own person, he distributes ashes to all present. And of all this I was witness; for I received the candles for the king and queen of England, and I held the bason of cinders for the pope.

On my first coming to Rome, I heard of a certain prophet, who falsely gave himself out to be Elias and that he was sent on earth by God the Father to beget His son Christ; p. 96.
and that he had spurned Christ with his foot as He bare the cross to His crucifixion; and he declared that that woman, who should be thought worthy to be gotten with child by him and to conceive the Christ, should be blessed for ever and ever and should have the true glory which was assigned to the false Mary. But, carrying on his rites and services in secret places and corners, he cunningly kept himself out of light. And so it came about that Roman ladies visited him with eagerness to lie with him, feeding him with all sorts of dainties. But at last he was found out by the Romans, and dragged out of hiding, and carried away to the Capitol; where, after confessing that he had dishonoured more than a hundred Roman ladies, wives, widows, and virgins, (and he had done the same at Venice,) he was burned.

On the (fourth) Sunday in mid-Lent, in which is chanted "Lætare Hierusalem," for relief of Lent now half-spent, the

A.D. 1404. pope at mass bears in his hand a rose [1] of great price, cunningly wrought of gold and silver, and anointed with myrrh and balsam whereby it gives forth sweet perfume through all the church, and after mass he gives it to the most noble knight there present; who, with his friends then gathered together in his honour, afterwards rides forth on the same day in full state, bearing it in his hand [2].

On behalf of the emperor of Constantinople, a solemn embassy came to the pope, declaring that they had been wrongfully bereft of the Roman empire, which was due to them as sprung from the person of the great Constantine, but which was wickedly usurped by the tyrant of Germany; and they prayed him that it be given back, with the kingdom of Naples and all Lombardy, or that otherwise a day and field be by him appointed to either side, in front of the city, to fight for this claim. The pope answered that, because of their heresies and schisms, and mostly for that concerning the Holy Ghost, whom they affirm to proceed from the Father alone and not from the Son, and because they make not oral confession, and put leaven in the bread, therefore were they righteously bereft of that same empire. Moreover, he added with a smile: "We seek not to have to do with the shedding of Christian blood."

From these Greeks I learned that the princes of Greece
p. 97. were fully descended from the said Constantine and his three uncles, Trehern, Llewellyn, and Meric, and from other thirty thousand Britons who were carried thither from Britain with him; and that such men of British race, in token of their blood and lordship, bear axes in their country, which others do not [3]. I learned further that

[1] The MS. reads "rosarium."

[2] The rose is sent to a princess or a favourite church. The institution of the ceremony is attributed to Urban V., who sent a rose in 1366 to Joan, queen of Sicily.—*Cérémonies*, etc., ij. 15.

[3] The Warangian guards are evidently here referred to. This body of men has been represented as formed from English, Celtic, or German recruits. "With their broad and double-edged battle-axes

their empire is almost worn out by the attacks of Turks and Tartars—just as the land of the Britons, the land of their origin, was laid waste by the Saxons, as all men know. A.D. 1404.

On Palm Sunday, the pope has palms and branches blessed, and afterwards, as above said of the candles, he also distributes the same, which are sent abroad altogether at the cost of the Genoese; but, failing the palms, olive-branches are given, at least to those there present. But the pope himself bears aloft two palm-branches and two branches filled with dates, of a great weight, in support whereof two knights attend him.

On Holy Thursday, the pope mixes the oil and chrism, and after mass, outside the gate of St. Peter, with the greatest solemnity he goes up on a raised scaffold and, in the vestments of the mass, glittering with gold and precious stones, he blesses the people. And from thence, the veronica being first seen, the pilgrims in a thronging crowd depart with joyful hearts.

At the last, he excommunicates by name the anti-pope along with his cardinals and favourers, and all heretics, schismatics, pirates, and brigands, and those who hinder the free passage of pilgrims and of provision (and above all that for the palace apostolic) to Rome[1]. And herefor he himself and all the cardinals hold in their hands white

on their shoulders, they attended the Greek emperor to the temple, the senate and the hippodrome; he slept and feasted under their trusty guard; and the keys of the palace, the treasury, and the capital, were held by the firm and faithful hands of the Warangians" (Gibbon, *Decline and Fall*, ch. lv.). There was a great migration of Englishmen to the East after the Norman invasion, and "among the Englishmen who at various times during William's reign sought fresh homes in foreign lands, not a few made their way to the New Rome, and there, in the service of the Eastern Emperors, they not uncommonly had the satisfaction of meeting the kinsmen of their conquerors in open battle" (Freeman, *Norman Conquest*, iv. 627).

[1] For example, in 1398, Onorato, count of Fondi, in his quarrel with Boniface IX., had seized Ostia and cut off the supplies.

A.D. 1404. waxen candles, and, when the excommunication is finished, they cast them among the people with the final words: "So be it! So be it!"

At length, after the banquet, he washes the feet of his guests, giving to each one two groats[1]; the which money his servants receive again from them who had it, for that in this behalf they carry them on their shoulders to the pope.

On Easter Day the office of the pope differs but little
p. 98. from the office of other days, save that he allots one share of the Host to his sub-deacon, and another share to his deacon, and the third share to himself in communion; and turning his face to the people, he sucks and draws up the Blood through a long golden tube, decked in the middle with the arms of the king of Aragon. The arms of the same king have also other two privileges in the court, by reason of benefits of his ancestors: for letters of grace, as it is known, are adorned with silken threads in the colours of the said arms; and the pope's canopy too has its yellow and red colours[2]. But after the banquet, holding converse in his chamber with his guests, he sits upon his throne, and he gives bountifully and dispenses with his own hands ginger and pepper, in token of the pepper which was exchanged between Darius the great and Alexander the great[3].

On the Saturday in Easter the pope celebrates mass in albs, and, just as above said of the candles and the palms,

[1] The *grossus* or Italian "grozzo," a silver coin of four "danari." It was on this coin that the English groat of fourpence was based in 1351.

[2] Innocent VII. was a Neapolitan.

[3] It was not pepper that was exchanged between Darius and Alexander. Adam, as usual, knows only half the story. The fable tells us that Darius sent to Alexander some sesame seed, as typical of the multitude of his troops. Alexander replied that the seed was numerous but tasteless, and, as typical of his own troops, sent mustard seed to Darius, who found it small but pungent.

he distributes consecrated *Agnus Dei*[1] of white wax; and I held the bason[2], which was emptied many times, and I had for myself those that were left at the end. And as to this *Agnus*, here are verses:— A.D. 1404.

"Of balm and cleansèd wax and chrism distilled
This Lamb is made, a gift with power fulfilled:
The Fountain's Child, whom mysteries express,
It guards the labouring mother in her stress.
From lightning flash, from things malign it saves;
The chaste who bear it do not fear the waves.
It stifles sin, as erst the blood of Christ.
The good find gifts. E'en fire may not resist.
From sudden death it shields, from Satan's woe;
Who honours it shall triumph o'er the Foe."

Master Richard Scrope, now approved a saint by reason of countless miracles, archbishop of York, of England primate, and of the apostolic see legate, as well as that most seemly youth and illustrious, the earl of Nottingham, marshal of England, because that, as it was declared, they were rebels to the king, were beheaded at York[3]. The citizens of York, lying naked to their drawers on the ground, as if A.D. 1405. p. 99.

[1] Cakes of wax stamped with the *Agnus Dei*.

[2] The bason in which the *Agnus Dei* were placed and presented to the pope for distribution. "Chaque pape, la première année de son pontificat, et puis de sept ans en sept ans, a coutume la semaine dans l'octave de Pâques de bénir solennellement les *Agnus Dei*, qui sont de petits pains de cire blanche, ronds, tant soit peu elliptiques ou ovales, moulés en forme de médailles, où il y a d'un côté la figure de Jésus-Christ ressuscité, moulée sous celle d'un agneau qui tient l'étendard de la Croix, et de l'autre part il y a sur le revers quelque saint en demi-relief, qui est ordinairement ou le patron particulier du pape régnant, à sçavoir celui qui porte son nom de baptême, ou celui pour lequel il a le plus de dévotion, et dont il croit l'intercession plus efficace auprès de Dieu."—*Tableau de la Cour de Rome*, 355.

[3] Archbishop Scrope and Thomas Mowbray, earl marshal and earl of Nottingham, joined the rising of the earl of Northumberland and lord Bardolf, whose fate is described afterwards; they were beheaded at York on the 8th June, 1405.

A.D. 1405. a second Day of Judgement were come, on account of their favour shown in this behalf, sued and had the king's pardon.

On the seventh day of August, fourteen chief citizens of Rome, for that in the consistory they scoffed at the pope and his deeds, were slaughtered by his nephew, captain of the men at arms, as they were going away, at San Spirito[1]. Wherefore the Romans, to the number of three hundred thousand, rose in fury, shouting death to the pope and to all his courtiers and to foreigners. Forthwith fled the pope, along with his men at arms, to Viterbo. Those who stay behind are slaughtered, or cast into prison and robbed. And that day was to me, the writer of this history, a day of wrath and of calamity and of misery, for that, being stripped even to my shoe-latchets, I hardly escaped their tyranny with my life, lying hid for eight days in the garb of the friars preachers.

The Romans, with trumpets going before, acclaim the pope a traitor and a hypocrite, and reverse his arms in the streets, and paint a picture of him head downwards with the devil bringing him the crown. Forthwith the king of Naples with his Ghibellines and his army seized the city. By help and favour of a certain Roman, I, like the beggar that I was, (for a merchant had fled with my moneys at the first report,) in company with sailors, and

[1] On the death of Boniface IX. on the 1st October, 1404, and the subsequent election of Innocent VII., Ladislas, king of Naples, who had befriended Boniface, reconciled the Romans to the new pontiff, but with an ulterior view to his own advantage. Quarrelling recommenced in the next year. On the 2nd August, 1405, the citizens attempted to wrest possession of the Ponte Molle from the papal troops, but they were repulsed with loss. Negotiations were then opened, and on the 6th of the month a deputation of the Romans waited on the pope. On their way back they were decoyed by the pope's nephew, Ludovico, marquis of Ancona, into the hospital of San Spirito, and eleven of them were massacred. The people rose, and Innocent fled from Rome on the evening of the same day.—Creighton, *History of the Papacy* (1897), ij. 188.

even as one of them, passing by way of the Tiber and Ostia and the city of Albano, (where Brutus, grandson of Æneas and first king of the Britons, was born,) through Corneto, came to the pope at Viterbo, telling him all. Wherefore, jeering at me, he used to say: "Get thee back to thy mates, and don thy sailor's garb again!" A.D. 1405. p. 100.

On the feast of the Epiphany (6th January) the wretched Romans, being oppressed by the said king, sent the keys of the city to the pope, promising to him full dominion over the city. A.D. 1406.

I, the writer of this history, was poisoned at Viterbo by the dart of the envious; wherefore, swooning away seven times, I was laid out for dead; and, by reason of the thieving of the Romans and the flight of the merchants, as I have told above, my friends too going their way when my goods went theirs, for a season I was bereft of the means of life. But, under the order of the pope, the poison was found out in my turbid urine by a certain Jew, the pope's physician, Helias by name; and after much suffering and cost, blessed be God!, my health was renewed. And according to the word of the Lord: "Adam the man is become as one of us,"[1] I was restored to the Rota among the coauditors. A.D. 1405.

At Rome, meanwhile, in the palace of St. Peter and on the papal throne sat John of Colonna, chief patron of the Ghibellines and ruthless delegate of the above-named king, and thrust out his feet to be kissed and shrank not from doing other unheard-of things in mockery of the pope. And therefore the pope sent forth to Rome, against the tyranny of the king and this John, a great host under Paul Orsini, his captain[2]. And so, the followers of the king taking to flight, the blockade was raised and the invasion crushed.

[1] Gen. iij. 22.

[2] On the 26th August, 1405.

A.D. 1406. The pope with his court went back Romewards[1]; and, according to the line:

"For, in sooth, the scarlet cope
Marketh death for thee, O pope";

and again:

"Of justice that is fair in thee
May the white horse token be!"

he has four white chargers of state for his saddle-horses, trapped with gold and precious stones and red silk. On one he sits; and three follow, mounted by nobles. The canopy with the arms of the king of Aragon is borne aloft on spear-points above him. He is robed in a very wide cape, aye, of exceeding width, of bright scarlet, the borders whereof are held spread out by four running footmen, so that the horse cannot be seen; and all round about him is overshadowed.

p. 101. He is girt about the breast above the stole and the rochet, which is very fine. There are four broad hats, with cords of cunning and precious workmanship, of red silk, whereof he wears one on his head; and the other three are set upon three stands on three horses sumptuously trapped, the cords of the same being knotted and reaching to the ground on either side of the necks of the horses, which are ridden by three nobles, who go before in company with the pope; and thereto other things of pomp unheard of by men and greatly to be wondered at. There follows him on a great white horse a chair for sitting, for mounting, for dismounting, and for withdrawing for the needs of nature, fitted with a fixed ladder or steps. Boys with olive branches meet him, crying "Hosanna!" Many things hath mine eye seen, but greater than these hath not mine ear heard[2]. And in truth I, the writer of this history, many times communed with myself by the way.

There was argued before me in the palace apostolic the

[1] Innocent returned to Rome on the 13th March, and lived there quietly till his death, 6th November, 1406.

[2] Job xiij. 1.

case of and concerning the monastery of Saint Mary of Scotland at Vienna in Germany[1]. Marvelling whence the Scots had to do with that, I enquired and had it thus:— By reason of the pestilent teaching of Mahomet, religion both public and private throughout all Germany being quenched, and afterwards by Charles the great being restored among the people, Saint Columcille[2] was brought out of Ireland, because the faith failed not there, for the instruction and edification of the princes, and he restored and built up again the religion of private men. Whence, in all the chief places throughout Germany, monasteries of the Scots (now called the Irish) are known as cells subject to the monasteries of Ireland, (late called Scotland after Scota, the daughter of Pharaoh,) and held in the profession of Scottish, now Irish, saints, who were sent over hither to this intent. And surely, as to the change of name: is it not from those same Scots coming into Britain that the name of Albany was changed and called, after them, Scotland? Is it not from the Britons occupying Armorica that the name was changed and the land is now called Brittany? And so from the Angles, England, from the Hiberi, Hibernia or Ireland, are borrowed names. And thus passeth the glory of the world! A.D. 1406. p. 102.

Among other miracles of this Saint Columcille, who lies buried together with Saint Patrick and Saint Bridget in Down in Ulster, is this: invocation of his name being uttered, and at the same time being written down and cast into the flames, overcomes fire. Whence the verses:—

"Saint Columba, with thy name
Quench the mischief of the flame!"

and

"Grant, Columba, my desire;
Keep this roof-tree safe from fire!"

[1] The Schottenkloster, founded in 1158.

[2] It is scarcely necessary to say that Saint Columba was never in Germany; and to make him contemporary with Charlemagne is too absurd.

A.D. 1406. These then, as of origin Scots out of Egypt, after the passage of the children of Israel through the Red Sea, seeing that the plagues of God smote them, forsook their native soil, and dwelled under the king of Spain in the Basque country. But, being accused to the king, and in token of their treason having had their clothes cut in front, and being accused a second time and having had them cut behind also, they were expelled as traitors, with their garments thus shorn, in the time of Gurguint Brabtruc, king of the Britons, the founder of Canterbury and son of the great Belin, who, being on his way home from Norway, from collecting tribute, granted to them Ireland, which was then untilled, to be held of him[1].

Certain nobles of Ireland (in whom I trust not, but rather in Saint Patrick) declared to me, at the time when I was procuring high promotions for them, that after the said passage the Scots served the children of Israel in the desert, and above all by bringing away the brazen serpent. But, because they differed in faith, they were driven away, and went down into the Basque country, as above said; and for such service they were rewarded by the God of the children of Israel, and to this day are free from noisome snakes.

A.D. 1412. From a certain chaplain of the diocese of Bangor, returned back from the Holy Land, I had it that he with other five hundred pilgrims, being driven by stress of weather at sea within the dominion of the soldan of Babylon, was cast into prison and held captive for the space of a year. But, the soldan having been conquered meanwhile

[1] Adam would find both in Geoffrey of Monmouth and in Giraldus Cambrensis the story of the colonization of Ireland by the Scots, whom king Gurguint Brabtruc, on his way home from subjugating the rebellious Danes, met just arrived in their ships from Spain at the Orkney Isles. But it does not appear whence he got the episode of the shorn garments. See *Galfredi Monumetensis Hist. Britonum* (ed. Giles), 49; and *Giraldi Cambrensis Topographia Hibernica* (Rolls series), dist. iij. cap. viij.

in a stricken field by the king of Damascus and beheaded, A.D. 1412.
the new soldan summoned those same pilgrims before his p. 103.
judgement-seat, who for mercy cast themselves down before him; and he smote with violence on the judgement-seat two strokes with a naked sword which he bare in his hand, but a third blow with gentleness and graciously, in token of pity and forbearance—otherwise they had all been dead men—and he spake thus: "Let the men of Genoa, along with all those of France and Spain, seeing that they are of their league, be led back to prison, to pay ransom as reprisal, because three ships of their people have plundered us. But let all the other Christians be let go free, for I would gladly with justice show favour to all Christians." And thus the chaplain went forth free [1].

On the feast of Saint Barnabas (11th June), being im- A.D. 1406.
poverished by disbursements, as I have told above, and on account of the thanklessness of friends, as I shall tell below, I departed from the court; and I journeyed through Siena, Genoa, the marquisate of Montferrat, Asti, Moncalieri, and Susa, and, on the feast of the blessed Peter and Paul (29th June), over the Mont Cenis, almost perished with

[1] Adam has here anticipated an event which happened in the year 1412. He must have met the Bangor chaplain after his return home to Wales, and not, as one would suppose from his narrative, while he was abroad. The "soldan of Babylon" or sultan of Egypt into whose power the chaplain fell was Nasir Faraj, of the Mamluk dynasty of sultans who governed Egypt from the middle of the thirteenth century to the early part of the fifteenth century. In 1412 he was defeated by the amir Shaykh el Mahmudi, governor of Damascus, and was executed on the 28th of May of that year. The caliph Musta'in was temporarily made sultan, and was the "new soldan" spoken of in the text. He was of the line of Abbasid caliphs, of the second branch, who took refuge in Egypt in the thirteenth century and remained under the protection of the sultans until the conquest of Egypt by the Turks in 1517. European pirates had raided the coasts of Egypt and Syria in the early years of the fifteenth century.—See Deguignes, *Hist. générale des Huns* (1756), p. 331; Jarrett, *Hist. of the Caliphs* (1881), p. 534; and S. L. Poole, *The Mohammadan Dynasties* (1894), pp. 80–83, and *Hist. of Egypt in the Middle Ages* (1901), p. 333.

A.D. 1406. the cold, and through Savoy by way of Lans-le-bourg and Aiguebelle; in which town I saw formally emblazoned in a hostel the arms of the lord Lionel, duke of Clarence, the second born of England, and of the other nobles who came with him out of England to his marriage with the daughter of the lord Galeazzo, lord of Lombardy [1].

A.D. 1405. On the feast of Saint Gregory (12th March), Griffith, eldest son of Owen, with a great following made assault, in an evil hour for himself, on the castle of Usk, which had been put into some condition for defence, and wherein at that time were the lord Grey, of Codnor, sir John Greyndour [2], and many other soldiers of the king. For those same lords, sallying forth manfully, took him captive, and pursuing his men even to the hill-country of Higher Gwent, through the river Usk, there slew with fire and the edge of the sword many of them, and above all the abbot of Llanthony, and they crushed them without ceasing, driving them through the monks' wood, where the said Griffith was taken [3]. And their captives, to the number of three hundred, they beheaded in front of the same castle near Ponfald; and certain prisoners of more noble birth they brought, along with the same Griffith, to the king. The which Griffith, being held in

p. 104. captivity for six years, at last in the Tower of London was

[1] Lionel, duke of Clarence, married, as his second wife, Violante Visconti, daughter of Gian Galeazzo, duke of Milan, on the 28th May, 1368, and died in the following October.

[2] Richard de Grey, baron Grey of Codnor, and sir John Greyndour, or Grendor.

[3] This defeat of Glendower's followers took place at "Pwl-Melyn mountain near Usk." Owen's brother Tudor was slain. It followed immediately on the defeat at Grosmont of 11th March, 1405. Adam's date is a little too early: perhaps he has confused the dates of the two battles. The *Annales Henrici quarti*, 399, gives the date as the 5th May. Otterbourne, 251, on the other hand, places the battle as early as the 15th March. See Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, ij. 171; Kingsford, *Henry V.*, 52. Monkswood lies about a mile and a half north-west of Usk.

cut off by a pestilence. And from that time forth in those parts the fortunes of Owen waned. A.D. 1405.

At length, setting out from Aiguebelle, I passed under a safe-conduct through Grande Chartreuse, and through the midst of Burgundy, Beaune, the nurse of the better wine of France, and Dijon, to Troyes in Champagne; and I crossed over the borders of the Isle of France to Provins and Brie-Comte-Robert, and to Paris; and at last I came down by way of Clermont and Amiens (where I saw the head of Saint John Baptist) and Arras, to Bruges in Flanders. And there Richard Lancaster, king of arms[1], counselled me, for that the king threatened me with death, that I should in no wise enter into England, without his royal grace first assured; which indeed he promised to obtain for me, and on account of which I waited for him in those parts for the space of two years, although to no purpose. A.D. 1406. A.D. 1406–1408.

I had it also that all my benefices had been granted to others, [whereby my substance] was forspent to the sum of hundreds of marks. To be brief, I pondered many things. But with Job I cried: "Shall we receive good at the hand of God, and shall we not receive evil?"[2]

In the said space of two years I travelled through the lands of Flanders and France and Normandy and Brittany, serving as counsel to many bishops and abbots and princes; and I got me some gain thereby. And twice in that season, while I was sleeping, I was clean stripped, at least on the second time, even to my breeches, by certain Welshmen in whom I had placed my trust. And assuredly on that same day I afterwards had of the bounty of the aforesaid princes one hundred and twenty crowns.

The earl of Northumberland and the lord of Bardolf[3], after many misfortunes, first fleeing from before the face of

[1] Richard del Brugg, or Brugge, created Lancaster king of arms by Henry IV.

[2] Job ij. 10.

[3] Thomas Bardolf, baron Bardolf of Wormegay.

A.D. 1406–1408. king Henry into Scotland, (the son of the lord Henry Percy, and grandson and heir of the same earl, having been surrendered as hostage,) thence passed under a safe-conduct into Wales to Owen, seeking aid, and there they tarried for a season; and at length they were overthrown in stricken field by the English under my lord of Powis[1]. Then they came into France also, under safe-conduct, seeking
p. 105. aid against the same king, but labouring in vain, for that the duke of Orleans withstood them. And, because I too often held converse with them, I thereby drew down on me the greater wrath of king Henry, when he knew thereof. At last the earl was traitorously enticed again into Scotland and thence into England by certain who promised under false seals that he should have the kingdom. And he held out to me great advancement, if I should pass over along with him; but God visited mine heart, and I bethought me: "Adam, thus beset in a maze, place thyself in the hand of the Lord!" And God sent an evil spirit, and according to their deserts, between the king and the same earl, after the way of Abimelech, as it is read in the book of Judges[2]. And therefore I turned my cloak, and I inclined my footsteps to my lord of Powis, abiding the favour of the king and his kingdom, if God should grant it; and so it came to pass.

A.D. 1408. The aforesaid lords passed over into Scotland and thence with an armed band into England, trusting to have the kingdom for themselves. But the sheriff of York[3], being well ware of their coming, crushed them in battle and beheaded them, and sent their heads to king Henry; which were afterwards set up beyond London bridge[4]. And when

[1] Edward de Cherleton, baron Cherleton, feudal lord of Powis, K.G.

[2] ix. 23.

[3] Thomas Rokeby.

[4] They were defeated at Bramham Moor, 19th February, 1408. Bardolf died of his wounds. His body was quartered, and his head was set up over one of the gates of Lincoln. Northumberland fell on the field. His body was quartered and beheaded.

I heard these things, I, the writer of this history, gave thanks unto Him who foreseeth what is to come, for that I had stayed behind. A.D. 1408.

By the means and furtherance of the duke of Burgundy, the duke of Orleans, on account of his unheard-of greed passing all bounds, (the infirmity of the king of France being the cause thereof,) although he was the king's brother, was put to death as a usurper of the government[1]. Whence arose a mighty seething up of rebellion, which even now has not ceased, within the realm of France, as all men know. The bishop of Liége[2], who was the brother of the wife of the duke of Burgundy, came to Paris, to his aid, with five thousand armed men; and this aid forthwith the same duke did afterwards reward in full. For when the bishop's diocese rose in wide rebellion, for that he would not be ordained to the priesthood, and when by authority of the antipope another was chosen in his stead, his adversary was slain in mortal battle by the said duke, together with sixteen thousand men and upwards; and the same bishop was restored unto his high estate.

In truth, there ought to be in France twelve peers, to wit, three dukes and three counts, spiritual; and three dukes and three counts, temporal; as appears in the lines:— p. 106.

"Dukes temporal in France are three:
First name we him of Burgundy;
And peers of him are princes twain
Of Normandy and Aquitaine.

High prelates of the same degree
And rank are also counted three;

[1] Louis, duke of Orleans, brother of Charles VI., was murdered by John the Fearless, duke of Burgundy, his cousin, on the 23rd November, 1407.

[2] John of Bavaria, bishop of Liége, 1390–1417, son of Albert, count of Holland. He died in 1428. His sister Margaret was duchess of Burgundy.

A.D. 1408.

Their sees are Rheims, a mighty one,
And Langres next, and eke Laon.

Great counts we number thrice again,
Of Toulouse, Flanders, and Champagne;
And bishops in the same array
Of Chalons, Noyon, and Beauvais."

But the king, treating the peerages with scorn, seized them to himself on every opportunity, so that he now has gotten to himself four of those which are temporal and has joined them to the crown; and other two, of Burgundy and Flanders to wit, the same duke holds. And this was the source of evils, because, when the king fell sick, the duke of Burgundy claimed that the governance of the realm belonged to him only.

A.D. 1410. The master of Prussia, of the order of chivalry of Saint Mary of the Teutons, in these days marched into the realm of the Turks, and conquered in battle their king, together with five hundred knights who were driven in flight. But straightway afterwards he himself, by reason of his too great pride, was defeated by the king of Poland[1].

From the Teutons I had it that, in honour of Arthur, king of Britain, for that he delivered them from the hands of the Romans, throughout all the cities and chief places of Germany great festivals are held in honour of stranger princes who come thither. The public place of the city, being endowed with revenues for the purpose, is decked out; and wines and spices, and dances with all melody of music, and with courteous welcome of lords and ladies, are lavished right nobly.

Master John Trevaur, doctor of laws and bishop of St. Asaph, casting off his special friendship for the English, threw in his lot with the fortunes of Owen, in peace and in war; and, having twice passed over into France seeking

[1] The Teutonic knights, under their master Ulrich von Jungingen, were disastrously defeated, in 1410, by Vladislas, king of Poland, at Tannenberg, near Potsdam.

aid of armed men, he was translated to a see among the Indians; and the abbot of Llanegwast [1] was chosen bishop of St. Asaph in his stead. But the same master John, thus fallen into ill fortune, betook himself to Rome, where, beyond Tiber, on the fifth day of October, in the year of our Lord 1412, he died [2]. A.D. 1410.

While I was in Bruges, the above-named earl of Northumberland and lord of Bardolf were lodged, the one in the monastery of Eeckhout [3], and the other in a hospice in the midst of the city. And on the eve of Saint Brice (12th November), in the twilight of the evening, there came from the side of England in the air a ball of fire, greater than a large barrel, lighting up, as it were, the whole world. And, as it drew near, all men were astounded and stood in fear lest the city should be destroyed. But it passed on A.D. 1406. p. 107.

[1] Or de Valle Crucis abbey, co. Denbigh.

[2] John Trevaur, or Trevor, created bishop of St. Asaph in 1395. After serving the crown staunchly for many years, he went over to Owen in 1404, and was immediately deprived. He was concerned in Northumberland's rebellion, and fled with him into Scotland in 1405; and he remained true to Owen's cause for the rest of his life (Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, ij. 10). The date of his death is uncertain. An epitaph in the chapel of the infirmary of the abbey of St. Victor of Paris is said to mark the place of his burial. But, according to Browne Willis (Le Neve, *Fasti*, i. 70), the words of the inscription are: "Johannes episcopus Hereford, in Wallia, qui obiit anno Domini 1410, die Veneris, 10° mensis Aprilis." This reading, however, is differently given by Bradley, *Owen Glyndwr*, 299, who does not quote his authority: "Johannes episcopus Asaphensis in Wallia, qui obiit A.D. 1410, die secundo mensis Aprilis." The see was filled in 1411 by the appointment of Robert of Lancaster, who was probably the abbot of Valle Crucis mentioned by Adam, for he seems to have been connected with that house, an existing charter of his being dated there (Le Neve, i. 71). Adam was no doubt personally acquainted with Trevaur, and he is curiously precise in his statement of the place and date of his death. But, whatever the rest of the statement may be worth, the fact that the see was filled in 1411 and not till then seems to substantiate the date of 1410 as the year of Trevaur's death; and 1412 in the text may be only a clerical error.

[3] The monastery of St. Bartholomew of Eeckhout, an early foundation, which was demolished in 1798.

A.D. 1406. straight against the belfry of Saint Mary, and, being severed in twain by the blow, it drove apart its two portions to fall over against the doors of the said earl and lord: a mighty token, as did afterwards appear, of their ruin.

In the chronicles of the same monastery, I found this which here follows, written in mockery of the French, for that in former days they were routed by the men of Flanders:—

The Passion of the French, according to the Flemings[1].

. . . . . .

p. 110. Likewise I found it recorded in the chronicle of Martinus, in the history of Constantine the second, that in a very ancient tomb at Constantinople there was found a plate of gold with this writing thereon: "Jesus Christ shall be born of the Virgin Mary; and I believe in Him." Also, that in Spain a certain Jew, while he was breaking up some stony ground wherein to plant vines, found in the middle of a rock which he clove asunder a book of leaves of stone containing the same words, and further-

p. 111. more setting forth the division of the course of the world into three parts, from Adam even unto Antichrist, and of each part its conditions. And of Christ it thus began: "Jesus Christ, the Son of God, shall be born of the Virgin Mary, and He shall suffer for the people; and I believe in Him. And I shall be found in the days of

[1] The mock chronicle is so offensively profane that it is better left without translation. The battle of Courtrai, in which the French army under Robert of Artois was routed with fearful slaughter, was fought on the 11th July, 1302.

Ferdinand, king of Castille." And thus it was. And the Jew was baptized. A.D. 1406.

Out of the annals of the Hebrews, lo!, the tokens which shall forerun the Day of Judgement: On the first day, shall the sea rise forty cubits above all the mountains, not outspread, but standing, after the fashion of a wall, in its own place. On the second day, it shall fall again, so that it shall scarce be seen. On the third day, all fishes shall lift up a cry unto heaven, which God only doth understand; and I believe that they shall render the last witness to the Creator. On the fourth day, the seas and all waters shall burn with fire. On the fifth day, all trees and herbs shall sweat a bloody dew; and all the fowls of the air, after their kind, shall flock together, and shall taste naught while they meditate on their Creator. On the sixth day, buildings shall fall; and there shall be thunder-bolts of fire from the setting of the sun even to his rising. On the seventh day, rocks shall clash together and shall be rent in four pieces, the sound whereof God alone knoweth. On the eighth day, there shall be so mighty a quaking of the earth, that all things on the face thereof shall be laid low. On the ninth day, all things which are rough shall be ground down to powder, and the earth shall be made plain. On the tenth day, men shall come forth from the caves, and for terror they shall not be able to speak together. On the eleventh day, all bones of dead men shall be laid bare above their sepulchres. On the twelfth day, the stars and constellations and all the other bodies of the firmament shall send forth perplexed and fiery rays; and the beasts of the earth shall gather in the fields, with a mighty lowing, tasting naught. On the thirteenth day, all living beings shall die, and shall rise again with the dead. On the fourteenth day, the heavens and the earth shall burn with fire. On the fifteenth day, there shall be made a new heaven and a new earth, and all men shall rise again to receive judgement; and on that day may the Son of the

A.D. 1406. Virgin, who shall judge the world because He hath redeemed it with His blood, place us on His right hand in company with the sheep!

Yet, before those tokens come to pass, Antichrist shall strive to deceive the world for a season of four weeks.
p. 112. In the first week, he shall labour, by declaring that he is the Christ promised by the law, to pervert the meaning of Holy Writ, and to destroy the law of Christ and to stablish his own. And he shall sit in the temple, as it were God, that he may take away the law of Christ (Daniel xj. "They shall place the abomination that maketh desolate"[1]; with the gloss). In the second week, by the working of miracles; for he shall make fire come down from heaven on the earth[2] through an evil spirit, even as Christ through the Holy Ghost (Revelation xiij.; with the gloss). In the third week, by abundance of gifts, for the treasures of the earth shall be laid open unto him[3] by the devils, and he shall share them, together with the land, among his followers (Daniel xj.; with the gloss). In the fourth week, by the wreaking of torments, for those whom he shall not be able to entice in the things aforenamed he shall slay cruelly; as in Revelation, concerning Elias and Enoch and others who resist him.

Lo!, here are verses that tell forth the tokens of the Judgement:—

"Ere the Judgement draweth near,
All the world perplexed shall be;
Tokens rough and signs of fear
Thrice five days shall mortals see.

Jerome, skilled in Hebrew lore,
Warnings of these tokens sent,
That the wicked may implore
Grace from lasting punishment.

[1] Dan. xj. 31. [2] Rev. xiij. 13. [3] Dan. xj. 43.

Witness they shall bear and prove, A.D. 1406.
With the old world's passing knell,
Cruel torments, if we love
Earthly blandishments too well.

Ocean first aloft shall pile
All his waters in a heap,
Topping mountain peaks, the while
Gathered up from out the deep.

Then to earth again he sinks; p. 113.
Eye of man shall scarce discern
Where within his bed he shrinks,
Till his wonted state return.

Fishes from the flood shall rise,
Heaven with lowings deep assail;
Flocking birds with doleful cries
Loud shall mourn, and beasts shall wail.

Dawns the fourth and dreadful day:
Flame devours the mighty deep;
Rivers burn; and in dismay,
Parched with fear, men pale and weep.

Clouds shall veil the fifth day's sun;
Blood shall growing herbs bedew,
Blood like sweat all earth o'errun,
Blood the living trees embrue.

Shattered is the embattled wall,
Tower and town uprooted lie;
Scarce in war might worse befall,
For the hour of doom is nigh.

Rock with rock shall clash in fight;
Men shall pray, in terror driven,
Cave and mountain if they might
Hide them from the wrath of Heaven.

A.D. 1406. Lo!, the earth shall quake again;
Creatures stumble all amazed;
Places rough shall now be plain,
Hills abased and valleys raised.

They erstwhile who caverns sought
Far afield are scatterèd,
Witless wanderers distraught,
Stricken dumb with awful dread.

p. 114. Ten days past! ten portents told!
Lo!, from out the bursten tomb,
(Sight of horror to behold!)
Dead men's skeletons do come.

Heaven upon the cowering world
Presseth with a stifling force;
Stars from out their spheres are hurled;
Flames through aëry spaces course.

All who here below remain
Living on the earth shall die,
With the dead to rise again
And be judgèd righteously.

Seventh twice-told the day doth rise,
Red with purifying flame,
With its blast doth melt the skies
And the earth's dissolving frame.

Signs and wonders now are past;
Heaven and earth anew God makes.
Hark!, the angel's trumpet-blast
From their sleep the dead awakes."

"From Heaven above descending, see
The Lord in clouds of majesty,
To judge mankind, the quick, the dead,
In Josaphat's vale gatherèd.

For doom shall every life be told; A.D. 1406.
The wicked shall the Cross behold,
The Crown, the Lance, and Him beside,
The One they pierced and crucified.

No heart may then its secret veil,
Nor wealth nor power in aught avail;
God's treasure shall the just possess,
And worldlings wail their wickedness.

What tongue may tell of heavenly bliss? p. 115.
What tongue, the pain of hell's abyss?
For saints God's fount of honour flows;
The damned are whelmed in endless woes.

So may each man with tears repent
And pray for God's enlightenment,
Regardful of the Judge to be,
And in the evil day go free!

No words the sinner's faults condone
Before that stern and righteous throne;
Nor plea nor patron there may rise,
To aid us in the great assize.

Distinction then there shall not be
Of clergy and of laity;
No favour may that Just One show,
Who seeketh out the truth to know.

There none may allegation try,
Exception take, nor join reply;
Appeal to Holy See is vain;
The sentence none may turn again,

No fee for bull or scribe, or for
Pope's chamberlain or janitor;
The wicked He delivereth
To torment's ever-living death.

A.D. 1406.

A dread to all, I rise and speak:
Ye clergy, hearken, proud or meek;
Secure, I fear not; lo!, my word
Shall smite you like keen-tempered sword.

To prelate and to cardinal,
To monk and nun shall woe befall,
To grudging priest, and clerk whose greed
Doth sell his soul for earthly meed.

p. 116.

The more their gain, more meagre they,
Like men to dropsy fall'n a prey,
Who drink and yet more thirsty grow;
For rest may misers never know.

The unjust judge the right perverts,
And breaks the laws himself asserts,
Of vengeance unaware; for he,
Condemner, shall condemnèd be.

Man dies and moulders in the earth;
His avarice, what is it worth,
Vain, empty tumult of the mind?
The fool must leave his wealth behind.

His body in vile shroud lies lorn,
His soul to place of torment borne,
Where, writhing like wind-shaken reed,
For ransom it may never plead.

Ye judges, ponder what ye are!
What may you to the Lord declare?
Shall Codex or Digest suffice?
For Christ judge, plaintiff, witness is.

Ye clerks, who softly feed and lie
On beds of down and tapestry;
Beware, who now your pleasure take,
Confession grievous ye must make.

Ye richly feast, and bid the door A.D. 1406.
Be shut against the hungry poor;
They beg a dole in humble wise,
Yet naught ye give, save blasphemies.

Your flesh with flesh ye stuff and fill,
And hoarded wealth ye spend and spill;
Rare wines from goblets large ye drain,
And stretch your maw for food again.

'In works of pity,' saith the Lord, p. 117.
'All ye who wrought have gained reward;
'Who cared not for my poor, depart!
'But ye who cared, be glad of heart!'

Now all is done. The damnèd lie
Rejected, ground in agony;
But honoured, comforted, the blest
Are called to their eternal rest."

The aforesaid Lancaster king of arms, returning back A.D. 1408.
from England, made known to me, the writer of this history, at Paris, that he had spoken with the king to make my peace, but that both by reason of my commerce with the said earl of Northumberland and of disparagements written of me by my rivals from Rome, there was no means of reconciliation with him, for that his indignation waxed stronger day by day. Wherefore, I, Adam, the writer of this history, made a declaration before the same king of arms that I would feign myself Owen's man, and with my following would cross over into Wales unto him; and thence, taking my chance, I would steal away from him to my lord of Powis, to await under his care the king's favour. And so it came to pass. And this declaration saved me my life. Snares were laid for me by sea; and eight ships of Devon chased me for two livelong days, and again and again I was hunted like a hare by so many hounds.

But at last, through the prayers of Saint Thomas of

A.D. 1408. India, whom I beheld in a vision praying to God that he would bless me, I escaped to the port of St. Pol de Leon in Brittany; and there in the chapel of Saint Theliau, where too he slew a dragon one hundred and twenty feet in length, committing myself to his care, I daily celebrated mass.

A.D. 1408–1411. At length, taking my chance, I landed in Wales at the port of Barmouth[1], and there I hid in the hills and caves and thickets, before that I could come unto my said lord of Powis, because at that time he had taken to wife, in the parts of Devon, the daughter of the earl of the same[2]; sorely tormented with many and great perils of death and capture and false brethren, and of hunger and thirst, and passing many nights without sleep for fear of the attacks of foes. Moreover, on behalf of the same Owen, when it was found out that I had sent to my said lord for a safe-conduct, I was laid under the close restraint of pledges. But at last, when my lord had come again to his own country, and when I had gotten from him letters of leave to come unto him and to rest safe with him, I gat me by night and in secret unto him at his castle of Pool; and there and in the parish church of the same, not daring to pass outside his domain, like a poor chaplain only getting victuals for saying mass, shunned by thankless kin and those who were once my friends, I led a life sorry enough —and how sorry God in His heart doth know.

p. 118.

A.D. 1411. Meantime, while I there abode, among the other gentlemen of Owen's party, three men of fame, to wit Philip Scudamore of Troy, Rhys ap Griffith of Cardigan, and Rhys ap Tudor of Anglesey, being taken by the captain of the same castle, were drawn to the gallows and hanged; the first at Shrewsbury, whose head is still there set up beyond bridge, the second at London, and the third at Chester.

[1] The native name is Abermaw, the "Abermo" of the MS.

[2] Powis's second wife; not a daughter of the earl of Devon, but Elizabeth, daughter of sir John Berkeley, of Beverstone, co. Gloucester.

At length, at the instance of my said lord, and of David Holbache, a man of high estate, I had the king's grace by his letters[1]; which too I got proclaimed at Shrewsbury. And then I passed over thither on foot, to visit mine old friends; and I had of them horses twain and one hundred shillings to my joy; and I hired me a servant; and, like to one new-born, I began somewhat to fashion again my condition as before mine exile. Then I gat me to mine own country, among old friends and kinsmen, whom I had advanced and had otherwise raised up in no small degree, and among my debtors, hoping myself to be comforted; but I found them to be not only thankless, and hurling reproaches to boot, but, for fear I should exact of them anything of mine own, even seekers after my ruin. As the proverb runs: not for myself but for what I had they loved me, and so, when fortune fled, they deserted me. And as the poet says: I begged a loan of my friend, and lost friend and money too. A.D. 1411. p. 119.

Thence into England, with trembling heart but with a cheerful countenance, I passed, to visit my lords and ancient friends; and I took count of benefices and goods lost beyond recall. In parliament was I, along with other doctors; and little by little, with the help of God, I enlarged mine heart and my countenance and my spirit.

By my lord of Canterbury I was restored in his court at Canterbury, and I was preferred to the good church of Merstham; and, like another Job, I gathered to myself servants, and books, and garments, and household goods, wherefore blessed be God for ever and ever!

The wife of Owen[2], together with his two daughters[3] A.D. 1409.

[1] A pardon was issued to Adam on the 20th March, 1411 (Patent Roll, 12 Hen. IV., m. 18). David Holbache (the MS. calls him Harlech), through whom it was obtained, sat in parliament for Shrewsbury, and founded Oswestry Grammar School.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, ij. 413; iij. 268.

[2] Margaret, daughter of sir David Hanmer.

[3] One of them was Mortimer's wife.

A.D. 1409. and three granddaughters, daughters of sir Edmund Mortimer [1], and all household goods, was taken captive, and sent to London unto the king; and Owen, with his only remaining son Meredith, miserably lay in hiding in the open country, and in caves, and in the thickets of the mountains. To make all safe, and to curb fresh rebellions by means of the king's soldiers and at his costs, the glades and passes of Snowdon and of other mountains and forests of North Wales were held guarded.

A.D. 1413. Henry the fourth, after that he had reigned with power for fourteen years, crushing those who rebelled against him, fell sick, having been poisoned; from which cause he had been tormented for five years by a rotting of the flesh, by a drying up of the eyes, and by a rupture of the intestines; and at Westminster, in the abbot's chamber, within the sanctuary, thereby fulfilling his horoscope that he should die in the Holy Land, in the year of our Lord 1412–13, and on the twentieth day of the month of March, he brought his days to a close. And he was carried away by water, and was buried at Canterbury [2]. That same rotting did the anointing at his coronation portend; for there ensued such a growth of lice, especially on his head, that he neither grew hair, nor could he have his head uncovered for many months. One of the nobles, at the time of his making the offering in the coronation-mass, fell from his hand to the ground; which then I with others standing by sought for diligently, and, when found, it was offered by him.

Henry the fifth, his first-born son by the daughter of the
p. 120. earl of Hereford, a youth upright and filled with virtues and wisdom, on the fourteenth day after his father's death,

[1] Mortimer's son, Lionel, was also taken. Owen's family fell into the hands of the English at the capture of Harlech, before February, 1409.—Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, iij. 266.

[2] The body was conveyed by water to Faversham, and thence to Canterbury.

Passion Sunday, to wit, then falling (9th April), was crowned with great solemnity at Westminster. A.D. 1413.

On the same day an exceeding fierce and unwonted storm fell upon the hill-country of the realm, and smothered men and beasts and homesteads, and drowned out the valleys and the marshes in marvellous wise, with losses and perils to men beyond measure.

The new king made proclamation at the coronation-feast of pardon to all offenders, even to those guilty of high treason, provided that they should get them royal letters thereto prepared this side the festival of Saint John Baptist; whence, for those same letters he got large sums of money. And also in his parliament, then forthwith holden at Westminster[1], he levied on the clergy a tenth and on the laity a fifteenth. Also, in granting confirmations of the yearly stipends of certain persons, he reserved to himself the profits of the first year. Whatsoever fees too are wont to be levied when new reigns begin, he doubled. And against the Welsh and the Irish he sent forth an edict, that each man should get him to his own country; and thereby from them, for leave to remain, he gathered to himself much treasure[2].

In these days, by virtue of a certain exemption of pope Boniface the ninth, the university of Oxford with one accord and with a strong hand withstood the visitation of the metropolitan[3]; whence arose grievous strifes, and slaughter of men on both sides, because the gentry of the A.D. 1411.

[1] On the 15th May.

[2] Henry agreed to enforce the statute of the last reign for the expulsion of aliens, saving his prerogative of granting dispensations.

[3] This was in the year 1411. Adam has made the worst of things. Nobody was killed. The archbishop appealed to the king, who summoned the chancellor and the proctors to London and required them to resign. Ultimately, however, on the mediation of the prince of Wales, they were allowed to retain their offices. The bull of pope Boniface was revoked by John XXIII in November, 1411; the university submitted; and the archbishop's right of visitation was solemnly asserted in parliament.—Rashdall, *The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages*, ij. 434.

A.D. 1411. country came upon them to the succour of the said lord archbishop of Canterbury. But the same lord at that time withdrew, doing naught; but he got such exemption revoked by pope John the twenty-third, and constrained the university to renounce it.

A.D. 1414. Solemn envoys from France on behalf of the king's marriage and the peace of the two realms bided with him at their own costs for the space of two months, and at length, when they departed, he sent back with them his own envoys[1].

p. 121. There were given to my lord the earl of March, and by him to my lord the king, two children, who were born in Wales, the male being of nine years and the female of seven years only, together with their common offspring which was being suckled by the mother, a great and unheard-of cause of wonder.

A.D. 1413. Led by sir John Oldcastle, knight, who in right of his wife was styled lord of Cobham, the Lollards by their noisome doctrine, and in special by that touching the sacrament of the altar, troubled the church and her faithful sons and the realm. They waxing stronger day by day in gathering multitudes, forbearance was withdrawn from them in certain places, with difficulty and under threat of interdict. The said sir John was condemned a heretic[2] by the same lord of Canterbury and others his suffragans him assisting, and was delivered over by him a prisoner in the Tower of London. Escaping thence[3] by night beyond the walls, and drawing unto him his followers by letters and by messengers, he secretly stirred the realm.

A.D. 1414. On the eve of the Epiphany (5th January[4]), in order that he might attack and destroy the king, the brave champion

[1] The negotiations with the duke of Burgundy are here referred to. His envoys were in England from the 19th April to the 17th June, 1414. Henry appointed ambassadors to treat on the 31st May.

[2] On the 10th October, 1413.

[3] On the 19th October.

[4] This date is too early; the gathering was planned for the night of the 9th–10th of the month.

of the faith who was filled with most Christian zeal, and all A.D. 1414.
prelates and churches, he appointed the field called Fyket-tysfeld[1] for a gathering-place by night for him and his wicked confederates. But the field being occupied on that night with armed men by the king, who had cognizance thereof, they were taken captive in great numbers when they came thither, and were drawn, hanged, and burnt[2]. And among them sir Roger Acton, a knight of Shropshire, still for the space of a month was swinging on the gibbet[3]. Many who were condemned or were to be condemned were held prisoners in the Tower of London and elsewhere through the realm. This knight, the son of a tiler, sprung from a lowly family of Shropshire, being enriched with the plunder and spoils of the Welsh war, and being puffed up beyond measure, got himself honoured with the privilege of the military order and with the belt of knighthood by king Henry the fourth, and invested with the golden spurs by the king's two sons, the first-born who is now king, and the second-born now duke of Clarence. Yet afterwards, he blushed not to lift up his heel against them, thankless as he was.

On the nineteenth day of the month of February, in the year of our Lord 1413–14, my most illustrious lord, kinsman of our lord the king and of his brothers, as also of the p. 122.
earls of March, Arundel, Nottingham, and Stafford, as well as of Bergavenny and Spencer, and son of the earl of Arundel, deceased, the lord Thomas of Arundel, archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England and legate of the see apostolic—the virtue, the lamp, the wisdom of the people, the torch and delight of the clergy, and staunch pillar of the church of the Christian faith, who gave me the good

[1] Or Little Lincoln's Fields.

[2] Sixty-nine were condemned; of whom thirty-seven were hanged, and of these seven were also burnt.—Ramsay, *Lancaster and York*, i. 180.

[3] He was executed on the 12th February.

A.D. 1414. churches of Kempsing in Kent and Merstham in Surrey, together with the prebend of Llandogo in Wales, and through whom I was hoping for promotion to greater things, even as he had promised,—suffering a sudden change[1] by the fate whereby all things sink to their setting, brought his days to an end, alas!, long time before I would have wished it, receiving with the joy of everlasting life that word of sweetness of the King of Heaven: "Good and faithful servant, enter thou into the joy of thy Lord."[2] And this ending of his life I beheld in a vision on that same night in London, in this wise: It seemed that he, leaving all his household and clad in short garments, as though about to journey afar, was running with great speed alone; and when I strove with utmost toil to follow him, he handed to me a waxen candle, saying: "Cut this in twain betwixt us two"; and so he vanished from my sight. And awaking I understood that henceforth we were divided, and for his soul in all sorrow I said a mass; and afterwards I was certified of his death. He, at the time of his decease, was celebrating, with all the clergy of his province, none being excused for any reason or spared if able to work, a most solemn convocation, in the church of St. Paul, on behalf of the faith in which we stand[3]. Wherein, being a most powerful champion, he passed many good ordinances against the Lollards and heretics; and among others, with consent of the king, this one: that any one guilty of heresy should lose his goods, both moveable and immoveable, and also on this account should be convicted of high treason, so that, besides the punishment of fire which is the penalty of heresy, he should be further punished by being drawn and hanged on the gibbet.

[1] He died unexpectedly of some affection of the throat.

[2] Matt. xxv. 21.

[3] Wake (*State of the Church and Clergy of England*, 350) mentions a convocation held 20th November, and an ecclesiastical council against the Lollards.

Further, that inquisitions and enquiries on this behalf should be holden throughout the shires by the king's justices[1]. These ordinances he got well brought into action before his death. The same convocation was resumed at Oxford, the very hatching-place of heresy; and, while it was still being holden, he died, as told above. A.D. 1414. p. 123.

Brother John Burghill, a covetous man, of the order of preachers, bishop of Lichfield[2], to his scandalous report throughout the realm, hid away a great sum of gold in a hole in his chamber; and, by reason that the hole was open at the other end, a pair of jackdaws, (birds which are rightly called *monedulæ* from *moneta*,) which were minded to build their nest therein, cleared out the hole and scattered the gold among the trees and over the garden, to the profit of many. And this story I heard to my delight one day told at the table of my said lord by certain guests, great men of the realm.

To the see of Canterbury was translated master Henry Chicheley, doctor of laws, then bishop of St. Davids[3]; in whose place was chosen master John Catterick to be bishop of St. Davids. To the same lord of Canterbury, when I departed from Oxford, I surrendered my civil chair. At length, within half a year thenceforth, he [master John Catterick] was chosen in succession to the said brother John Burghill departing this life, and in his place Stephen de Patryngton, of the order of Carmelites, was elected to the see of St. Davids[4].

The king held a parliament at Leicester[5]; wherein were

[1] Adam is here anticipating. The statute against Lollardry which he quotes was passed in the parliament of Leicester, after Arundel's death. But the archbishop no doubt had a hand in preparing the enactment.

[2] Translated from Llandaff to Lichfield, 1398. Died 20th May, 1414.

[3] Translated to Canterbury, 27th April, 1414.

[4] Catterick was translated from St. Davids to Lichfield, 1st February, 1415.

[5] From 30th April to 29th May, 1414.

A.D. 1414. laid to the charge of prelates and clergy many transgressions and extortions and shortcomings in appropriations of wills, in misuse of hospitals and in regard of residence of curates, and in other things. The redress of these offences did the king give over to the convocation of the clergy; which being holden under the said archbishop of Canterbury in the church of St. Paul in London, there was in many things redress ordained, especially in regard of wills, to wit: that under one hundred shillings value twelvepence be paid, and so up to twenty pounds; and beyond that sum, up to one hundred pounds, ten shillings; and so, up to one thousand pounds, for every hundred pounds, ten shillings; provided that, in whatever sum the value of the will should stand, the ordinary should not receive more than twenty pounds for all his
p. 124. pains. In this convocation were granted by the clergy, two tenths (although against custom, for the laity were wont to make grants first), before the grant of a fifteenth of temporal goods.

Now, at the cost of the clergy, to attend the general council of Constance, which was to be holden at the cost of the realm and especially at the cost of the clergy, for the redress of the said excesses and of the union of Christendom, were sent as solemn envoys the bishops of Bath and of Salisbury and of St. Davids, and the abbot of Westminster and the prior of Worcester, and the earl of Warwick, the lords Fitz-Hugh and Zouche, and also the knights sir Walter Hungerford and sir Ralph Rocheford[1].

[1] The envoys were Nicholas Bubbewith, bishop of Bath and Wells, Robert Hallum, bishop of Salisbury, John Catterick, bishop of St. Davids, Richard Beauchamp, earl of Warwick, William de Colchester, abbot of Westminster, Henry, baron Fitz-Hugh, John de Malvern, prior of Worcester, sir Walter Hungerford, and sir Ralph Rocheford. Their appointment was dated 20th October, 1414.—Rymer, *Fœdera*, ix. 167. William la Zouche, baron Zouche, of Harryngworth, was lieutenant of

In these days the Scots attacked the northern parts of England with no light hand. A.D. 1414.

The church of London, setting aside its own use which agreed not with others, took unto itself into daily use the offices of Salisbury, beginning on the first Sunday in Advent.

In this parliament[1], the king granted general pardon to all who should sue out letters to this end before the feast of Saint Michael[2]. It was also decreed that chaplains having stipends, if they held cures, should receive eight marks; otherwise seven marks only[3]. And, as otherwise on sacks of wool, now on bales of cloth a tribute was levied. On the eve of the Conception of the Blessed Virgin (7th December) the parliament was dissolved.

In this the second year of his reign, the king began to found near to Shene upon the bank of the Thames, three houses of religion, to wit one of the Carthusian order, the second of the order of Saint Bridget, and the third of the order of Saint Celestine, endowing them out of the possessions of the monks of France. The priories of Goldcliff and of Neath, otherwise French houses, are now in poverty[4].

The king sent far and wide throughout his realm certain

Calais, and was one of the envoys to the duke of Burgundy, 14th July, 1413.

[1] The parliament of the 19th November.

[2] Perhaps Adam makes this statement (which appears to have no foundation) in connection with the number of private petitions in this parliament.

[3] "Le roi voet qe nulles chapeleins annuelers preignent desore en avaunt pluis pur lour entier salarie par l'an, c'est assavoir, pur ses table, vesture, et autres necessaries, forsque vij. marcz, ne les chapeleins parochiels, qi sont retenuz a servir cures, ne preignent pur lour entier salarie annuell, c'est assavoir, pur ses choses avaunt ditz, sinon viij. marcz."—*Rot. Parl.* iv. 52.

[4] Henry V. founded the house of Jesus of Bethlehem at West Shene (Richmond) for Carthusians; and the house of Mount Sion, or Sion House, at Twickenham, of the order of Saint Bridget. The third foundation, to which Adam refers, may be the hermitage which was

A.D. 1414. trusty men in his service to visit each man of substance and to borrow money for him.

The king, in order to demand of the king of France the lands of his birthright which lay in that kingdom, as also
p. 125. his daughter in marriage for the maintenance of peace, sent forth solemn envoys into France, to wit, the bishops of Durham and of Norwich, and the earl of Dorset and the lord Scrope[1]. But they came back thence into England, as it were a laughing-stock, and without accomplishing aught. Wherefore the king and the great men of the realm, being wroth, turned the arms of their indignation against the French, as appears hereafter.

A.D. 1415. Monstrous perjury! Our pope John the twenty-third, false to his promises of union, other two, to wit Gregory and Benedict, being popes along with him (an unnatural thing), for that he was rebellious, and was otherwise guilty of perjuries, and murders, and adulteries, and simonies, and heresy, and other excesses, and for that he twice fled in secret and cowardly in vile raiment by way of disguise, by the said council was delivered to perpetual imprisonment[2].

On the sixteenth day of the month of June[3], in the

within the monastery of Shene (*Monasticon Anglic.*, vj. 29). Walsingham mentions the three foundations (ij. 300). Goldcliff was an alien Benedictine priory in Monmouthshire, given by Robert de Chandos, in 1113, to the abbey of Bec, in Normandy. The abbey of Neath in Glamorganshire was given to the Cistercians of Savigny, near Lyons, by Richard de Grainville and Constance, his wife, *temp.* Henry I.

[1] The envoys were Thomas Langley, bishop of Durham, Richard Courtenay, bishop of Norwich, Thomas Beaufort, earl of Dorset, and Richard de Grey, baron Grey of Codnor; 5th December, 1414.—Rymer, *Fœd.* ix. 183. Scrope was employed elsewhere.

[2] The pope succeeded in escaping from Constance on the 20th March, 1415, disguised as a groom, and evaded his pursuers for some time. He was deposed by the council of Constance on the 29th May. He was delivered into the care of duke Louis of Bavaria, who kept him in easy confinement at Heidelberg and Mannheim, and finally set him at liberty for a ransom. He died cardinal of Frascati, 1419.

[3] Henry left London on the 18th June, for Southampton.

third year of his reign, king Henry the fifth, after that he A.D. 1415.
had first visited holy places with all devotion, set forth from London, in glorious chivalry, towards France, to subdue it in war, passing on his way to the sea-coast at Portsmouth. And there the envoys of the king of France coming to him and pretending to sue for peace [1] bought for a great sum of gold, from certain his councillors, to wit, Richard, earl of Cambridge, the brother of the duke of York, and also the lords Scrope and Grey [2], consent to his death, or at least a hindrance of his voyage. But they, being discovered by the earl of March, deservedly found a death worthy of such treason. And there came solemn envoys from the king of Aragon offering his daughter to wife to our king; in company with whom he sent over his own envoys thence [3].

Then making fair sail [4] he ploughed through the sea, and on the thirteenth day of August he landed on the coast of Normandy, near to Harfleur, with his host, according to his desire. And pitching his camp he attacked the place, and he tormented its area with underground mines, and shook the city and the walls with his engines and cannons; and in the end he won the surrender, along with the inhabitants all stripped and having cords and halters about their necks, and all the goods of the place. And presently p. 126.
he drove out the native inhabitants and placed therein his own Englishmen; and he chose the earl of Dorset to be captain [5]. Many perished in the siege by a flux of the

[1] The archbishop of Bourges and the bishop of Lisieux, who met Henry at Winchester on the 30th June, and departed on the 6th July.

[2] Richard Plantagenet, of Conisburgh, created earl of Cambridge, 1st May, 1414; Henry, baron Scrope, of Masham; and sir Thomas Grey, of Heton. Grey was executed forthwith; Cambridge and Scrope, after condemnation by their peers, on the 5th August.

[3] Commissions were issued to John Waterton and John Kemp to treat for the alliance and marriage, 25th July.—*Fœd.* ix. 293-4.

[4] On Sunday, the 11th August.

[5] Harfleur surrendered on the 22nd September. "The inhabitants

A.D. 1415. bowels, among whom were the bishop of Norwich, and the earls of Arundel and Suffolk[1]. Likewise thousands departed to their homes; some honourably, because they had leave; some discharged, because they were sick; and some with disgrace, because they deserted the field, to the indignation of the king[2].

The king, committing himself to God and to the fortune of the sword, brave and like a very lion, with scarce ten thousand warriors at his back[3], with caution led the march through the open country, yea, through the midst of France, for the bridges were broken down, towards Calais, to abide there. And against him came his adversaries of France, to the number of sixty thousand of the nobles and men of rank[4], nigh Agincourt in Picardy. Battle was joined, and, blessed be God!, the victory fell to our king, on whose side only seven and twenty were slain, among whom the men of noble birth who died were the duke of York, and the young earl of Suffolk, sir [Richard] Kyghley and sir [John]

were taken under the king's protection, and divided into three classes: (1) those who were good for ransom; (2) the able-bodied, who might be allowed to stay on taking an oath of allegiance; (3) the weak and infirm, who would be out of place in a frontier stronghold. The last were forthwith marched out under escort, with just as much as they could carry in their hands; and so turned over to the care of their countrymen at Lillebonne (24th September)."—Ramsay, *Lancaster and York*, i. 204. Dorset was left with a garrison of 300 lances and 900 bows.—*Ibid.* 205.

[1] Richard Courtenay, bishop of Norwich, died on the 15th September; Michael de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, also died during the siege, 18th September; Thomas Fitzalan, earl of Arundel, after the surrender, on the 13th October.

[2] The losses by sickness and desertion are estimated to have been about one-third of the whole force.

[3] Henry marched from Harfleur on the 8th or 9th October. The number of the English who fought at Agincourt has been placed at 900 to 1,000 men-at-arms, and 3,000, or, according to some writers, 5,000, archers.—*Lanc. and York*, i. 205.

[4] The French were perhaps about four times as numerous as the English.

Skidmore, knights, and David Gam, of Breconshire[1]. On the side of the French, who were slain or captured or put to flight, and who brought with them their treasure and, although to their own confusion, the king's baggage train, the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon and six counts were made prisoners; and three dukes, six counts, three and twenty barons, ninety lords, and fourteen hundred gentlemen who bore coat armour, and seven thousand of the commons fell on the field[2]. A.D. 1415.

On the fourth day of November, under my lord John, duke of Bedford, the king's second brother, and in his absence his lieutenant, began at London a solemn parliament[3], to provide supplies to the king both of men and money; wherein it was agreed by the commons that the full fifteenth, which had been granted, as above, to be paid at the feast of the Purification of the Blessed Virgin next coming (2nd February), should be levied forthwith to the king's use before the feast of Saint Lucy the virgin (13th December). There was likewise granted another fifteenth for the year next following, to be paid on the feast of Saint Martin (11th November). To the king also, for the term of his life: as to merchandise on wool-sacks four marks, and on wine-tuns three shillings, and on other goods, each and every, poundage of twelvepence; and rightly, for it was in honour of his deeds of valour. p. 127.

In the king's praise it was thus that a certain verse-maker wrote:—

[1] Edward, son of Edmund of Langley, succeeded his father as duke of York in 1402. Michael de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, had just succeeded his father, Michael, who had died before Harfleur. The name of sir John Skidmore does not appear in other lists of the slain. The number varies in the works of English contemporary writers, the highest estimate being about one hundred. French writers raise the number to 1,600.—Nicolas, *Hist. Batt. Agincourt*, 135.

[2] Perhaps these figures may be fairly correct. The chroniclers generally make them range from 3,000 or 4,000 to 11,000 or 12,000.

[3] It sat from the 4th to the 12th November.

A.D. 1415. "Now, all ye toiling English, rest and pray;
Fair fell the victory on Crispin's day,
When France's envious power sank prone to earth:
France, who derided England's native worth.
O hateful foe, that scornèd worth was vowed
To humble thee; it planted courage proud
In our king's heart; in thine was slothfulness.
This gift is Heaven's; Christ's name we praise and bless.
Thrust back is guile; gone, superstitious craft;
Minds sullen sink, drenched with a bitter draught."

On the feast of Saint Brice (13th November) the parliament was dissolved.

On the nineteenth day of the month of November next following, in the church of St. Paul, in London, under master Henry Chicheley, archbishop of Canterbury, a convocation of the clergy was holden in aid of the king's needs, for that he was deprived of his substance by the enemy. Wherein, notwithstanding that a whole tenth remained to be levied on the feast of the Purification (2nd February) next coming, as aforetold, other two tenths were granted to the king to be levied, at the two next feasts of Saint Martin in the winter (11th November), on benefices not yet taxed, which should reach to the annual value of ten pounds and upwards, the same to be valued by the ordinary. But from this grant the importunity of the writer of this history got relief for the benefices of Wales, as being impoverished by war. To the envoys likewise of the clergy, then present at the general council at Constance on behalf of the union of the church, there was granted an aid for their costs.

Saint George's day (23rd April), at the instance of the king, was prolonged into a double festival for a holiday from toil.

p. 128. On the twenty-third day of the month of November, in

the year of our Lord 1415, the king coming from Calais to London, bringing his captives, was met one mile without the city by the clergy in procession, and at four miles, in the place called Blackheath, by the noblemen and citizens on horseback, to the number of ten thousand, clad in red, with hoods party black and white, exulting in heart. At the entrance of London bridge was an armed giant, like to a second Pallas, outtopping the walls in height, having a spear even like to the spear of Turnus (whereby the same Pallas perished, pierced through full four feet and a half: concerning whom see above [1], book vj., chapter xxj. at the end) and a mighty axe, by the very wind of which not only might woods be laid low, but even an army might be slain; and by his side was his wife, so huge that not only was she fit in truth to give birth to giant devils, but even to bring forth towers of hell—and they were set beyond the gate, as warders thereof, together with the king's arms. In the midst of the bridge, in front of the drawbridge, were two outworks, in one of which on the right hand was a lion bearing a lance, and in the other an antelope having a shield of the arms of the king hung about his neck, and beyond the bridge was a figure of Saint George armed becomingly—and these were placed to guard the bridge. Conduits, richly decked and running with wine, gave good cheer to all who would drink. At the cross in the midst of Cheap, from one side to the other, abutting on the church of St. Peter [2], was placed a triple building, rising in steps, with a wonderful show of battlements and with turrets and bulwarks, and set about with shields of arms of the realm and of the princes thereof; A.D. 1415.

[1] Adam refers to Higden's "Polychronicon," to which his chronicle was added as a supplement. The passage is as follows: "Hujus etiam imperatoris [Henrici] diebus repertum est Romæ illud incorruptum Pallantis corpus, cum hiatu vulneris quatuor pedum et semis. Corpus ejus altitudinem muri vincebat."—*Polychron.* (Rolls series), vij. 148.

[2] The parish church of St. Peter the Apostle, or St. Peter in Cheap, which stood by the cross, at the corner of Wood Street.

A.D. 1415. and it was made up of planks by the cunning of carpenters and painters, and draped with stout canvas painted in the resemblance of walls of varied porphyry and marble and ivory, whereon was written, "Glorious things are spoken of thee, O city of God"[1]; and it was filled in suitable wise with angels and with singers and with instruments of
p. 129. music. And from its iron gates there issued forth six stately citizens, bearing two golden bowls filled with gold, which were offered unto the king. And after the manner of those who welcomed king David when he had slain Goliath, there met the king, hard by the lower conduit, maidens dancing and singing, with choirs and drums and golden viols. In a word: the city was decked in all the raiment of gladness, and rightfully there was great joy among the people[2].

The king, dismounting at St. Paul's, visited the holy cross, and the tomb of Saint Erkenwald[3], and the high altar, with much reverence and giving of alms; and thence he departed towards Westminster, there to dine; and on the morrow he caused a solemn funeral service, on behalf of

[1] Ps. lxxxvij. 3.

[2] Compare the account of the pageants given in the *Gesta Henrici Quinti* (by the king's chaplain, now identified as Elmham), ed. B. Williams (English Historical Society), 1850; and also that in Elmham's "Liber Metricus" in *Memorials of Henry the Fifth* (Rolls series), ed. C. A. Cole, 1858. The six stately citizens with their bowls of gold, issuing from the gates of the castle in Cheap, do not appear in the other accounts. Perhaps Adam has created them out of the deputation from the city to make an offering to the king: "And on the morwe after, it was Soneday and the xxiiij day of November, the maire and alle the aldermen, with two hundred of the beste comoners of London, wente to Westminster to the king and present hym with a ml. pound in too basynes of gold worth v^{c}. li."—*Chronicle of London* (ed. Nicolas), 1827, p. 103.

[3] "Monuments in this Church [St. Paul's] be these: First, as I reade, of Erkenwalde, Bishop of London, buried in the old Church, about the yeere of Christ, 700, whose body was translated into the new work in the yeere 1140, being richly shrined above the Quire, behinde the high Altar."—Stow, *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 358.

those who had fallen on either side in the war, to be celebrated by bishops and clergy at St. Paul's. A.D. 1415.

The aforetold capture of Harfleur and the victory of the battle of Agincourt are put shortly in this verse:—

"Harfleur Maurice hath fordone;
Agincourt hath Crispin won."[1]

And the date of the year of our Lord 1415 is found in the same verse, thus: M. once, C. thrice, L. twice, V. twice, and I. five times, added together[2]. The festivals of the two saints brought with them those victories.

Died Owen Glendower, after that during four years he had lain hidden from the face of the king and the realm; and in the night season he was buried by his followers. But his burial having been discovered by his adversaries, he was laid in the grave a second time; and where his body was bestowed may no man know[3].

The king with great reverence went on foot in pilgrimage from Shrewsbury to St. Winifred's well in North Wales[4]. A.D. 1416.

The earl of Dorset, captain of Harfleur, marching out with five hundred men, slew of the French who assaulted him to the number of two thousand, and took many captive[5].

[1] The verse occurs in Elmham's "Liber Metricus."

[2] He means that these letters occur in the line as many times as he has stated; and that, by giving them their value as Roman numerals and adding them together, the result is 1415. This is also the meaning of the gloss in the "Liber Metricus," viz. "Annus Domini m.cccc.xv. per literas numerales."

[3] The exact date of Owen's death is uncertain. On the 5th July, 1415, sir Gilbert Talbot was commissioned to treat with him with a view to his submission; and again, on the 24th February, 1416, to treat with Owen's son, Meredith, for the same purpose (*Fœdera*, ix. 283, 331). The latter commission, not being to treat with Owen direct, seems to imply uncertainty of where he was to be found. The traditional date of his death is the 20th September, 1415. See Wylie, *Henry the Fourth*, iij. 270.

[4] Holywell St. Winifred, co. Flint. This pilgrimage of Henry V. does not appear to be recorded elsewhere. If Adam is correct in his statement, it probably took place early in 1416.

[5] Dorset, being pressed for supplies, set out on a plundering raid,

A.D. 1416. On the third day of March[1] was holden a parliament at Westminster, and in the church of St. Paul a convocation, wherein by clergy and people were granted in aid to the king two tenths and two fifteenths[2].

p. 130. Sigismund, king of Hungary and of the Romans, after that he had striven for a year long in the general council at Constance for the unity of the church, and had delivered to prison pope John the twenty-third, who ruled in Rome, on account of his falsehoods, and after that he had visited the kings of Castille and of all Spain on behalf of the same unity, came through the realm of France into England for the stablishing of peace between those two kingdoms[3]. But, after that he had abode in London at the great cost of the realm, the business being thwarted by the cunning of the French, he returned again to the council of Constance.

A dreadful battle at sea was fought under the duke of Bedford, the king's brother, against the French, of whom many were brought captive with their ships into England, but their store of victuals was sent into Harfleur[4].

The king of the Romans aforesaid, departing from England, with his own hands sent forth scrolls, to be scattered abroad in the public places, whereof the wording was on this wise:—

"O happy England!, fare thee well, and be
Rejoiced and blest in glorious victory!

but was intercepted by the French, and only fought his way back to Harfleur with difficulty; 11th–13th March, 1416.

[1] Parliament met on the 16th March.

[2] It was only an acceleration of the tenth and fifteenth, granted in the parliament of the 12th November, 1415, that was now agreed to. Convocation, held at St. Paul's in November–December, 1416, granted two tenths.—Wake, *State of the Church*, 352.

[3] Sigismund of Luxemburg, king of Hungary, 1386; emperor, 1410; died 1437. He landed in England on the 1st May, and departed on the 24th August, 1416. He was made a knight of the Garter.

[4] The French fleet was investing Harfleur. The battle was fought in the Seine on the 15th August.

The Christ thou dost adore in hymns of praise, A.D. 1416.
And to angelic state thy nature raise.
Then how may I, departing hence, exceed
In lauding thee? Praise justly is thy meed." [1]

There also came into England, for the stablishing of the said peace, the duke of Holland [2], who also, the business

[1] The Latin verses occur in Elmham's "Liber Metricus," ll. 925–7; and also in the *Gesta Henrici Quinti*, p. 93. They are quoted by Capgrave, *De illustribus Henricis* (Rolls series), ed. Hingeston, 120; and are translated in his *Chronicle of England* (Rolls series), 314:—"Sone aftir that the emperoure went oute of Ynglond, and in his goyng he mad his servauntis for to throwe billis in the wey, in whech was writyn swech sentens:—

'Farewel, with glorious victory,
Blessid Inglond, ful of melody.
Thou may be cleped of angel nature,
Thou servist God with so bysy cure.
We leve with the this praising,
Whech we schal evir sey and sing.'"

In an interesting letter, 2nd February, 1417, written to the king, in English, by John Forester, present at the council of Constance, the return of Sigismund to Constance is described, and his friendly feeling towards England expressed: "Lykyth now to wyte that the Wodnesday, the thyrde our efter noon, other ner therby, the sevene and twenty day of Januer, ȝour broder, Gracious Pryns, the kyng of Rome, entride the cite of Constaunce wyth ȝour lyvere of the coler abowte his necke (a glad syghte to alle ȝour lyge men to se) wyth a solempne procession of all estayts . . . and he resseyvede ȝour lordes graciously wyth reyght god cher, and of alle the worschypful men of ȝour nation he touchyde thar handys only in alle the grete prees. . . . And onde the morwe . . . he made a colation to our nation . . . and he rehersede ther how the bretherred bygan wyth hym and my Lord ȝour Fader, and how hyt is now so continuid and knyt for ȝow and ȝowr successoures, wyth the grace of God, for ever; and he tolde thame so gret worschyp of ȝowr Ryal Person, and sythyn of alle my Lordis ȝour brethers, and thenne of the governaunce of holy kyrk, dyvyn servise, operaments, and alle stat ther of kepyd, as yoff hit wer in paradys, in comparison to ony place that he evere came inne to for; so that, fro the heyeste unto the loweste, he commendit ȝour glorious and gracious Persone, ȝour reme, and ȝour gode governance."—*Fœdera*, ix. 434–5.

[2] William of Bavaria, count of Holland, landed in England about the 26th May and departed on the 21st June. Next year he had

A.D. 1416. unaccomplished, soon afterwards was subtly poisoned and thus perished.

A.D. 1417. In the year next following, that is, in the year of our Lord 1417, a parliament and convocation were holden in London; wherein the clergy and people were taxed by a levy of two tenths and as many fifteenths [1].

At last, the council having met in the month of May at Reading [2], there went out a decree from Cæsar that all the world of men with money should be set down by name; and so being summoned they emptied their coffers.

p. 131. Then the lord our king turned his course with a mighty host against Normandy, to subdue it; the Irish first of all being forbidden the realm [3]. And in his passage he broke up the French fleet which threatened him; and yet the army lay on the sea-coast, awaiting a fair wind, and distressed the country-side in no small degree by levy of supplies [4].

The Scots who had gathered together in a multitude under the duke of Albany, their king, who before had been taken captive on the seas, being still a prisoner in England, were put to flight [5].

a quarrel with Sigismund, who had demanded a subsidy from the Frisians, which William forbade. His sudden death on the 31st May, 1417, was, according to the usual practice of the time, attributed to poison.

[1] Parliament met on the 16th November, 1417, and granted two tenths and two fifteenths. Convocation of Canterbury gave two tenths; that of York, one tenth.

[2] Henry was at Reading on the 10th and 11th May.—*Fœdera*, ix. 453.

[3] This seems to be a distorted account of the recall to Ireland of Irish then in England, 26th Feb., 1417.—*Proc. and Ord. Privy Council*, ij. 219.

[4] At the end of June the earl of Huntingdon was sent with a squadron to clear the Channel. He fell in with a squadron of nine Genoese carracks, and after a severe struggle captured four of them and dispersed the rest. Henry embarked at Portsmouth on the 23rd July; but a week passed before he landed in Normandy.

[5] In October, 1417, the Scots, under the duke of Albany, laid siege

The king landing in Normandy[1] at Caen, where William the conqueror lies buried, subdued the land as far as the south bank of the river Seine, taking two and thirty cities, castles, towns, and fortalices. But at the siege of Falaise[2], by the carelessness of the lord Talbot, he lost more than five hundred men who were slain by the captain of Cherbourg[3]. The booty taken in Normandy was put up to sale in every quarter of England. A.D. 1417.

Sir John Oldcastle, the heretic, renouncing the sacrament of the altar, the Blessed Virgin, and confession, and eager to pervert the king and the kingdom, after a long exile in Powis, was captured by the lord of that country, who had great reward; and in the parliament and convocation, wherein also two tenths and two fifteenths were granted in aid to the king, he was presented; and on the fourteenth day of December he was hung on the gallows in a chain of iron, after that he had been drawn, and once and for all was burnt up with fierce fire there bestowed, paying justly the penalty of both swords[4].

After the schism of thirty years' duration, which distracted Christendom, there being sometimes four, sometimes three, sometimes two popes sitting, Otto di Colonna, a noble of Rome and a Ghibelline, cardinal deacon of the title of Saint George in the Velabrum, was by all the cardinals and proctors of the several nations, with one

to Berwick; but were driven off by the earl of Northumberland. The earl of Douglas also attempted Roxburgh.

[1] At Touques, on the 1st August. Caen was besieged and carried by assault on the 4th September.

[2] Falaise was besieged from the beginning of December, 1417, and surrendered on the 2nd January, 1418.

[3] Gilbert, baron Talbot, led a raid into the Côtentin; but on his return he was attacked at the ford of St. Clement, at the mouth of the river Vire, and barely escaped with the loss of nearly all his men. See the *Chronique de Normandie*, printed at the end of the *Gesta Henrici Quinti*, p. 180.

[4] He was brought before parliament on the 14th December, and was condemned and executed in St. Giles's Fields on the same day.

A.D. 1417. accord and by miracle, the Holy Ghost moving them, chosen for pope, on Saint Martin's day (11th November); and for that reason he was called Martin the fifth.

p. 132. In the same convocation last holden, spiritual patrons were constrained, under Henry Chicheley, archbishop of Canterbury, to promote graduates [1]; and he too then consecrated bishops master John Chaundeler, elect of Salisbury, and master Edmund Lacy, elect of Hereford (and I was sponsor there), after he had first confirmed them [2].

The king [3], with the manhood of the realm and with warlike valour, returned again into Normandy; and on the
A.D. 1419. nineteenth day of January, after toilsome siege and many assaults, he victoriously subdued the great city of Rouen, together with the country round about, the wretched Frenchmen not daring to stand against him, and the citizens redeeming their lives for fifty thousand pounds in gold [4]. On which account in London were made solemn processions of triumph through the city, with dancing, by clergy and people, from the shrine of Saint Erkenwald to the shrine of Saint Edward, not once only but each Wednesday and Friday.

Likewise our lord the king, with the manhood of the kingdom, in the glory of war bent his course against France, to subdue it; and within the space of two years he overcame it, with its cities and castles and strong places
A.D. 1420. whatsoever. He also made subject to his lordship the king

[1] An ordinance was passed, 6th November, for the due promotion of graduates, in order to encourage those who, for the advancement of learning by constant study, had continued in the universities and had grown old in academical life.—Goodwin, *Hist. Hen. V.*, 171.

[2] John Chaundeler, bishop of Salisbury, 1417–1426; and Edmund Lacy, bishop of Hereford, 1417, translated to Exeter, 1420, died 1455.

[3] The rest of Adam's text consists rather of notes than consecutive history. Here he repeats the invasion of France, and he does so again in the next paragraph.

[4] The siege of Rouen began on the 29th July, 1418, and lasted till the 19th January, 1419. The ransom imposed was 300,000 French crowns or £50,000.

and queen of France and their daughter Katharine, to be joined to him in marriage[1], and the kingdom too, to come to him after the death of the king, and all the magnates of the realm. And therefore he subscribed his name in his letters as heir and regent of France. And returning thence, with the same lady his wife, into England for her coronation[2], he left his brother, the duke of Clarence, to be his lieutenant in France. But a sickness of the flux delayed this business. And a certain putative and so-called son of the king of France, by name the Dauphin, and by the queen declared false offspring, making a party for his rights, drew unto himself the counts of Penthievre and Armagnac and certain Scots, and on the eve of Easter, then falling on the twenty-third day of March, in the year of our Lord 1420–1, with great slaughter he destroyed the said duke, in a sudden onset, along with his company in their arms and trappings, to wit, the earls of Suffolk and Somerset and Huntingdon, the lords of Kyme and Tankerville, and many other noblemen, to the sore grief of England[3]. This slaughter the earl of Salisbury, who was appointed to ward the land along with his comrades, has cruelly avenged with fire and sword, and is still avenging it[4]. And, seeking

A.D. 1420.

A.D. 1421.

p. 133.

[1] The treaty of Troyes was signed on the 21st May, 1420. Henry and Katharine were immediately married in the cathedral of Troyes on Trinity Sunday, 2nd June.

[2] They landed at Dover on the 2nd February, 1421. Katharine was crowned on the 23rd of the month.

[3] The battle of Baugé, in Maine, took place on the 22nd March, 1421. The duke of Clarence precipitated the attack with his cavalry, first driving in the Scottish outposts, but being then overwhelmed by the main body before his infantry could come up. Adam blunders in his list of the dead. The duke, John, baron de Roos, Gilbert de Umfreville, styled earl of Kyme, and John Grey of Heton, styled earl of Tankerville, were slain. John Beaufort, earl of Somerset, John Holland, earl of Huntingdon, and Walter, baron Fitz-Walter, were taken prisoners.

[4] The earl of Salisbury, governor of Normandy, failed to relieve Alençon, to which the French had at once laid siege; but he afterwards advanced and harried the country up to Angers. See Salisbury's letter to the king, *Fœdera*, x. 131.

A.D. 1421. to avenge it yet more, our lord the king, rending every man throughout the realm who had money, be he rich or poor[1], designs to return again into France in full strength[2]. But, woe is me!, mighty men and treasure of the realm will be most miserably fordone about this business. And in truth the grievous taxation of the people to this end being unbearable, accompanied with murmurs and with smothered curses among them from hatred of the burden, I pray that my liege lord become not in the end a partaker, together with Julius, with Asshur, with Alexander, with Hector, with Cyrus, with Darius, with Maccabæus, of the sword of the wrath of the Lord! Thereon, reader, see the decretal xxiij., question v., "Remittuntur."[3]

[1] See *Fœdera*, x. 96, and *Proc. and Ord. Privy Council*, ij. 280, for documents respecting enforcement of loans.

[2] Henry embarked for the last time for France on the 10th June, 1421. Adam therefore wrote the last words of his chronicle before that date.

[3] Decretum II., caus. xxiij., quest. v., cap. xlix.: *Aliquando puniuntur peccata per populos divino jussu excitatos*, beginning, "Remittuntur peccata per Dei verbum." Adam's closing words of discontent are very significant.

INDEX

Aachen: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.

Abermo: *see* Barmouth.

Acciajuoli, Angelo, cardinal of Ostia: crowns Innocent VII., 90, 262.

Acqs, bishop of: *see* Du Bois, Pierre.

Acton, sir Roger: executed for joining in the Lollard rising, 121, 301; his base origin and pride, *ibid.*

Adam of Usk: *see* Usk, Adam.

Agincourt, battle of: 126, 308, 309; English and French losses, *ibid.*; verses on, 127, 129, 310, 313; service in St. Paul's for the slain, 129, 313.

Agnus Dei wafers: ceremony of distribution, 98, 275; verses on, *ibid.*

Aids: *see* Taxes.

Aiguebelle: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 104, 282, 283.

Albano: Adam of Usk passes through, 99, 277.

Albany, Robert, duke of: defeated by the English, 131, 316.

Albemarle, duke of: *see* Plantagenet, Edward, earl of Rutland.

Alexander the great: anecdote of him and Darius, 98, 274.

Amiens: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.

Ancona, Ludovico, marquis of: massacres Roman citizens, 99, 276.

Anglesey: Humphrey, duke of Gloucester, dies there, 29, 180.

Ann of Bohemia: negotiations for her marriage, 3, 139; marries Richard II., 3, 140; her death, 9, 150.

Aquitaine: the dauphin and his brother made duke of, 56, 219; invaded by the French, *ibid.*

Aquitaine, marshal of: the marshal of Brittany so called, 85, 255.

Aragon: the daughter of the king refused in marriage by Richard II., 9, 151; arms of, used by Innocent VII., 98, 100, 274, 278; embassy to Henry V., 125, 307.

Armagnac, Bernard, count of: joins the dauphin, 132, 319.

Arras: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.

Arthgallo, king of Britain: Richard II. compared with him, 29, 180.

Arthur, king of Britain: festivals in Germany in his honour, 106, 286.

Arundel, earls of:
See Fitzalan, Richard.
Fitzalan, Thomas.

Arundel, sir John: lost at sea, 8, 148.

Ashes: ceremony of, at Rome, 95, 271.

Asti: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 281.

Babylon, soldan of: *see* Egypt.
Badges: of Henry Bolingbroke and Richard II., 25, 173; statute against their use, 39, 194.
Bagot, sir William: brought prisoner from Ireland, 29, 180.
Bajazet I., sultan: defeated by Tamerlane, 62, 227.
Bangor, diocese of: a prebend bestowed on Adam of Usk, 45, 206; adventures of a chaplain of, 102, 280.
Bardfield: lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Bardolf, Thomas, baron: joins Glendower and is defeated by lord Powis, 104, 283, 284; passes over to France, 104, 284; to Scotland, 105, 284; enticed into England and defeated and slain, *ibid.*; at Bruges, 106, 287; portent foretelling his fate, 107, 287, 288.
Barmouth, in Wales: Adam of Usk lands there, 117, 296.
Basel: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Bath, knights of the: creations by Henry IV., 33, 187.
Bath and Wells, bishops of:
See Bowet, Henry.
Bubbewith, Nicholas.
Baugé: defeat and death of the duke of Clarence at, 132, 319.
Bavaria, Louis of: *see* Louis of Bavaria.
Beauchamp, Margaret, countess of Warwick: harsh treatment of, by Richard II., 17, 36, 162, 190.
Beauchamp, Richard, earl of Warwick: made a knight of the Bath, 33, 187; attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Beauchamp, Thomas, earl of Warwick: takes part in the battle of Radcot-bridge, 6, 145; impeached, 13, 157; tried and imprisoned in the isle of Man, 16, 17, 161, 162; his son knighted, 33, 187; bears a sword at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187; special pardon, 39, 194; his death, 61, 226.
Beauchamp, sir William, afterwards baron Bergavenny: takes Adam of Usk to see Richard II. in the Tower, 30, 182; joins in the suit of lord Grey, 58, 221; a criminal set free and delivered to him, 62, 227; riot of his villeins, 63, 228.
Beaufort, John, earl of Somerset: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 157; made marquess of Dorset, 17, 162; bears a sword at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187; seizes goods sent by Roger Walden to Saltwood, 38, 192.
Beaufort, John, third earl of Somerset: taken prisoner at the battle of Baugé, 132, 319.
Beaufort, Thomas, earl of Dorset: made captain of Harfleur, 126, 307; his fight with the French, 129, 313.
Beaune: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Bedford, duke of: *see* John, duke of Bedford.
Bellinzona: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Benedict XIII., pope: embassy on his behalf to Boniface IX., 88, 259; it is imprisoned, 88, 260; reference to him, 125, 306.
Benediction: ceremony of, at Rome, 97, 273.
Bergavenny: riot of the villeins, 63, 228.
Bergavenny, baron: *see* Beauchamp, sir William.
Bergen-op-Zoom: Adam of Usk lands at, 74, 242.

Berkeley, sir James: has the lordship of Raglan confirmed to him, 40, 195.
Berkeley, Thomas, baron: one of the deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184.
Bern: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Berners, sir John: executed, 6, 146.
Berwick, near Shrewsbury: battle of Shrewsbury fought there, 83, 252; hospice founded there, *ibid.*
Billingsgate: Adam of Usk embarks at, 74, 242.
Blake, John: executed, 6, 146.
Blanche of Lancaster, daughter of Henry IV.: negotiations and marriage with Louis of Bavaria, 59, 85, 223, 256.
Blank charters: destruction of, 43, 203.
Bohemia, Ann of: *see* Ann of Bohemia.
Bohemia, king of: *see* Wenceslaus, king of Bohemia and emperor.
Bologna: taken by the duke of Milan, 75, 244; revolt of, 76, 245.
Bologna, cardinal of: *see* Migliorati, Cosimo dei.
Boniface IX., pope: receives Adam of Usk, 75, 243; confirms the election of the emperor Rupert, 76, 79–82, 245, 248–252; confers benefices on Adam, 76, 77, 246; wishes to appoint him bishop of Hereford, 85, 256; amendment of abuses of indulgences, etc., 76, 245; receives an embassy from the supporters of Benedict XIII., 87, 259; his rage and death, 88, 259; his simony, *ibid.*; dreams and vision about him, 88, 259, 260; his funeral, 89, 261.
Bonn: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Borbach, John: one of the deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184.
Borgo-San-Donnino: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Botsam, John: made bishop of Rochester, 45, 205.
Botsam, William, bishop of Rochester: dies, 45, 205.
Bourbon, John, duke of: taken prisoner at Agincourt, 126, 309.
Bowet, Henry: proposed as bishop of Bath and Wells, 64, 231.
Bowland, Robert: convicted of immorality at Nuneaton, 57, 220.
Boxgrove priory: lady St. John buried there, 55, 217.
Bramham moor: defeat of the earl of Northumberland at, 105, 284.
Branding: baptism by, 93, 267.
Breisach: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Brembre, Nicholas, mayor of London: executed, 6, 146.
Bridlington, John: his prophecies quoted, 8, 24, 25, 149, 171, 172, 173.
Brie-Comte-Robert: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Bristol: favourable to Wycliffe, 3, 140; Richard II. lands there, 9, 151; Henry Bolingbroke marches thither, 25, 174; executions at, *ibid.*; lord Despencer beheaded, 43, 203; riot against taxes, 62, 228; expedition against South Wales, 84, 255.
Britons: Greek princes [Warangian guard] descended from, 97, 272.
Brittany: descent of Bretons on the English coast, 85, 255.
Brittany, duchess-dowager of: *see* Joan of Navarre.
Brittany, marshal of: *see* Rieux, Jean, sire de.

Brocas, sir Bernard: executed, 42, 198.
Bruges: Adam of Usk arrives there, 104, 283; the earl of Northumberland and lord Bardolf there, 106, 287; portent foretelling their fate, 107, 287.
Brugg, Richard del, Lancaster king of arms: warns Adam of Usk, 104, 283; meets Adam in Paris and receives his declaration of conduct, 117, 295.
Bubbewith, Nicholas, bishop of Bath and Wells: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Buckingham: the archdeaconry conferred by the pope on Adam of Usk, 76, 246.
Builth: a stream there flows blood, 55, 218.
Burghill, John, bishop of Lichfield: anecdote of his miserly conduct, 123, 303; his death, *ibid.*
Burgundy: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Burgundy, John the fearless, duke of: murders the duke of Orleans, 105, 285; supported by the bishop of Liége, *ibid.*
Burley, sir Simon: executed, 6, 146.
Burnell, Hugh, baron: one of the deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184.
Burton, William: monk of Chertsey, 46, 207.
Bushy, sir John: speaker of the commons, 10, 153; impeaches the duke of Gloucester and the earl of Arundel, *ibid.*; and archbishop Arundel, 12, 156; beheaded at Bristol, 25, 174.
Byttervey, sir Walter: suit for arms, 64, 229.
Caen: captured by Henry V., 131, 317.
Caerleon: lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169; the castle ruined by Glendower, 78, 247.
Caermarthen: Richard II. flees thither, 27, 177; Adam of Usk appointed by the pope to the archdeaconry, 77, 246.
Caernarvon: besieged by Glendower, 71, 238.
Calais: marriage of Richard II. with Isabella of France there, 9, 151; death of the duke of Gloucester at, 15, 160; the duke of Exeter made captain, 23, 171; Isabella passes through, on her return to France, 69, 236.
Cambridge, earl of: *see* Plantagenet, Richard.
Campania: granted to the king of Naples, 90, 262.
Candles: ceremony of, at Rome, 95, 271.
Canterbury, archbishops of:
See Chicheley, Henry.
Courtenay, William.
Fitzalan, Thomas.
Islip, Simon.
Sudbury, Simon.
Walden, Roger.
Canterbury, prior of: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184.
Cap and sword: ceremony of, at Rome, 92, 266.
Cardiganshire: favourable to Glendower, 70, 71, 237, 238, 239.
Carlisle, bishop of: *see* Merke, Thomas.
Carrara: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Catherine of Lancaster, daughter of John of Gaunt: married to the prince of the Asturias, 7, 147.

Catterick, John: elected bishop of St. David's, 123, 303; translated to Lichfield, *ibid.*; attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Cenis, mont: Adam of Usk passes over, 103, 281.
Chaplains: regulation of their stipends, 124, 305.
Charles of Valois, dauphin: defeats the duke of Clarence at Baugé, 132, 319.
Charter-house: fasting monk of, 60, 225.
Chartreuse, grande: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Chaundler, John: consecrated bishop of Salisbury, 132, 318.
Cherleton, sir Edward: joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174; present at Chester, 26, 175; imprisons the seneschal of Usk castle, 62, 227; becomes baron Cherleton and lord of Powis, 70, 238; his second marriage, 117, 296; protects Adam of Usk, 118, 296; captures sir John Oldcastle, 131, 317.
Cherleton, John, baron: his death, 70, 238.
Chertsey abbey: death of abbot John Usk, 46, 207.
Chester, city of: Henry Bolingbroke enters, 27, 176; execution of sir P. de Legh, 27, 177; Richard II. a prisoner there, 28, 179; deputation of citizens of London sent thither, *ibid.*
Chester, county of: troops raised there by the earl of Oxford, 5, 144; the king's guards drawn from, 11, 23, 154, 169; their bad character, 23, 169, 170; made a duchy, 15, 160; Henry Bolingbroke marches thither, 26, 175; it submits, *ibid.*; bad character of the inhabitants, 26, 175, 176; given to the prince of Wales, 37, 191.
Cheyne, sir John: speaker of the commons, 36, 190.
Chicheley, Henry, bishop of St. Davids: translated to Canterbury, 123, 303; holds convocation, 123, 127, 304, 310; enforces promotion of graduates in the church, 132, 318; consecrates bishops, *ibid.*
Chichester, bishop of: *see* Rushook, Thomas.
Chosroes, king of Persia: Richard II. compared with, 43, 202.
Chronicles: quoted to prove Richard II.'s descent, 30, 31, 182–184.
Cinders: ceremony of, at Rome, 95, 271.
Cirencester: the earls of Salisbury and Kent killed there, 42, 197.
Clare: lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Clarence, dukes of:
See Lionel, duke of Clarence.
Thomas of Lancaster.
Clarendon, sir Roger: hanged, 84, 255.
Clergy: reforms, 123, 304; promotion of graduates, 132, 318.
Clerk, William: executed for slander, 58, 222.
Clermont: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Clifford, Richard: proposed as bishop of Worcester, 64, 230, 231.
Clyfford, James: leader of an expedition from Bristol against South Wales, 84, 255.
Cobham, John, baron: impeached, 18, 163; banished to Jersey, 18, 164.
Cobham, baron: *see* Oldcastle, sir John.
Coblentz: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Coddington: Henry Bolingbroke's

army encamps there, 26, 176; the church sacked, *ibid.*
Colchester, William de, abbot of Westminster: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184; attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Cologne: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Colonna, John of: his mockery of papal ceremonies, 100, 277.
Colonna, Otto di: elected pope as Martin V., 131, 317, 318.
Columba, saint: traditions of, 101, 102, 279.
Colvylle, sir John, of Dale: suit for arms, 63, 229.
Comet: betokening the death of the duke of Milan, 75, 243.
Como: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Conclave of the cardinals: described, 89, 260.
Confederate lords: defeat the earl of Oxford at Radcot-bridge, 6, 145; blockade the Tower, *ibid.*
Connaught: lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Constance, council of: English envoys to, 124, 304; aid granted to them, 127, 310; deposition of pope John XXIII., 125, 306.
Constantine, emperor: descent of Greek princes from his family, 97, 272.
Convocations of the clergy: 44, 58, 122, 123, 127, 129, 130, 131, 204, 221, 302, 303, 304, 310, 314, 316, 317.
Conway castle: negotiation for Richard II.'s surrender at, 28, 178, 179; surprised by the brothers Tudor, and retaken, 61, 226.
Cork: the earl of March dies there, 22, 168.
Corneto: Adam of Usk passes through, 99, 277.
Cornwall, duchy of: given to the prince of Wales, 37, 191.
Coronation: of Henry IV., 33, 187; of Innocent VII., 90, 262; of Henry V., 120, 299; of his queen Katharine, 132, 319.
Cossa, Balthasar, cardinal of St. Eustace, afterwards pope John XXIII.: presents Adam of Usk to the pope, 75, 243; subdues Bologna, etc., 76, 245: *see also* John XXIII., pope.
Courtenay, Richard, bishop of Norwich: dies at the siege of Harfleur, 126, 308.
Courtenay, William, archbishop of Canterbury: opposes taxation, 8, 150.
Courtrai, battle of: mock gospel describing, 107–110.
Crambourn: lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.

Darius: anecdote of him and Alexander the great, 98, 274.
Dartmouth: riot against taxes, 62, 228.
Dauphin, the: *see* Charles of Valois.
David ap Jevan Goz, envoy from France to Scotland: captured, 71, 239.
Decretals: quoted, 44, 59, 133, 204, 223, 224, 320.
Delamere forest: sir P. de Legh warden, 27, 177.
De la Moote, John, abbot of St. Albans: accused by the earl of Warwick, 16, 161.
De la Pole, Michael, first earl of Suffolk: flees and dies abroad, 6, 145.
De la Pole, Michael, second earl of Suffolk: dies at the siege of Harfleur, 126, 308.

De la Pole, Michael, third earl of Suffolk: slain at Agincourt, 126, 308.
De la Pole, William, fourth earl of Suffolk: wrongly stated to be slain at Baugé, 132, 319.
Denbigh, lordship of: suit brought by the earl of Salisbury, 16, 17, 160, 162; spared by Glendower, 71, 239.
Denmark, king of: *see* Eric, king of Denmark.
Derby, earl of: *see* Henry Bolingbroke.
Despencer, Thomas, baron: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 157; made earl of Gloucester, 17, 162; sent by Richard II. to arouse the Welsh, 27, 177; said to have poisoned the young duke of Gloucester, 29, 180; beheaded at Bristol, 43, 203.
Deverill: living given by the pope to Adam of Usk, 77, 246.
Diest: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Dijon: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Dorset, earl of: *see* Beaufort, Thomas.
Dorset, marquess of: *see* Beaufort, John, earl of Somerset.
Douglas, Archibald, earl: taken prisoner at Homildon Hill, 85, 256; takes part in the battle of Shrewsbury, 83, 253.
Du Bois, Pierre, bishop of Acqs: confirms the acts of the parliament of 1397, 18, 163.
Dunbar, George, earl of, and of March: transfers his allegiance to England, 65, 231; present at the battle of Shrewsbury, 82, 252.
Dymock, Margaret: her right to the office of champion, 35, 188, 189.
Dymock, sir Thomas: champion at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 188; his petition for the office, 35, 188.

Easter: ceremonies at Rome, 98, 274, 275.
Edmund of Langley, duke of York: absolved for share in the commission of regency, 12, 13, 56.
Edward the confessor: bells on his shrine ring spontaneously, 55, 218.
Edward III.: his death, 1, 137; his invasion of France thwarted by weather, 8, 149.
Eeckhout, near Bruges: the earl of Northumberland lodged there, 106, 287.
Egypt: story of the soldan of Babylon, 102, 103, 280, 281.
Eltham: Henry IV. and the Greek emperor at, 57, 220.
Ely, bishop of: *see* Lylde, Thomas.
England: verses on, by the emperor Sigismund, 130, 314.
Eric, king of Denmark: marries Philippa of Lancaster, 85, 256.
Erpingham, sir Thomas: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 32, 185.
Essex: rising in, in Jack Straw's rebellion, 1, 137.
Ethiopians: *see* Indians.
Excommunication, general: ceremony of, at Rome, 97, 273.
Exeter, bishop of: *see* Stafford, Edmund.
Exeter, duke of: *see* Holland, John.

Falaise: siege of, 131, 317.
False prophet: at Rome, 95, 96, 271.
Feriby, William: executed, 42, 198.

Fitzalan, Richard, earl of Arundel: takes part in the battle of Radcotbridge, 6, 145; enters London and blockades the Tower, *ibid.*; impeached and executed, 10, 13, 14, 153, 157-159; his memory cherished by the people, 15, 159; disposal of his lands, 15, 160; Richard II.'s dream about him, 39, 193; death of his second wife, 55, 217.

Fitzalan, Thomas, earl of Arundel: made a knight of the Bath, 33, 187; serves as butler at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187; dies at Harfleur, 126, 308.

Fitzalan, Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury (archbishop Arundel): active against the Lollards, 4, 142; impeached, 11, 12, 154, 156; forbidden parliament, 11, 155; banished, 15, 160; time allowed for his departure, 16, 161; lands in England with Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174; negotiates for the surrender of Richard II. at Conway, 28, 178; sermon in parliament on Henry IV.'s election, 32, 185; officiates at his coronation, 34, 187; his temporalities restored, 37, 192; confers livings on Adam of Usk, 40, 195; sermon on the suppression of rebellion against Henry IV., 42, 198; has charge of the bishop of Norwich, 43, 203; holds convocations, 44, 58, 204, 221; condemns W. Sawtre, 58, 222; shows favour to Adam of Usk, 119, 297; his visitation of Oxford university resisted, 120, 299; condemns sir John Oldcastle, 121, 300; his zeal against the Lollards, 122, 302, 303; his last convocation, 122, 302; his death, 122, 301, 302; Adam of Usk's vision of it, 122, 302.

Fitz-Hugh, Henry, baron: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.

Fitz-Pers, John, seneschal of Usk castle: released from prison, 61, 227.

Fitz-Walter, Walter, baron: taken by corsairs and dies, 78, 248.

Flanders: mock gospel on the battle of Courtrai, 107-110.

Flint: capture of Richard II. at, 28, 178, 179.

France: preparations for war with, 44, 205; questions on queen Isabella's dower, 48-54, 209-217; and on king John's ransom, 50-54, 212-217; the dauphin made duke of Aquitaine, 56, 219; the French seize Gascony, 64, 230; queen Isabella surrendered, 69, 236; skirmishes of the English and French fleets, *ibid.*; Henry IV. determines on war with, 69, 237; the earl of Rutland sent to Gascony, 71, 238; French expedition in aid of Glendower, 85, 255; political disturbances, 105, 106, 285, 286; the peers of France, 106, 285, 286; mock gospel on the battle of Courtrai, 107-110; embassies between England and France, 120, 300; failure of an English embassy to, 125, 306; embassy to Henry V., 125, 307; he invades France, *ibid.*; battle of Agincourt, 126, 308, 309; fight with the earl of Dorset, 129, 313; the duke of Bedford's sea-fight, 130, 314; Henry V.'s second invasion, 131, 316; the French fleet scattered, *ibid.*; Normandy reduced by Henry V., 131, 317; treaty of Troyes, 132, 319; battle of Baugé, *ibid.*; successes of the earl of Salisbury, 133, 319.

Frevyle, sir Baldwin: claims the championship, 34, 188.
Fykettysfeld (Little Lincoln's Fields): gathering of Lollards in, 121, 301.

Gam, David: slain at Agincourt, 126, 309.
Games: at Rome, 94, 95, 269-271.
Gascony: seized by the French, 64, 230; the earl of Rutland sent thither, 71, 238.
Genoa: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 281.
Genoese: provide palms for Palm Sunday at Rome, 97, 273; their rovers, 103, 281.
George, saint: his festival made a holiday, 127, 310.
Germany: Irish missionaries to, 101, 279; festivals in memory of king Arthur, 106, 286.
Germany, emperor of: question on his election, 59, 223; verses on, and ceremonies, 59, 223, 224.
See Rupert, count-palatine.
Sigismund.
Wenceslaus.
Ghibellines: *see* Guelphs.
Glamorganshire: attempt to arouse the men of, in favour of Richard II., 27, 177; invaded by men of Bristol, 84, 255.
Glendower, Owen: his first rising and defeat, 47, 208; harries Wales and takes lord Grey prisoner, 64, 77, 230, 247; attacks Pool, etc., 70, 237; captures the baggage of Henry, prince of Wales, *ibid.*; lays siege to Caernarvon, 71, 238; his banner, *ibid.*; harries the lordship of Ruthin and spares Denbigh, 71, 239; letter to the king of Scotland, 72, 239; and to the lords of Ireland, 73, 241; defeats sir E. Mortimer, 77, 246; who marries his daughter, 77, 247; harries the border, 78, 247; advances towards Shrewsbury, 82, 252; harries South Wales and the country of the Severn, 84, 254; his friends in England executed or imprisoned, 84, 255; French expedition in his aid, 85, 255; holds parliaments, 86, 257; his son Griffith defeated and captured, 103, 282; and dies in the Tower, 104, 282; capture of his family, 119, 297, 298; his death and secret burial, 129, 313.
Gloucester, dukes of:
See Plantagenet, Humphrey.
Thomas of Woodstock.
Gloucester, earl of: *see* Despencer, Thomas.
Goldcliff priory: endowment alienated, 124, 305.
Graduates: promotion of, in the church, 132, 318.
Greek church: services, 57, 220.
Greek emperor: *see* Manuel II., Palæologus.
Greek empire: laments for its condition, 77, 96, 246, 272; embassy to Innocent VII., 96, 272.
Gregory XII., pope: 125, 306.
Grene, sir Henry: beheaded at Bristol, 25, 174.
Grey, John, styled earl of Tankerville: slain at Baugé, 132, 319.
Grey, Reginald, baron, of Ruthin: serves at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 188; suit for the Hastings arms, 58, 63, 221, 229; taken prisoner by Glendower, 64, 77, 230, 247; his ransom, 77, 247.
Grey, Richard de, baron, of Codnor: aids in the defeat of Griffith Glendower, 103, 282.
Grey, sir Thomas, of Heton: one of a deputation to receive Richard

II.'s surrender of the crown, 32, 185.
Grey, sir Thomas, of Heton [son of the above]: executed for a plot against Henry V., 125, 307.
Grey friars: *see* Minorites.
Greyhound belonging to Richard II.: anecdote of, 40, 41, 196.
Greyndour, sir John: aids in the defeat of Griffith Glendower, 103, 282.
Greystock, Ralph, baron: joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174.
Guelphs and Ghibellines: their constant turbulence, 76, 88, 94, 99, 100, 245, 260, 269, 276, 277.
Gurguint Brabtruc, king of Britain: grants Ireland to the Scots, 102, 280.
Gwladus the Dark: ancestress of the earls of March, 19, 20, 22, 166, 167.

Hales, sir Robert, treasurer: beheaded by the mob, 1, 138.
Halle, John: executed, 37, 191.
Hallum, Robert, bishop of Salisbury: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Halnaker: death of lady St. John at, 55, 217.
Hangest, Jean, sire de, lord of Huguevilles: commands the French expedition in aid of Glendower, 85, 255.
Hanningfield, West: living given to Adam of Usk, 55, 217.
Harfleur: captured by Henry V., 125, 307; inhabitants replaced by English settlers, 126, 307; English losses in the siege, 126, 307, 308; verse on its capture, 129, 313; revictualled, 130, 314.
Harlech: sir E. Mortimer besieged, and dies at, 77, 247.
Hastings, Edward, baron: suit with lord Grey, 58, 63, 221, 229.
Hastings, John, second earl of Pembroke: taken prisoner at Rochelle, 8, 149.
Hastings, John, third earl of Pembroke: death of his widow, 55, 217; suit on his death, 58, 221.
Helias, the pope's physician: cures Adam of Usk, 100, 277.
Henry Bolingbroke, earl of Derby, afterwards Henry IV.: takes part in the battle of Radcot-bridge, 6, 145; enters London and blockades the Tower, *ibid.*; accuses the earl of Arundel, 14, 158; made duke of Hereford, 17, 162; his quarrel with the duke of Norfolk, 23, 24, 170, 171; the duel, 24, 171; his display, *ibid.*; banished, *ibid.*; becomes duke of Lancaster, *ibid.*; exiled and his goods seized, 24, 172; prophecies applied to him, 24, 25, 172, 173; his badge, 25, 173; lands at Ravenspur, 25, 174; marches to Bristol, *ibid.*; through Hereford, etc., to Chester, 25, 26, 175, 176; proclamation to spare the county of Chester, 25, 175; reviews his army, 27, 176; enters Chester, *ibid.*; takes Richard II. prisoner at Flint and removes him to Chester, 28, 178, 179; deputation of London citizens to him, 28, 179; marches to London, 29, 179; imprisons Richard in the Tower, *ibid.*; question of his right to the crown by descent, 30, 182; claims the crown and is enthroned, 33, 186; fixes the day of his coronation, and summons a new parliament, *ibid.*; makes knights of the Bath, 33, 187; his coronation, *ibid.*; his words to the champion, 34, 188; Richard's greyhound follows him,

40, 41, 196; conspiracy against him, 41, 197; he escapes to London, *ibid.*; taxes the peers for war, 44, 205; his campaign in Scotland, 47, 208; defeats Glendower, *ibid.*; submits to Adam of Usk questions on queen Isabella's dower, etc., 48–54, 209–217; spends Christmas at Eltham, 57, 220; holds a parliament, 58, 221; negotiations for the marriage of his daughter Blanche with Louis of Bavaria, 59, 223; quells a riot at Norton St. Philip, 62, 228; letter to him from P. Repyngdon, 65–69, 231–236; his fleet skirmishes with the French fleet, 69, 236; determines on war with France and Holland, 69, 237; at Strata-florida, 70, 237; present at the execution of a Welsh prisoner, 70, 237; taxes the country for his daughters' marriages, 71, 239; invades Wales, 78, 247; defeats the Percys at Shrewsbury, 82, 83, 252, 253; marries Joan of Navarre, 85, 255; marriage of his daughters, 85, 256; letter to him from Adam of Usk, 86, 87, 257, 258; his illness and death, 119, 298; buried at Canterbury, *ibid.*; omen at his coronation, *ibid.*

Henry, prince of Wales, afterwards Henry V.: imprisoned in Trim castle, 29, 180; returns to England and brings sir W. Bagot a prisoner, *ibid.*; made a knight of the Bath, 33, 187; bears a sword at the coronation of Henry IV., 34, 187; made prince of Wales, 36, 37, 190, 191; and duke of Cornwall, 37, 191; confers a prebend on Adam of Usk, 45, 206; receives the surrender of Conway castle, 61, 226; his baggage taken by Glendower, 70, 237; present at the execution of a Welsh prisoner, *ibid.*; his accession and coronation, 120, 298, 299; storm on his coronation day, 120, 299; issues a general pardon, *ibid.*; holds a parliament, *ibid.*; devices for raising money, *ibid.*; embassies between England and France, 120, 300; represses the Lollard rising, 121, 301; issues a general pardon, 124, 305; his religious foundations, *ibid.*; levies private loans, 124, 130, 133, 305, 306, 316, 320; failure of embassy to France, 125, 306; goes on pilgrimages, 125, 307; receives French ambassadors at Portsmouth, *ibid.*; the earl of Cambridge's plot against him, *ibid.*; princess of Aragon offered to him in marriage, *ibid.*; invades France and captures Harfleur, *ibid.*; defeats the French at Agincourt, 126, 308, 309; returns to England, 128, 311; rejoicings and pageant in London, 128, 129, 311, 312; his devotions at St. Paul's, 129, 312; goes a pilgrimage in Wales, 129, 313; again invades France, 131, 132, 316, 318; scatters the French fleet, 131, 316; conquers Normandy, 131, 317; treaty of Troyes, 132, 319; marries Katharine of France, *ibid.*; returns to England, *ibid.*; levies loans and prepares for his last campaign in France, 133, 320.

Hereford: Henry Bolingbroke marches through, 25, 175.

Hereford, bishops of:

See Lacy, Edmund.
Trevenant, John.

Hereford, duke of: *see* Henry Bolingbroke.

Holbache, David: obtains pardon for Adam of Usk, 118, 297.
Holland, count of: *see* William of Bavaria.
Holland, John, first earl of Huntingdon: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 156; made duke of Exeter, 17, 162; captain of Calais, 23, 171; conspires against Henry IV., 41, 197; killed by the mob, 42, 198.
Holland, John, second earl of Huntingdon: taken prisoner at Baugé, 132, 319.
Holland, Thomas, earl of Kent: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 156; present at the execution of the earl of Arundel, 14, 159; made duke of Surrey, 17, 162; lord-lieutenant of Ireland, 19, 165; marshal of England, 23, 171; Richard II.'s design to make him king of Ireland, 36, 190; conspires against Henry IV., and is killed at Cirencester, 41, 42, 197.
Holywell St. Winifred, co. Flint: Henry V. goes on a pilgrimage thither, 129, 313.
Homildon Hill: defeat of the Scots at, 85, 256.
Huguevilles, lord of: *see* Hangest, Jean, sire de.
Hungary, king of: *see* Sigismund, king of Hungary and emperor of Germany.
Hungerford, sir Walter: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Huntingdon, earls of: *see* Holland, John.

Ilderim: Bajazet I. so called, 62, 227.
Indians [Ethiopians]: at Rome, 93, 267; their form of baptism, *ibid.*
Innocent VII., pope: his election, 88, 260; his house sacked, *ibid.*; Adam of Usk's vision respecting him, 89, 261; treaty with the Romans, *ibid.*; ceremonies at his coronation, 90, 91, 262–264; his testimony in favour of Adam of Usk, 92, 265; ceremonies at festivals in Rome, 92, 95–98, 266, 271–275; receives a Greek embassy, 96, 272; his answer to them, *ibid.*; uses the arms of Aragon, 98, 274; flees from Rome to Viterbo, 99, 276; insults to him from the Romans, *ibid.*; his jeer at Adam of Usk, 100, 277; the Romans submit to him, *ibid.*; he re-enters Rome in state, 100, 278. *See also* Migliorati, Cosimo dei.
Ireland: Richard II.'s expeditions to, 9, 24, 151, 172; Roger earl of March lord-lieutenant, 18, 164; the duke of Surrey appointed, 19, 165; Edmund earl of March lord-lieutenant, 22, 168; Richard II.'s design to make the duke of Surrey king of, 36, 190; complaint of Irish lords, 64, 230; Thomas of Lancaster, lord-lieutenant, sent against the Irish, 71, 238; Glendower's letter to the lords of Ireland, 73, 241; Irish missionaries in Germany, 101, 279; tradition of the origin of the Scots and their occupation of Ireland, 101, 102, 279, 280; Irish in England ordered home, 120, 131, 299, 316.
Isabella, daughter of Charles VI. of France: married to Richard II., 9, 151; questions concerning her dower, 48–54, 209–217; leaves London, 63, 228, 229; restored to the French, 69, 236.
Islip, Simon, archbishop of Canter-

bury: interferes in the law courts in favour of the bishop of Ely, 44, 205.

Jersey: lord Cobham banished thither, 18, 164.
Jerusalem: reported destruction of, 62, 227.
Jesus Christ: prophecies of his birth, 110, 288.
Jews: their ceremony at the papal coronation, 91, 264; game at Rome at their cost, 95, 270.
Joan, pope: her image at Rome, 90, 263.
Joan of Kent, princess of Wales: her mediation with Richard II., 5, 143, 144.
Joan of Navarre, duchess-dowager of Brittany: married to Henry IV., 85, 255.
John the Baptist: his head at Amiens, 104, 283.
John XXIII., pope: deposed, 125, 306. *See also* Cossa, Balthasar.
John, king of France: questions concerning his ransom, 50–53, 212–216.
John of Bavaria, bishop of Liége: supports the duke of Burgundy, 105, 285.
John, duke of Bedford: holds a parliament, 126, 309; fights the French at sea, 130, 314.
John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster: flees from the London rioters into Scotland, 2, 138; supports Wycliffe and quarrels with the Londoners, 4, 141; his expedition to Spain, 7, 147; presides at the trial of the earl of Arundel, 13, 14, 157, 158; and of lord Cobham, 18, 164; ambush laid for him by the duke of Norfolk, 23, 169; his death, and burial in St. Paul's, 24, 171.
John ap Griffith, abbot of Llanthony: his death, 45, 205.
John ap Hoel, prior of Llanthony: made abbot, 45, 206.
John of Usk: *see* Usk, John.
Judgement-day, the: tokens and portents of, 111, 289; verses on, 112–117, 290–295.
Justices: banished to Ireland, 6, 146.
Justinian: his codex and digest quoted, 39, 45, 46, 194, 206, 207.

Katharine of France: married to Henry V., 132, 319; her coronation, *ibid.*
Kells: the earl of March slain at, 19, 165.
Kemsing: the living given to Adam of Usk, 40, 195.
Kent: Jack Straw's rising in, 1, 137.
Kent, earl of: *see* Holland, Thomas.
Knighton: Glendower defeats sir E. Mortimer at, 77, 246.
Knoyle: the pope appoints Adam of Usk to the church of, 77, 246.
Kyghley, sir Richard: slain at Agincourt, 126, 308.
Kyme, earl of: *see* Umfreville, Gilbert de.

Lacy, Edmund, bishop of Hereford: his consecration, 132, 318.
Ladislas, king of Naples: invades Hungary and is defeated, 77, 247; said to have guarded the conclave at Rome, 88, 260; receives a grant of Campania, 90, 262; occupies Rome, 99, 276; retires, 100, 277.
Lambeth palace: the arms of Roger Walden removed, 38, 192, 193.
Lancaster, dukes of:
See John of Gaunt.
Henry Bolingbroke.
Lancaster king of arms: *see* Brugg, Richard del.

Lancaster, Robert de [abbot of Llanegwast]: made bishop of St. Asaph, 106, 287.
Langley: Richard II. buried there, 44, 205.
Langton, Walter de, bishop of Lichfield and chancellor: his imprisonment referred to, 44, 204.
Lans-le-bourg: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 282.
Lateran, the: ceremonies at, on the coronation of Innocent VII., 90, 263.
Latimer, William, baron: bears the sceptre at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187.
Launde, the prior of: hanged, 84, 255.
Legh, sir Piers de: beheaded, 27, 177.
Leicester: parliament held there, 123, 303, 304.
Leicester, abbot of: *see* Repyngdon, Philip.
Leominster: Henry Bolingbroke passes through, 25, 175.
Lichfield, bishops of:
See Burghill, John.
Catterick, John.
Langton, Walter de.
Liége, bishop of: *see* John of Bavaria.
Lionel, duke of Clarence: arms of him and his retinue at Aiguebelle, 103, 282.
Liveries: statute against irregular use of, 39, 194.
Llanbadock: one-eyed boy at, 41, 197.
Llanbister: Adam of Usk receives the prebend from the pope, 77, 246.
Llancayo: monster calf at, 41, 197.
Llandaff: peace in the diocese, 70, 237; the archdeaconry conferred by the pope on Adam of Usk, 77, 246; the church pillaged, 84, 255.
Llandefailog: the living given by the pope to Adam of Usk, 77, 246.
Llandogo: the prebend given to Adam of Usk, 40, 195.
Llandovery: execution of a Welsh prisoner at, 70, 237.
Llanegwast, the abbot of: made bishop of St. Asaph, 106, 287.
Llanthony: succession of abbots, 45, 205, 206; the abbot slain, 103, 282.
Llewellyn: uncle of Constantine the great, 97, 272.
Llewellyn, prince of Wales: the stream wherein his head was washed flows blood, 55, 218.
Llugu verch Watkyn: owner of a monster calf, 41, 197.
Loans: 124, 130, 133, 306, 316, 320.
Lollards: prevalence of their heresy, 3, 4, 140, 141; numbers slain, 4, 141; troubles in London, *ibid.*; rising in London, 4, 121, 142, 300, 301.
Lombard merchants in London: restrictions, 55, 217.
Lombardy: anarchy in, 75, 94, 243, 269.
London: riots under Jack Straw, 1, 137; prevalence of Lollardy, 3, 140; riot against John of Gaunt, 4, 141; rising of Lollards, 4, 121, 142, 300, 301; the confederate lords march thither and blockade the Tower, 6, 145; deputation to Henry Bolingbroke, 28, 179; search in Westminster abbey for Richard II., *ibid.*; Henry Bolingbroke enters the city, 29, 179; sermon and procession, on suppression of plot against Henry IV., 42, 198; heads set up on London-bridge, 43, 203; Richard II.'s body brought thither, 44, 205; riots

of apprentices, 45, 206; plague, *ibid.*; restrictions on Lombard merchants, 55, 217; a Scotch herald disgraced, 63, 229; rejoicings for Henry V.'s victories, 128, 129, 133, 311, 312, 319.
London diocese: proposed translation to the bishopric, 92, 265; adoption of the use of Sarum, 124, 305.
Louis of Bavaria, son of the emperor Rupert: proposals for his marriage, 59, 223; marries Blanche of Lancaster, 85, 256.
Lucerne: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Lucy, sir William: slain by rioters at Bergavenny, 63, 228.
Ludlow: Henry Bolingbroke lodges in the castle, 25, 175.
Lylde, Thomas, bishop of Ely: his trial interrupted, 44, 205.

Maastricht: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Machynlleth: parliaments held there by Glendower, 86, 257.
Malepella, count of: receives a sword in a ceremony at Rome, 92, 266.
Malvern, John de, prior of Worcester: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.
Man, isle of: the earl of Warwick banished thither, 17, 161.
Manuel II., Palæologus, Greek emperor: visits England, 56, 57, 219, 220; his dress, *ibid.*; at Eltham, *ibid.*
March, countess of: *see* Mortimer, Philippa.
March, earls of:
See Mortimer, Edmund.
Mortimer, Roger.
March, earl of, in Scotland: *see* Dunbar, George, earl of.
Martin V., pope: his election, 131, 317, 318.
Matthew ap Hoel: receives the living of Panteg, 40, 195.
Maudeleyn, Richard: executed, 42, 198.
Meric: uncle of Constantine the Great, 97, 272.
Merionethshire: supports Glendower, 71, 239.
Merke, Thomas, bishop of Carlisle: bearer of a message to archbishop Arundel, 11, 155; imprisoned and deprived, 43, 204; bishop *in partibus*, *ibid.*
Merstham: Adam of Usk presented to the living, 119, 297.
Merton hall, Oxford: aids the Welsh in riots, 7, 148.
Metford, Richard, bishop of Salisbury: bearer of a letter from Adam of Usk to the king, 86, 257.
Migliorati, Cosimo dei, cardinal of Bologna, afterwards pope Innocent VII.: examines Adam of Usk, 75, 243. *See also* Innocent VII., pope.
Milan: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Milan, archbishop of: *see* Visconti, Giovanni.
Milan, duke of: *see* Visconti, Gian-Galeazzo.
Miletus: T. Merke made bishop of a diocese so called, 43, 204.
Minorites or grey friars: executions of, 84, 255.
Mona, Guy de, bishop of St. David's: proposed translation to London, 92, 265.
Moncalieri: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 281.
Monkswood, near Usk: Griffith Glendower captured there, 103, 282.

Monstarri [Trostrey ?]: gathering of the men of Usk there, 25, 175.
Montacute, John de, earl of Salisbury: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 157; suit against the earl of March, 15, 17, 160, 162; conspires against Henry IV. and is killed, 41, 42, 197; suit by lord Morley against his sureties, 45, 206.
Montacute, Thomas de, earl of Salisbury: made governor of Normandy, and carries on the war, 133, 319.
Montferrat, marquisate of: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 281.
Morley, Thomas, baron: suit against the sureties of the earl of Salisbury, 45, 206.
Mortimer, Edmund, third earl of March: lord-lieutenant of Ireland, 22, 168; his death and epitaph, *ibid.*; death of his daughter Philippa, 54, 55, 217.
Mortimer, Edmund, fifth earl of March: his county of Ulster attacked by the earl of Orkney, 62, 228; his lordship of Denbigh spared by Glendower, 71, 239; the crown claimed for him by the Percys, 82, 252; gives to the king a married pair of Welsh children, 121, 300; discovers the plot against Henry V., 125, 307.
Mortimer, sir Edmund: taken prisoner by Glendower, and marries his daughter, 77, 246; besieged and dies at Harlech, 77, 247; songs in his memory, *ibid.*
Mortimer, Lionel: son of sir E. Mortimer, 77, 247.
Mortimer, Philippa, countess of March, widow of Edmund, third earl: her epitaph, 22, 168.
Mortimer, Roger, fourth earl of March: suit against him by the earl of Salisbury, 15, 17, 160, 162; attends the parliament at Shrewsbury, 18, 164; Richard II.'s designs against him, 19, 165; slain in Ireland, *ibid.*; his genealogy, 19–23, 166–169.
Mortimer, sir Thomas: impeached, 13, 157; banished, 15, 159; befriended by the earl of March in Ireland, 19, 165.
Mowbray, Thomas, earl of Nottingham, afterwards duke of Norfolk: takes part in the battle of Radcotbridge, 6, 145; enters London and blockades the Tower, *ibid.*; impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 157; as captain of Calais, reports Gloucester's death, 15, 160; made duke of Norfolk, 17, 162; lays an ambush against John of Gaunt, 23, 169; his quarrel with Henry Bolingbroke, 23, 24, 170, 171; the duel, 24, 171; exiled, *ibid.*; dies at Venice, *ibid.*
Mowbray, Thomas, earl of Nottingham, earl marshal: beheaded at York, 99, 275.

Naples: heroic death of a lady taken by corsairs, 84, 254.
Naples, king of: *see* Ladislas, king of Naples.
Navarre, Joan of: *see* Joan of Navarre.
Neath priory: endowment alienated, 124, 305.
Nevill, Alexander, archbishop of York: flees abroad, 6, 145; absolved for share in the commission of regency, 12, 156.
Nevill, Ralph, baron: officiates at the trial of the earl of Arundel, 13, 157; made earl of Westmoreland, 17, 162; joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174; one of a deputa-

tion to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184; bears the rod at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187.
Newport castle: ruined by Glendower, 78, 247.
Norfolk, duke of: *see* Mowbray, Thomas.
Normandy: conquered by Henry V., 131, 132, 317, 318.
Northumberland, earl of: *see* Percy, Henry.
Norton St. Philip: riot against taxes, 62, 227.
Norwich, bishops of:
See Courtenay, Richard.
Spencer, Henry.
Nottingham, earls of: *see* Mowbray, Thomas.
Nuneaton priory: scandal in, 57, 220.

Oldcastle, sir John, styled lord Cobham: condemned for heresy, and sent to the Tower and escapes, 121, 300; his rising in London, 121, 301; captured and burnt, 131, 317.
Orkney, earl of: *see* Sinclair, Henry.
Orleans, Charles, duke of: made prisoner at Agincourt, 126, 309.
Orleans, Louis, duke of: opposes the earl of Northumberland in France, 105, 284; murdered, 105, 285.
Orsini, Paolo, papal commander: sent to relieve Rome, 100, 277.
Ostia: Adam of Usk escapes through, 99, 277.
Ostia, cardinal of: *see* Acciajuoli, Angelo.
Oxford: the confederate lords march through, 6, 145; riots, 7, 147; executions, 42, 198; the university resists the visitation of archbishop Arundel, 120, 299.
Oxford, earls of:
See Vere, Aubrey de.
Vere, Robert de.

Padua: the emperor Rupert defeated there by the duke of Milan, 75, 244; taken by the duke of Milan, 76, 244.
Palms: ceremony of, at Rome, 97, 273.
Panteg: the living transferred to Matthew ap Hoel, 40, 195.
Paris: Adam of Usk there, 104, 117, 283, 295.
Parliaments, and business transacted in: 4, 9–17, 18, 24, 32, 36, 39, 85, 120, 123, 124, 126, 129, 130, 131, 142, 152–163, 171, 172, 185, 190, 191, 194, 256, 299, 303, 304, 305, 309, 314, 316, 317.
Patryngton, Stephen de: elected bishop of St. David's, 123, 303.
Pembroke: Richard II. lands there from Ireland, 27, 177.
Pembroke, earls of: *see* Hastings, John.
Penthièvre, Olivier de Blois, count of: joins the dauphin, 132, 319.
Percy, house of: its pride, 85, 256.
Percy, Henry, earl of Northumberland: joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174; sent to Conway to treat with Richard II., 28, 178; one of a deputation to receive Richard's surrender of the crown, 31, 184; bears a sword at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 187; defeats the Scots, 47, 48, 71, 209, 239; and at Homildon Hill, 85, 256; advances against Henry IV. towards Shrewsbury, 82, 252; pardoned, 86, 257; joins Glendower and is defeated, 104, 283, 284; passes over to France, 104, 284; thence to Scotland, 105, 284; enticed into England, and defeated and

slain at Bramham moor, *ibid.*; at Bruges, 106, 287; portent there foretelling his fate, 107, 287, 288.
Percy, Henry (Hotspur): defeats the Scots, 47, 48, 71, 209, 239; and at Homildon Hill, 85, 256; slain at Shrewsbury, 83, 253.
Percy, sir Thomas, afterwards earl of Worcester: appointed to represent the prelates in parliament, 12, 155; made earl of Worcester, 17, 162; beheaded after the battle of Shrewsbury, 83, 253.
Perigord, county of: seized by the French, 64, 230.
Perigord, Archambaud, count of: comes to England, 64, 230.
Persia, son of the king of: *see* Tamerlane.
Perugia: revolt of, 76, 245.
Philippa of Lancaster: married to Eric, king of Denmark, 85, 256.
Piacenza: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Pietrasanta: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Pileus de Prata, cardinal: comes to England to negotiate for the marriage of Ann of Bohemia, 2, 139; makes Adam of Usk a notary, 3, 139; his rapacity, 3, 140.
Pisa: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Plague: in England, 46, 207.
Plantagenet, Edward, earl of Rutland: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 156; made duke of Albemarle, 17, 162; sent against the French in Gascony, 71, 238.
Plantagenet, Edward, duke of York: slain at Agincourt, 126, 308.
Plantagenet, Humphrey, duke of Gloucester: imprisoned at Trim, 29, 180; poisoned, and dies at Anglesey, *ibid.*
Plantagenet, Richard, earl of Cambridge: executed for a plot against Henry V., 125, 307.
Pluralities: attempted reforms of, 76, 245.
Po, river: diverted by the duke of Milan, 76, 244.
Poland, king of: *see* Vladislas, king of Poland.
Ponfald: execution of Welsh prisoners at, 103, 282.
Pontefract castle: Richard II. imprisoned, and dies there, 42, 199.
Pontremoli: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 242.
Pool or Pontypool: attacked by Glendower, 70, 237; death of lord Cherleton at, 70, 238; Adam of Usk takes refuge there, 118, 296.
Popes:
See Benedict XIII.
Boniface IX.
Gregory XII.
Innocent VII.
John XXIII.
Martin V.
Portsmouth: Henry V. there, on his way to invade France, 125, 307.
Powis: joins Glendower and is harried by the English, 70, 237.
Poynings, Philippa de, lady St. John: death of, 55, 217.
Prelates: not to take part in criminal proceedings in parliament, 11, 154; appoint sir T. Percy their proctor, 12, 155; their right in collations, 60, 224.
Prestbury, Thomas: released from prison and made abbot of Shrewsbury, 26, 175.
Prices: rise of price of wheat, 70, 238.
Prodigies: 37, 41, 55, 75, 191, 197, 218, 243.
Prophecies: of Bridlington and

Merlin, etc., 8, 24, 25, 28, 39, 149, 171, 172, 173, 179, 194.
Provins: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283.
Provisions, papal: relaxations in favour of, 60, 224; statutes against, 85, 256.

Rabat, Pierre de, bishop of St. Pons: his speech to Boniface IX., 87, 259.
Radcot-bridge: defeat of the earl of Oxford at, 6, 145.
Raglan: the lordship confirmed to sir J. Berkeley, 40, 195.
Reading: council held at, 130, 316.
Rehoboam: Richard II. likened to, 36, 190.
Repyngdon, Philip, abbot of Leicester: on a mission to Nuneaton, 57, 220; his letter to Henry IV., 65–69, 231–236.
Rhys ap Griffith, of Cardigan: executed, 118, 296.
Rhys ap Tudor, of Anglesey: executed, 118, 296.
Richard II.: accession, 1, 137; expectations of him, *ibid.*; Straw's rebellion, 2, 138; marries Ann of Bohemia, 3, 139, 140; his troubled reign, 3, 140; under control of the commission of regency, 4, 142; his designs against it, 5, 143; feigns reconciliation with the confederate lords, 5, 144; blockaded in the Tower, and submits, 6, 145; his quarrel with archbishop Courtenay, 8, 150; queen Ann dies, 9, 151; he destroys Shene manor, and sails for Ireland, *ibid.*; returns by Bristol, *ibid.*; marries Isabella of France, *ibid.*; his secret designs, *ibid.*; holds a parliament, 10, 152; his archers threaten parliament, 11, 154; treatment of the earl of Warwick, 17, 162; holds a parliament at Shrewsbury, 18, 163; expenses laid on the people, *ibid.*; extorts taxes, 18, 164; his design against the earl of March, 19, 165; favours the Chester guards, 23, 169; his conduct at the duel of Norfolk and Henry Bolingbroke, 24, 171; powers of parliament given to a commission, 24, 171, 172; his tyranny, 24, 172; sails for Ireland, *ibid.*; his badge, 25, 173; hears of Henry Bolingbroke's landing and returns to Pembroke, 27, 177; flees to Caermarthen, *ibid.*; his army breaks up, 28, 178; he negotiates for surrender at Conway, *ibid.*; taken prisoner at Flint and removed to Chester, 28, 179; imprisoned in the Tower, 29, 179; likened to Arthgallo, 29, 180; rumours of his illegitimacy, *ibid.*; commission to advise on his deposition, 29, 181; visited by Adam of Usk in the Tower, 30, 182; his lamentation, *ibid.*; question as to his right of succession, *ibid.*; his abdication required, 31, 32, 184; deposed in parliament, 32, 185; his abdication published, *ibid.*; sentence of deposition read, 32, 33, 186; present at the ceremony of making knights, 33, 187; remarks on his government, 35, 36, 189, 190; treatment of the countess of Warwick, 36, 190; his design to make the earl of Kent king of Ireland, *ibid.*; removed from the Tower, 37, 191; his dreams about the earl of Arundel, 39, 193; anecdote of his greyhound, 40, 41, 196; rising in his favour, 41, 197; his death, 42, 199; various accounts of it, 199 *note*; omens at his coronation, 42, 200; com-

pared with Chosroes, 43, 202; his body brought to London, 44, 205; buried at Langley, *ibid.*

Rickhill, William, judge: reports the confession of the duke of Gloucester, 15, 160.

Rieux, Jean, sire de, et Rochefort, marshal of Brittany: commands an expedition to aid Glendower, 85, 255.

Rocheford, sir Ralph: attends the council of Constance, 124, 304.

Rochelle, la: disaster to the earl of Pembroke at, 8, 149.

Rochester, bishops of:
See Botsam, John.
Botsam, William.

Rochester bridge: maintenance of, 17, 162.

Rokeby, Thomas, sheriff of York: defeats the earl of Northumberland at Bramham moor, 105, 284.

Rome: Adam of Usk's journey thither, 74, 75, 242, 243; churches, 83, 84, 253, 254; riots, 88, 260; conclave for election of the pope, 88, 89, 260, 261; treaty with the pope, 89, 261; ceremonies at the pope's coronation, etc., 90, 91, 262-264; its desolate state, 91, 264, 265; various ceremonies, 92, 93, 96-98, 266, 267, 272-275; wolves and dogs at, 94, 269; games, 94, 95, 269, 270; a false prophet, 95, 96, 271; massacre of citizens and expulsion of Innocent VII., 99, 276; occupied by Ladislas of Naples, *ibid.*; submits to the pope, 100, 277; Ladislas retires, *ibid.*; Innocent returns in state, 100, 278.

Rome, church of: its evil state, 55, 56, 77, 78, 89, 218, 219, 246, 247, 261.

Rome, empire of: claimed by the Greeks, 96, 272.

Rose: ceremony of the, at Rome, 96, 272.

Rouen: besieged and taken by Henry V., 132, 318.

Rupert, count-palatine, and emperor of Germany: his election, 55, 217; defeated by the duke of Milan, 75, 244; confirmed by the pope, 76, 245; bull of confirmation, 79-82, 248-252.

Rushook, Thomas, bishop of Chichester: banished, 6, 146.

Ruthin: the lordship harried by Glendower, 71, 239.

Rutland, earl of: *see* Plantagenet, Edward.

Rye, William: leads an expedition from Bristol against South Wales, 84, 255.

St. Albans, abbot of: *see* De la Moote, John.

St. Angelo, castle of: embassy from Avignon imprisoned in, 88, 260.

St. Asaph, bishops of: *see* Lancaster, Robert de.

St. David's, bishops of:
See Catterick, John.
Chicheley, Henry.
Mona, Guy de.
Patryngton, Stephen.

St. Eustace, cardinal of: *see* Cossa, Balthasar.

St. Gotthard, mont: Adam of Usk crosses the pass, 74, 242.

St. John, hospital of: creation of the prior, at Rome, 93, 267.

St. John, lady: *see* Poynings, Philippa de.

St. Paul's church, London: John of Gaunt buried there, 24, 171; Richard II.'s body shown to the people in, 44, 205; convocations held there, 58, 123, 127, 129, 221, 304, 310, 314.

St. Peter's church, Rome: altar of indulgence, 83, 254; Boniface IX. buried there, 89, 261; ceremonies at the coronation of Innocent VII., 90, 262.
St. Pol de Léon: Adam of Usk escapes thither, 117, 296.
St. Pons de Tomières, bishop of: *see* Rabat, Pierre de.
Salisbury, bishops of:
See Chaundler, John.
Hallum, Robert.
Metford, Richard.
Salisbury, earls of:
See Montacute, John de.
Montacute, Thomas de.
Salisbury, sir John: beheaded, 6, 146.
Saltwood castle: Roger Walden's goods seized there, 38, 192.
Saracens: their corsairs, 78, 84, 248, 254.
Savoy palace: burnt, 2, 138.
Sawtre, William: burnt as a heretic, 58, 222.
Schism in the church: evil effects, 55, 56, 218, 219.
Scotland: foray reported, 17, 162; preparations for war with, 44, 205; Henry IV.'s campaign in, 47, 208; defeats of Scots by the Percys, 47, 48, 71, 209, 239; Scotch herald disgraced, 63, 229; war with, determined on, 69, 237; the Scots declare for war, 71, 238; Glendower's letter to the king, 71, 239; defeat of Homildon Hill, 85, 256; attack on the north of England, 124, 305; defeat of the duke of Albany, 131, 316.
Scots: *see* Ireland.
Scrivelsby manor: the champion-ship claimed in right of, 34, 188.
Scrope, Henry, baron: executed for a plot against Henry V., 125, 307.
Scrope, Richard, archbishop of York: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184; preaches in parliament and reads Richard's abdication, 32, 185; beheaded at York, 98, 99, 275.
Scrope, sir William, afterwards earl of Wiltshire: impeaches the duke of Gloucester and others, 13, 157; has charge of the earl of Warwick, 17, 161; made earl of Wiltshire, 17, 162; beheaded at Bristol, 25, 174.
Scudamore, Philip, of Troy: executed, 118, 296.
Seal, chapel of: given to Adam of Usk, 40, 195.
Sedes stercoraria: ceremony of, at Rome, 90, 263.
Selby, Ralph: imprisoned by the Londoners, 28, 179.
Serle, William: executed for the murder of the duke of Gloucester, 86, 257.
Severn: its borders harried by Glendower, 84, 254.
Shelley, sir Thomas: executed, 42, 198.
Shene: queen Ann dies there, 9, 151; the manor broken up by Richard II., *ibid.*; Henry V.'s religious foundations there, 124, 305.
Shire-Newton: exchange of the living by Adam of Usk, 40, 195.
Shrewsbury: parliament at, 18, 23, 163, 169; Henry Bolingbroke marches through, 26, 175; Thomas Prestbury made abbot, *ibid.*; Henry IV. carries thither his Welsh prisoners, 47, 208; defeats the Percys there, 82, 83. 252, 253.
Siena: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 103, 243, 281.

Sigismund, king of Hungary and emperor of Germany: defeats Ladislas of Naples, 77, 246; visits England, 130, 314; his laudatory verses on England, *ibid.*
Simony: verses on, 59, 223; Boniface IX. accused of, 88, 259.
Sinclair, Henry, earl of Orkney: attacks Ulster, 62, 228.
Skidmore, sir John: slain at Agincourt, 126, 309.
Slake, Nicholas: imprisoned by the Londoners, 28, 179.
Smithfield: W. Sawtre burnt there, 58, 222.
Snowdon: Glendower's stronghold, 47, 70, 71, 84, 208, 237, 239, 254.
Somerset, earls of: *see* Beaufort, John.
Spain: John of Gaunt's expedition to, 7, 147.
Spencer, or Despencer, Henry, bishop of Norwich: his crusade in Flanders, 7, 146; in custody, 43, 203.
Speyer: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Stafford, Edmund, bishop of Exeter and chancellor: opens parliament with a sermon, 9, 152.
Stafford, Edmund de, earl of Stafford: made a knight of the Bath, 33, 187.
Storm: on the day of Henry V.'s coronation, 120, 299.
Stow, Thomas: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184.
Strassburg: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Strata-florida abbey: pillaged, 70, 237.
Straw, Jack: his insurrection, 1, 2, 137, 138.
Sudbury: the lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Sudbury, Simon, archbishop of Canterbury and chancellor: murdered, 1, 138.
Suffolk, earls of:
See De la Pole, Michael.
De la Pole, William.
Sulmona: the birth-place of Innocent VII., 88, 260.
Surrey, duke of: *see* Holland, Thomas.
Susa: Adam of Usk passes through, 103, 281.
Swinford, sir Thomas: starves Richard II., 42, 199.

Talbot, Gilbert, baron: defeated by the French, 131, 317.
Tamerlane: defeats Bajazet I., 62, 227.
Tamworth manor: the championship claimed in right of, 34, 188.
Tankerville, earl of: *see* Grey, John.
Taxes: evil result of, 8, 149; prophecy against them, *ibid.*; aids, etc., granted, 18, 44, 60, 120, 124, 126, 127, 129, 130, 131, 133, 164, 205, 225, 299, 305, 306, 309, 310, 314, 316, 317, 320; riots against, 62, 227, 228; for marriage of Henry IV.'s daughters, 71, 239; heavy taxes, 85, 256.
Testaccio mound, at Rome: game on, 95, 270.
Teutonic knights: defeat the Turks, and are defeated by the king of Poland, 106, 286.
Theliau, saint: intervention to aid the Welsh, 84, 255; his chapel at St. Pol de Léon, 117, 295.
Thomas ap Adam ap William of Weloc: exchanges the living of Panteg for Shire-Newton, 40, 195.
Thomas of Lancaster, duke of Clarence: sent to Ireland to subdue the rebels, 71, 238; defeated and slain at Baugé, 133, 319.

Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloucester: takes part in the battle of Radcot-bridge, 6, 145; enters London and blockades the Tower, *ibid.*; impeached, 10, 13, 153, 157; his death at Calais, 15, 160; reported confession, *ibid.*; accusation against him by the earl of Warwick, 16, 161; his body removed in Westminster abbey, 39, 194; executions of his murderers, 37, 86, 191, 257.

Tisbury: the living given by the pope to Adam of Usk, 77, 246.

Tower of London: ambush against the council, 5, 143; blockaded by the confederate lords, 6, 145; Richard II. a prisoner in, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 179, 182, 184, 185, 187; Henry IV. makes knights in, 33, 187; Griffith Glendower dies a prisoner in, 104, 282; sir J. Oldcastle imprisoned and escapes, 121, 300.

Trehern: uncle of Constantine the Great, 97, 272.

Trelleck: the lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.

Tresilian, sir Robert, chief justice: beheaded, 6, 146.

Trevaur, John, bishop of St. Asaph: reads in parliament the sentence of Richard II.'s deposition, 33, 186; his rebuke of the commons, 39, 194; deserts to Glendower, 106, 286; is deprived and dies, 106, 287.

Trevenant, John, bishop of Hereford: one of a deputation to receive Richard II.'s surrender of the crown, 31, 184; silences Adam of Usk, 59, 223; his death, 85, 256.

Trim: prince Henry and the young duke of Gloucester prisoners there, 29, 180.

Troyes: Adam of Usk passes through, 104, 283; treaty of, 132, 319.

Tudor, William and Rhys ap: capture Conway castle, but surrender, 61, 226.

Tunis: lord Fitz-Walter taken to, as prisoner, 78, 248.

Turkey, soldan of: *see* Bajazet I.

Turks: oppressing the Greek empire, 97, 273.

Tuscany: anarchy in, 76, 245.

Tyburn: executions at, 84, 255.

Tyler, Wat: his insurrection, 1, 2, 137, 138.

Ulster: earldom belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169; attacked by the earl of Orkney, 62, 228.

Umfreville, Gilbert de, styled earl of Kyme: slain at Baugé, 132, 319.

Usk: the lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169; the inhabitants reconciled to Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174; monster calf at, 41, 197; Adam of Usk makes offerings to the church, 56, 219; a criminal set free, 61, 227; the castle ruined by Glendower, 78, 247; and attacked by his son Griffith, 103, 282; petition on behalf of the priory, 93, 268.

Usk, Adam (or Adam of Usk): made a notary by cardinal Pileus, 3, 139; an extraordinary in canon law at Oxford, 6, 145; sees the army of the confederate lords march through Oxford, *ibid.*; ringleader in Oxford riots, 7, 148; present in parliament, 9, 152; presented by the earl of March to an exhibition at Oxford, 22, 168; present at Bristol with Henry Bolingbroke's army, 25, 174; intercedes for the men of Usk, *ibid.*; accompanies Henry's army to

Chester, 25, 26, 174–176; obtains the appointment of T. Prestbury as abbot of Shrewsbury, 26, 175; celebrates mass at Coddington, 27, 176; sits on a commission to advise on Richard II.'s deposition, 29, 181; visits him in the Tower, 30, 182; draws the petition for the king's champion, 34, 188; anecdote of wonderful eggs, 37, 191; hears a sermon in Westminster abbey, 40, 195; presented to the living of Kemsing and Seal and prebend of Llandogo, and exchanges the living of Shire-Newton, 40, 195; counsel for sir J. Berkeley, *ibid.*; his anecdote of Richard II.'s greyhound, 41, 196; describes monstrosities, 41, 197; speaks in convocation, 44, 204; prebendary of Bangor, 45, 206; counsel for lord Morley, *ibid.*; his fee, 46, 207; questions on queen Isabella's dower submitted to him, 48–54, 209–217; presented to the living of West Hanningfield, 55, 217; makes offerings to the church of Usk, 56, 219; his coat of arms, *ibid.*; serves in an inquiry at Nuneaton, 57, 220; counsel for lord Grey of Ruthin, 58, 63, 221, 229; converses with the German ambassadors, 59, 223; his dream on the treatment of the Welsh, 60, 225; counsel for sir W. Byttervey, 63, 64, 229; journey to Rome, 74, 75, 242, 243; introduced to pope Boniface IX., 75, 243; examined and appointed papal chaplain and auditor, *ibid.*; receives various benefices from the pope, 76, 77, 246; proposed as bishop of Hereford, 85, 256; length of his exile, *ibid.*; his letter to Henry IV., 86, 87, 257, 258; his dreams about Boniface IX., 88, 259; and on Innocent VII.'s election, 89, 261; present at Innocent's, as formerly at Henry IV.'s, coronation, 91, 264; proposed as bishop of St. David's, 92, 265; persecuted by his enemies, *ibid.*; petitions the pope on behalf of Usk priory, 93, 268; assists at ceremonies at Rome, 92, 95, 266, 271; present in Rome during insurrection, 99, 276; escapes to Viterbo, 99, 276, 277; the pope's jeer at him, 100, 277; his illness at Viterbo, *ibid.*; restored to the rota, *ibid.*; hears the cause of the Schottenkloster of Vienna, 101, 279; leaves Rome and travels through Lombardy and France to Bruges, 103, 104, 281–283; robbed, 104, 283; travels through France, Normandy, and Brittany, and practises as a lawyer there, *ibid.*; loss of his benefices, *ibid.*; warned not to enter England, *ibid.*; further incurs Henry IV.'s anger for holding communication with the earl of Northumberland, 105, 284; makes a declaration of his conduct, at Paris, before Lancaster king of arms, 117, 295; chased at sea, *ibid.*; his vision and escape to St. Pol de Léon, 117, 296; celebrates mass in the chapel of saint Theliau there, *ibid.*; lands at Barmouth in Wales, *ibid.*; escapes to Pool, 118, 296; pardoned, 118, 297; present in parliament, 119, 297; restored to practice in the court of Canterbury, *ibid.*; presented to the living of Merstham, *ibid.*; reference to his presence at Henry IV.'s coronation, 119, 298; his vision on the death of archbishop Arundel, 122, 302;

reference to the surrender of his civil chair at Oxford to Henry Chicheley, 123, 303; gets relief from taxation for Welsh benefices, 127, 310.
Usk, John, abbot of Chertsey: his death, 46, 207.
Usk, Thomas: beheaded, 6, 146; author of the "Testament of Love," 146 *note*.

Vaughan, Llewellyn ap Griffith, of Cayo: executed, 70, 237.
Venice: the duke of Norfolk dies there, 24, 171; lord Fitz-Walter dies there, 78, 248; false prophet at, 96, 271.
Vere, Aubrey de, earl of Oxford: chamberlain at Henry IV.'s coronation, 34, 188.
Vere, Robert de, earl of Oxford: sent into Cheshire to raise men for Richard II., 5, 144; defeated at Radcot-bridge, 6, 145; his death, *ibid.*
Vienna: cause of the Schottenkloster at, 101, 279.
Visconti, Bernabo: uncle of the duke of Milan, 76, 245.
Visconti, Galeazzo: father of the duke of Milan, 76, 245.
Visconti, Gian-Galeazzo, duke of Milan: at war, 75, 243; comet foretelling his death, *ibid.*; defeats the emperor Rupert, 75, 244; takes Bologna and Padua, and dies, 76, 244; his character, *ibid.*
Visconti, Giovanni: archbishop of Milan, 76, 245.
Viterbo: Adam of Usk passes through, 75, 243; Innocent VII. takes refuge there, 99, 276; Adam escapes thither, 99, 277.
Vladislas, king of Poland: defeats the Teutonic knights, 106, 286.

Walden, Roger, archbishop of Canterbury: imprisoned, 28, 179; deprived, 37, 38, 192; sues for grace, 38, 193; his good character, *ibid.*; prophecy concerning him, 39, 193.
Wales: Welsh in riots at Oxford, 7, 147; ancient rights of Welsh on lands of the earl of Arundel respected, 16, 160; Glendower's rising defeated, 47, 208; prodigy at Builth, 55, 218; reprisals against the Welsh authorized, 60, 224; debates in parliament against them, 60, 225; Glendower harries the country, 64, 230; attacks Pool, etc., 70, 237; inroad of the English, *ibid.*; fortifications repaired, 70, 238; threatened suppression of the Welsh language, 71, 238; Glendower defeated at Caernarvon, 71, 238, 239; he harries Ruthin, 71, 239; his letters to Scotland and Ireland, 72, 73, 239-241; he defeats sir E. Mortimer, 77, 246; harries the borders, 78, 247; invasion by Henry IV., *ibid.*; Glendower harries the south, 84, 254; inroad of the men of Bristol, 84, 255; French expedition to aid Glendower, 85, 255; amount of revenue to England, 86, 257; defeat of Griffith Glendower, 103, 282; capture of Glendower's family, 119, 297, 298; Welsh ordered to withdraw home, 120, 299; a pair of married Welsh children, 121, 300; relief of benefices from taxation, 127, 310; death of Glendower, 129, 313.
Wales, princes of:
See Henry, prince of Wales.
Llewellyn, prince of Wales.
Wales, princess of: *see* Joan of Kent, princess of Wales.

Walsingham: the lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Walworth, sir William: slays J. Straw (Wat Tyler), 2, 138.
Warwick, countess of: *see* Beauchamp, Margaret.
Warwick, earls of:
See Beauchamp, Richard.
Beauchamp, Thomas.
Washing feet: ceremony of, at Rome, 97, 274.
Waterton, Robert, forester of Knaresborough: joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174.
Wenceslaus, king of Bohemia and emperor of Germany: deposed, 55, 217; reported defeated by the duke of Bavaria, emperor-elect, *ibid.*
Westminster: great council at, 69, 237.
Westminster abbey: monk accused of treason, 16, 161; search for Richard II. in, 28, 179; Henry IV.'s coronation in, 33, 34, 187; removal of the duke of Gloucester's body in, 39, 40, 194, 195; miraculous ringing of the bells on the Confessor's tomb, 55, 218.
Westminster, abbot of: *see* Colchester, William de.
Westminster hall: reconciliation of Richard II. and the confederate lords in, 5, 143, 144; Henry IV.'s coronation banquet in, 34, 188.
Westmoreland, earl of: *see* Nevill, Ralph.
Whaddon: the lordship belonging to the earl of March, 23, 169.
Wigmore abbey: founded by Hugh Mortimer, 22, 167; Edmund earl of March buried there, 22, 168.
William of Bavaria, count of Holland: visits England, 130, 315; his death, 130, 316.
Willoughby, William, baron: joins Henry Bolingbroke, 25, 174.
Wills: reform of probate fees, 123, 304.
Wiltshire, earl of: *see* Scrope, sir William.
Winchecumb, Tideman de, bishop of Worcester: his death, 64, 230.
Winchester, bishop of: *see* Wykeham, William of.
Windsor: the duke of Norfolk in custody at, 23, 171; design of conspirators to attack the castle, and kill Henry IV., 41, 197.
Worcester, bishops of:
See Clifford, Richard.
Winchecumb, Tideman de.
Worcester, earl of: *see* Percy, sir Thomas.
Worcester, prior of: *see* Malvern, John de.
Worms: Adam of Usk passes through, 74, 242.
Wycliffe, John: spread of his doctrine, 3, 4, 140, 141. *See also* Lollards.
Wykeham, William of, bishop of Winchester: absolved for share in the commission of regency, 13, 156.

York: execution of archbishop Scrope and the earl of Nottingham at, 98, 99, 275; submission of the citizens, 99, 275, 276.
York, archbishops of:
See Nevill, Alexander.
Scrope, Richard.
York, dukes of:
See Edmund of Langley.
Plantagenet, Edward.

Zouche, la, William, baron Zouche: wrongly stated to have attended the council of Constance, 124, 304.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTION

p. 173, *note* 2. Hotspur calls Henry 'This fawning greyhound.' Shakespeare, *Henry IV.*, *pt.* I., act I. sc. iij.

p. 187, *note* 2. The lordship of the Isle of Man was granted to the earl of Northumberland, to hold by the service of carrying at the left shoulder of the king or his heirs, on the day of coronation, the sword called "Lancastresword," with which Henry was girt when he landed at Ravenspur; 19 Oct. 1399.—*Cal. Pat. Rot.*, *Hen. IV.*, j. 27.

p. 283, *line* 11. *For* Richard Lancaster, king of arms, *read* Richard, Lancaster king of arms.

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

DATE DUE

SEP 2 7 74

GAYLORD

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

DA240 .A19
Chronicon... A.D. 1377–1421;
Princeton Theological Seminary–Speer Library
1 1012 00002 8839